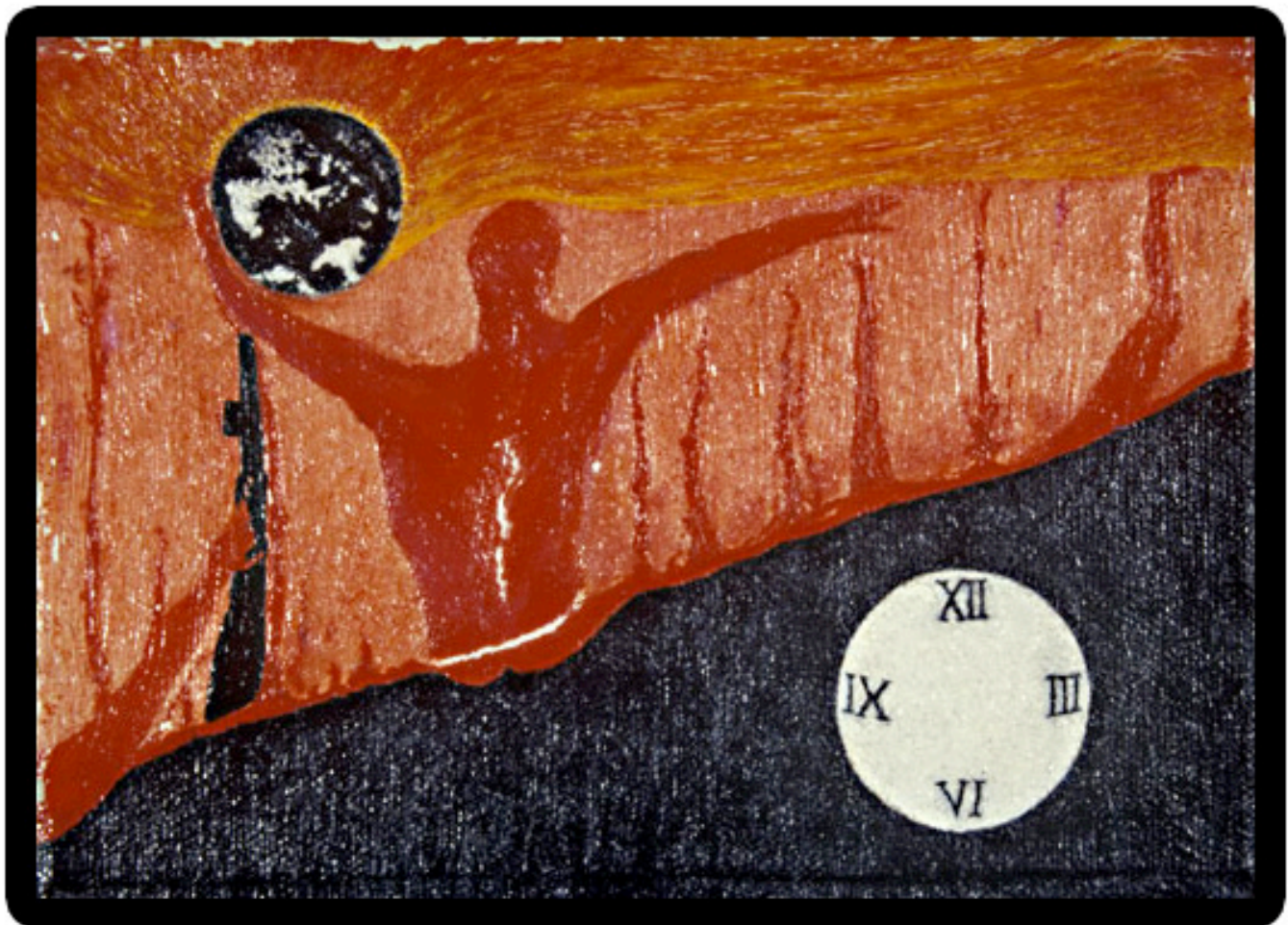


A Chronological Particular Timeline of Near East and Europe History



by Tosca Lenci

Introduction

This compilation was begun merely to be a synthesized, occasional source for other writings, primarily for familiarization with European world development. Gradually, however, it was forced to come to grips with the elephantine amount of historical detail in certain classical sources. Recording the numbers of reported war deaths in previous history (many thousands, here and there!) initially was done with little contemplation but eventually, with the near-exponential number of Humankind battles (not just major ones; inter-tribal, dynastic, and inter-regional), mind was caused to pause and ask itself, "Why?"

Awed by the numbers killed in battles over recorded time, one falls subject to believing the very occupation in war was a naturally occurring ancient inclination, no longer possessed by 'enlightened' Humankind. In our synthesized histories, however, details are confined to generals, geography, battle strategies and formations, victories and defeats, with precious little revealed of the highly complicated and combined subjective forces that generate and fuel war.

Two territories of human existence are involved: material and psychological. Material includes land, resources, and freedom to maintain a life to which one feels entitled. It fuels war by emotions arising from either deprivation or conditioned expectations. Psychological embraces Egalitarian and Egoistical arenas. Egalitarian is fueled by emotions arising from either a need to improve conditions or defend what it has. To that category also belongs the individual for whom revenge becomes an end in itself. Egoistical is fueled by emotions arising from material possessiveness and self-aggrandizations. To that category also belongs the individual for whom worldly power is an end in itself. Finally, there is practical warring between Egalitarian and Egalitarian pushed against each other by larger powers, and warring between Egoistical and Egoistical to maintain respective superiority.

Both emotional arenas are impacted by procreation, which has been and is still a fundamental contributor to warrings of Humankind--Egalitarian by prolific population against an already disadvantaged state (spawning contending clans, tribes, sects); Egoistical through desirously dedicated intent to perpetuate power over resources and territorial possessions, via dynastic or political legacies. (As to ancient and medieval history, it is difficult to deny concluding that prolific procreation allowed repeated assemblies of armies of immense numbers.)

The impact of trade equals that of procreation, its import also scarcely extractable from our synthesized knowledge of history--"trade" as relates to providing respective population groups with the elements deemed necessary to their survival style, which can range from food itself to fuel for high-powered engines. (A rare example of record is Macedonian Philip II's battling east to Byzantium and the Bosphorus, to keep the Black Sea open to shipments of the grain supply that provided Athens with much of its food.) Also scarce in the record is data on the realities of the countless refugees, enforcedly relocated groups, or civilians simply killed by conquerors.

Language rounds out the war trilogy, for it contains all the nuances and vulgarities upon which come to feast notions of varying philosophies and religions, the final hovel of emotions of the starved--whether of food, shelter, education, opportunity, and/or reasonable capacity freely to pursue life, liberty and happiness.

This Introduction essentially has not been composed in contemplation of Timeline users; however, the following notes are included in case someone other than the compiler happens across it:

(a) Footnotes are an integral part of the Timeline. (It was considered making them end notes, but they are necessary in place if one wishes to follow the text knowledgeably.)

(b) Special effort had been made in use of terms to distinguish secular circumstances, events, and population groups from religious identifications.

(c) In many cases, years must be taken as estimates, in that conflicts between sources present differences. Some alternative years have been shown by slashes.

(d) Quotation marks around names may indicate (1) a location of the mentioned town or battle is not supplied, or some question or emphasis may relate to the term as used; (2) a regional name supplied before its common use in the year of the entry (e.g. "Syria"); (3) [only rarely] words in quotation marks are from one of the reference sources (below).

(e) The work would benefit beyond measure from in-depth review, adjustments and/or corrections by authorities in the respective historical epochs and eras. (One also can phantasize an expansion embracing the wider world.)

Sonoma, California

March 14, 2011

Sources for the Timeline Data:

Asimov, Isaac, *The Roman Empire*, Boston, MA: Houghton Mifflin Co./Cambridge: *Riverside Press*, 1967.

Dr. Asimov's 'reader-friendly' narrative was extremely useful in connecting other disparately confusing sources.

Botsford, Ph.D., George Willis, *A History of Rome*, NY and London: The Macmillan Co., 1902 (from which was taken additional data not used in the next source below).

Lenci, Tosca, *History of the Daughters*, Sonoma, CA: L P Publishing, Third Edition, 2008 (which contains its own extensive Bibliography; freely available at www.historyofthedaughters.com).

Wells, H. G., *The Enlarged and Revised Outline of History*, New York, NY: Triangle Books, 1940-41 Edition. *Wikipedia, the Internet Encyclopedia*

Insufficient acknowledgement and praise is possible to the *Wikipedia* source, which enabled quick access, corroborative reviews, and extensive details as to persons, places, and events.

A Chronologically Particular Timeline

Of

Near East and Europe History

EARLIEST PERIODS, B.C.E (briefly):

8000, Aceramic and Neolithic—domestication of plants and animals; first permanent but simple settlements in diverse ecological areas.

6500, Ceramic and Neolithic—settlements in rain-fed regions within/at fringes of mountain ranges; some specialization of settlements and extensions of trading.

5000, Halaf—emergence of local centers, significantly that of the Minoan civilization west of Europe on the Island of Crete, where earliest signs of advanced agriculture appear about 5000 b.c.e. (it strongly conjectured, also, that the Minoan culture originated as a settlement as early as 128,000 b.c.e.).

4500, Urbaid—beginning of urban structures and earliest examples of institutionalization of 14 centers functioning in form of public buildings. “Urbaid culture” (defined by pottery style): integration of two large units in central plains running from Syria to SW Iran.

4000, Early Uruk—start of massive occupation from neighboring areas of southern Mesopotamian alluvium. Deep archaeological soundings evidencing preceding alluvial conditions in lowest courses (toward Persian Gulf) show relatively quick change in 4th millennium to cooler, dryer and state diminishing river waters, there before having been humidity and abundance of water (which has led to interpreting deposits as evidence of ‘The Flood’ of *Gilgamesh Epic* and *Old Testament*).

4000--first Neolithic settlers in island of Thera (Santorini; volcanic island in southern Aegean Sea), conjectured as probably migrants from Minoan Crete.

3500, Late Uruk—emergence of urban centers/city-states in southern Mesopotamia, with writing, art and monumental architecture. (Millions of beveled-lip bowls found suggest the first historical mass production). Populations and settlements between 3500 and 3200 indicate a first known density in Near East.

3200: Date of first written documents that are extant. (“Written” here meaning pictorial cuneiform records of commercial information on clay tokens, stamp seals, and ultimately cylinder seal—an accelerated advance which seems to have taken place only after Urbaid period.)

3150, End of Egypt Predynastic period; beginning of Early Dynastic, 1st and 2nd dynasties.

c. 3000 (possibly as late as 2500?—sources differ), Gilgamesh ruled during the “Djemder Nasr” period.; beginning of large-scale canal systems; first evidence of beginning use of gold in Mid-East.

c. 2700, approximate date of full development of the Minoan civilization.

Generally, in the early periods, sustenance necessitated each settlement to command sufficient surrounding territory for its own needs. As relatively secure local production developed the need to control wider territories lessened to a degree that allowed settlements to grow nearer to each other.

“Mesopotamia” = commonly taken as the area between Euphrates and Tigris, but anciently referred to a wider area, as far as some of current Syria, throughout which region immigration occurred from time immemorial. It is impossible to name the people who by the fourth millennium b.c.e. created urban civilization in southern Mesopotamia, it plausibly concluded that a major role was played by Sumerians.¹

¹ *Sumer* = oldest civilization known in Near East; dominated Mesopotamia; origins a mystery, its existence only discovered in relatively recent deciphering of ancient cuneiform-inscribed tablets, a writing that appears ancestor of Phoenician script.

THIRD MILLENNIUM, B.C.

Marked by:

2900, foundation of city of Mari (in present-day Syria²).

2890, reign of Hotepsekhemwy, Second Egyptian dynasty.

Semitic³ tribes occupying Assyria in north part of plain of Shinar and Akkad.⁴

Phoenicians settle on upper east Mediterranean coast (present-day Syria), with centers at Tyre and Sidon.⁵

Creation of Kingdom of Elam.⁶

“Helladic” culture enters Greece early in this millennium, believed brought by populations found also in the Aegean islands and southwest Asia Minor.

2686, reign of Sanakhte, Third Egyptian dynasty.

2613, reign of Sneferu, Fourth Egyptian dynasty.

2500, Early Dynastic Akkad (first ruler, Urnanshe).

2498, reign of Userkaf, Fifth Egyptian dynasty; reign of Userkaf.

2492, Armenian patriarch Haik defeats Shinar’s King Bel.

Sometime after 2500 (estimatedly per *Old Testament*), the “earth[/land] was “divided” between two sons of (Noah-Shem-) Eber/Heber, Joktan and Peleg/Phaleg: Joktan’s 13 sons/clans “dwelled from Mesha as far as Sephar, mountainous region to the east” (Mesha being name of Moab king of region east and north of the end of the Dead Sea⁷), the region of Peleg /Phaleg descendants not being there specified (Peleg-Reu/Ragau-Serug-Nahor-Terah [father of Abraham]).

2474-2398, Golden age of Ur.⁸

² “Syria” region references anciently not ascertainable; to the Grecians specific name for regions about the Tigris River/Semitic northwest including Phoenicia and Palestine, as well generally sometimes as Babylonia, Assyria and Mesopotamia. “Mari” = crossroads city W and slightly N of Baghdad on right bank of Euphrates River.

³ Term pertains to tribes considered descendants of Noah-Shem—Arabs, Aramaeans (*Aram* generally being understood, often rendered as Syria [specifically N half of present Syria, overlapping Turkey and partially equating with upper W Mesopotamian area]), Assyrians, and Hebrews.

⁴ “Assyria” = regions lying mainly along mid-east bank of Tigris and extending toward border of Armenia (ancient writings often confusingly render Assyria as “Syria”). “Shinar” = appears (per *Daniel*, *Isaiah* and *Zachariah*) as an early name of some of, or all of Babylon region. “Akkad” = central city of an Akkadian “Empire” believed formed from centuries of cultural synergy with Sumerians; with surrounding Mesopotamian regions, the predecessor of later empires of Assyria and Babylonia, with Akkadian language gradually replacing Sumerian to be language of Assyria, Babylonia, Eshnunna (ancient Sumerian city/city-state in upper Mesopotamia), and Mari.

⁵ *Phoenicia* = ancient civilization of individually politically independent city-states, centered in N of ancient Canaan, its heartlands along coastal regions of modern-day Lebanon, Syria and N Israel; Phoenicians collaborated in leagues or alliances, but one city might at times dominate another; their (consonantal) language belonged to the Canaanite languages in the Semitic language family, and they were first state-level society to use an alphabet extensively (through their extensive trade, alphabet use spread to N Africa and Europe, where it was adopted by the Greeks who added vowels, and passed on to the Etruscans, who transmitted it to the Romans. *Tyre* = ancient Phoenician city that juts out from Mediterranean coast about 50 miles S of present Beirut, Lebanon. *Sidon/Saida*: Mediterranean coast city about 25 miles N of Tyre and 25 miles S of present capital of Beirut, Lebanon.

⁶ *Elam* equated roughly with SW province of Khuzistan, Iran (fertile plain E of lower Tigris and N of Persian Gulf, extending N and E into Zagros mountains; sometimes given as a region on the SE border of Mesopotamia).

⁷ *Moab* = between Ammon and Edom, all in land sweeping E from Jordan and Dead Sea. Ammon, north of Moab, reached roughly NE from Jordan River’s Jabbock torrent valley, its capital Rabbah, present-day Amman, Jordan.

⁸ *Ur* (Sumerian: *Urim*; Akkadian: *Uru*) = city-state in ancient Sumer located at site of modern Tell el-Mukayyar in Iraq’s Dhi Qar Governorate; once a coastal city near Euphrates mouth on Persian Gulf but now well inland S of Euphrates on right bank; patron deity, Nanna/(innin) the Sumerian moon god (son, Tammuz)—similar divinities were worshipped by Egyptians, Hittites, Phoenicians and Scandinavians.

Sargon, King of Akkad: emergence of regional states: First central state of the Semitic dynasty of Akkad. The Akkadian state (predecessor of much Babylonia and Assyria; sometimes regarded as first historical manifestation of an 'empire') reached height of power between 24th and 22nd centuries b.c.e. following Sargon conquests.⁹ Its regions experienced a constant flux of immigrants, the first group ethnically Semitic affiliations.

2345, reign of Teti, Sixth Egyptian dynasty.

Dynasty of Lagash in Sumer.

2200 (to 1400), Crete leading power in Aegean with trade relations with Egypt and Phoenician regions.

23rd century, Indo-Europeans¹⁰ invaded Grecian regions.

2181-2160, Seventh and Eighth Egyptian dynasties.

2160, reign of Akhtoy Meryibtowe, Ninth Egyptian dynasty.

2134-2130, reign of Meryhathor, Tenth Egyptian dynasty and of Mentuhotep I ("supreme chief of Upper Egypt"), Eleventh Egyptian Dynasty.

21st century believed time of building of Great Ziggur of Ur, which contained shrine of Sumerian goddess Inana/Nanna shrine.¹¹

Earliest evidence of Trojan culture.

2052-1570, Egyptian Middle Kingdom.

2004, Elamites sacked Ur after Neo-Sumerian ruler, Ib-bi-Sin's long struggle to keep control;

Captured Ib-bi-Sin and statue of Nanna were removed to Anshan.¹²

2000 (to 1300) Hittites leading power in Asia Minor.

2000, "Middle Helladic" culture in Greece, believed originating from the north and bringing the Greek language.

2000, Ur III—central state of the Third Dynasty of Ur (ruler, Urnamma).

Assyrian trade colonies in Asia Minor.

Babylon central state of First Dynasty of Babylon.

Civilization in Canaan.¹³

SECOND MILLENNIUM, B.C.

c. 1935 *Old Testament* [Peleg-Rue-Serug-Nahor-] Terah emigrated from "Ur of the Chaldeans"¹⁴ to relatives in Aram, accompanied by his son, Abraham, Abraham's half-sister Sarah, and Abraham's nephew Lot.

⁹ Official inscriptions to this point show Sargon's supremacy scribed in Sumerian (some words appearing otherwise--probably remnants of prior indigenous peoples); with Sargon, nearly all scribing shifted to Semitic Akkadian version of Sumerian with same cuneiform system, then some century and a half later, swung back to Sumerian and after another century and a half Semitic languages prevailed. Differentiation is possible between Mesopotamian (southern) Babylonian and (northern) Assyrian dialects. (Hurrians who for time were a major portion of N population influenced Akkadian to produce local Hurrito-Akkadian dialect.)

¹⁰ A term which has drawn to it disparate descriptions, mainly attached to root *languages* that include major languages of the Iranian plateau, South Asia and Europe; historically also predominant in Central Asia and Anatolia and written attestations appearing since the Bronze Age in the form of Mycenaean Greek.

¹¹ The ziggurate would be restored in the 6th century by Nabonidus of Babylonia; see 555 b.c. (It was excavated in the 1930's a.d.)

¹² *Anshan* = area now in SW Iran region assumed by scholars in central Zagros mountains E of Khouzestan; quite early capital of Elam from 3rd millennium b.c. (supposedly about time writing developed; appears in early Sumerian epic); embraced a number of Elamite dynasties; at various times Anshan was dominated by governors of Susa and rulers of Neo-Sumerian Ur.

¹³ A rough description of *Canaan* is approximately 12,000 square miles bounded respectively on N, W and E by Lebanon mountains, Mediterranean Sea and Jordan River, and extending S to Gaza and the desert; but consistently definite borders are impossible to define. (For *Old Testament* descriptions of the land occupied by the "Canaanites" see *Genesis* 10:19 and *Numbers* 34:1-12.).

Over the next estimated 150 years, Abraham, Sarah and Lot emigrated southward into and through Canaan (Terah died in Harran). Keturah (origin unstated) had six sons by Abraham (Zimran, Jokshan, Medan, Midian, Ishbak and Shuah--traditionally taken as ancestors of peoples in regions of north Arabia to east and south of Canaan); Hagar¹⁵ (Egyptian) had one named Abraham son (Ishmael, for whom his mother took an Egyptian wife; daughters of Ishmael had 12 sons who became tribal chiefs in regions from Egypt's border reportedly as far as Assyria); Sarah had one named Abraham son (Isaac, who with cousin Rebekah from Aram, had two named sons, Esau, progenitor of the Edomite tribes,¹⁶ and Jacob, progenitor of the original 12¹⁷ Hebrew tribes).

[The foregoing to roughly 1750 b.c.]

1728, Hammurapi/Hammurabi ruled Babylon.¹⁸

1686, Samsu-iluna (a Hammurabi son) ruled Babylon.

1648, Abi-eshuh/Abieshu (son of predecessor) ruled Babylon.

1620, Ammi-ditana (son of predecessor) ruled Babylon.

1600 (to 1400), strong Cretan influence in Greece.

1600 (to 1360), Egypt dominated Canaan and Syria.

In this time frame, a drought forced *Old Testament* Jacob and his assembly to move. Son Joseph, who had risen to prominence in Egypt, arranged for them to reside in Goshen,¹⁹ where they would live and multiply for some 400 years.

1582, Ammi-saduqa/Ammisaduqa ruled Babylon.²⁰

1575 (-1550), Nubian Kerma sacked Egypt.

1562, Samsu-Ditana ruled Babylon; Babylon sacked by Hittites²¹[this dating disputed].

1520, Egypt conquered and began domination of Nubia (along the Nile; now in south Egypt and north Sudan).

c. 1500, gigantic volcanic explosion occurred on the Island of Santorini/Thera nearby to Island of Crete. (Recent scientific studies have concluded that an ensuing enormous tsunami explains the inexplicably swift disappearance of the Minoan civilization; considered basis of legend of loss of Atlantis.)

1500—Kassites²²/Middle Assyrians: Neo-Assyrian Empire; rulers Kurigalzu, Asur-uballit I.

c. 1500, Elamite rulers at Susa²³ assumed title "King of Anshan and Susa," it being likely that Anshan and Susa were unified much of "Middle Elamite period."

¹⁴ *Chaldea* = early term for district of Babylonia; also used for mountain country between Armenia and Black Sea.

¹⁵ Christians later are found referring to Ishamelites as also *Hagarenes*.

¹⁶ 'Esau was Edom/Seir' = S of Moab; mountainous region between Dead Sea and Gulf of Aqaba; present-day South Jordan an essential part but anciently spreading westward.

¹⁷ During Jacob household's southward emigration from Aram, daughter "Dinah" was extinguished (c. 1762, "Shechem incident") and son "Joseph" was sold by brothers to an Egyptian caravan, rose to prominence and was responsible for establishment of Jacob and his clans in Goshen during a later drought (below).

¹⁸ Origin not clear on initiation of first Babylon/Chaldean Dynasty; reported dates/rulers are: 1830-1817 b.c. Sumu-abum/Su-abu; 1817-1781 Sumu-la-El; 1781-1767 Sabium/Sabum (son of predecessor); 1767-1749 Apil-Sin (son of predecessor); 1748-1729 Sin-muballit (son of predecessor); then Hammurabi, "1728-1686" (contemporary of Zimri-Lim of Mari, Siwe-palar-huppak of Elam, and Shamshi-Adad I).

¹⁹ Placed some 12 miles SW of Hebron or eastern part of Nile Delta near entrance to Egypt proper.

²⁰ *The Venus tablet of Ammisaduqa*=record of astronomical observations of Venus preserved in numerous cuneiform tablets dating from the first millennium b.c.; believed record first compiled during reign of King Ammisaduqa (or Ammisaduqa)--thus origins probably should be dated to around mid-17th century b.c. Tablet recorded rise times of Venus and its first and last visibility on the horizon before or after sunrise and sunset (the heliacal risings and settings of Venus) in the form of lunar date, the observations recorded for a period of 21 years.

²¹ Historians and archaeologists have not completed identification of Hittites; the most sayable is that they occupied "Syrian" regions N of Canaan, with biblical texts indicating a range over wider areas; per *Genesis* 15:18-19, Hittites occupied land divinely granted to Abraham (there being other various biblical references).

²² *Kassites* in second half of this millennium formed a major part of population in and political leadership of Babylonia but left little imprint on written language--true of other forced relocations resettled in Mesopotamia.

1400 (to 1200), great age of Mycenae;²⁴ development of their trade in Egypt and Eastern Mediterranean; relations with Hittites; settlements in Rhodes, Cyprus,²⁵ etc.; trade with West.
1287 (possibly 1274), Battle at Kadesh/Cadish²⁶ in “Syria” between Egyptians and Hittites; decline of both powers.

1269, Egyptian pharaoh Ramses II and Hittite King Hattusilis III sign the earliest known peace treaty.

In this timeframe, *Old Testament* Moses returned to Goshen after 40 years self-exile in Midian,²⁷ and led the Exodus. (Scholarly dating of Exodus, however, has ranged as early as 1446.)²⁸

1235, Athens founded.

In this and ensuing time frame: Canaan territories were conquered by Hebrews/Israelites.²⁹ In their gradual incursion into Canaan (referred to by some scholars as “peasant’s revolt model”), certain groups/clans realized land possession before others; some still had not by the time of establishment of a capital at Shiloh,³⁰ where then under then-leader Joshua tribe boundaries were drawn and remaining groups designated for areas still to be conquered.³¹

Beginning of *Old Testament* Hebrew “Period of the Judges (roughly to 1050 b.c.)—an era of loose co-federation and no central government, the position of “Judge” including military leadership and authority over varying tribal areas. Foes during the period included Moabites, Ammonites, and Philistines.³² In dire invasions, the tribes formed varying unions under one judge/commander (among the best known, Eli and Samuel).

1223, Achaeans³³ joined together to raid Egypt.

c. 1200, Phrygians³⁴ invaded Asia Minor.

c. 1184/1180, Troy destroyed by Mycenaeans.

c. 1150 (to 1000), gradual destruction of Mycenaean centers in Greece, traditionally attributed to Dorian invasions³⁵ of Peloponnese, followed by invasions of Boeotia and Thessaly.³⁶

²³ *Susa/Shusan* = also an Elamite capital; situate on Karkeh River some 225 miles E of Babylon cit

²⁴ *Mycenae* = major center of Greek civilization dominating much of S Greece; its archeological site is located about 60 miles SW of Athens, Greece.

²⁵ *Rhodes* = Greek island some 111 miles SW of Turkey in the E Aegean Sea; largest of the “Dodecanese Islands” (group of 12 larger, 150 smaller islands in Aegean off SW coast of Turkey). Cyprus = E Mediterranean island S of Turkey, W of Syria and Lebanon; third largest island in the Mediterranean Sea.

²⁶ “Three” described Kadeshes: (a) Kadesh Naphtali/Kadesh in Galilee, believed some four miles NW of Huleh Basin; (b) Kadesh/Kishion, possibly two and one-half miles SE of Megiddo; (c) Kadesh-Barnea, seemingly in S Palestine.

²⁷ Midian apparently ranged over varying Ishmaelite/Edomite/Moabite land, generally agreed mainly in NW Arabia just E of Gulf of Aqabah; Negev/Negeb (area running south from about 28 miles S of Hebron) has been used in a broad sense to include Midian. (With Midian, Moses married Zipporah, daughter of Jethro/Reuel, Midian kohen/high priest.)

²⁸ Under Moses’ command during the Exodus, all Levi tribe males were placed in religious service, not numbered for military service, exempted from a tabernacle tax, and would have enclaved cities with surrounding pastureland in territories that came to be held by the other tribes. Chief Priesthood was fixed in the bloodline of brother Aaron, whose wife, Elisheba, was daughter of Amminadab in the traditional “royal” bloodline from Judah to King David.

²⁹ While biblical record states that the designation, “Israel,” was confirmed on Jacob, the term can be confusing later in the (c. 925/6) post-Solomon split into the two Hebrew kingdoms of “Judah” (south) and “Israel” (north).

³⁰ *Shiloh* = some 12 miles N of Jerusalem; current day Nablus.

³¹ Refer to *History of the Daughters*.

³² *Philistia* = fertile 50-mile by 15-mile coastal plain along part of Mediterranean E coast; exact origin of Philistines unknown but concluded by some scholars was from migrations to Canaan coast from or via Mediterranean islands, specifically Crete.

³³ Meaning of “Achaean” changes over time: used by Homer for Mycenaean-era Greeks; later, major Greek tribe occupying northernmost region of the Peloponnese peninsula comprehending most S parts of Greece, separated by five-mile Isthmus of Corinth.

³⁴ *Phrygia* = ancient kingdom in W central Anatolia, now Turkey.

c. 1000 (to 900), Aeolian, Ionian and Dorian colonizations in Asia Minor.³⁷

FIRST MILLENNIUM, b.c.

1005-967/5, era of *Old Testament* Hebrew Kingdom of David in Canaan lands. David, who had risen to replace Saul, the first appointed king, subdued all internal foes in due time to secure a fully-fledged kingdom, continuing to drive back external foes. (Half-brother competitions supported by different high-priests during David's final years saw the death of son Absalom and deposal of son Adonijah, before son Solomon's supravention.)

967, *Old Testament* Solomon was anointed king of father David's united kingdom.³⁸ (During King Solomon's tenure, he divided near northlands into administrative districts, whose populations experienced increasing forced labor and oppression under monarchical demands.)

c. **925**, *Old Testament* Jeroboam³⁹ returned from self-exile in Egypt upon King Solomon's death and opposed Solomon-appointed successor-son Rehoboam. (926/925, upon Rehoboam's refusal of compromises, the near-north ten tribes split from the south, yielding two Kingdoms, "Israel" and "Judah."⁴⁰)

836, civil war in Egypt.

Beginning c. 800 and over the next three to four centuries, clans began crossing the Mediterranean to Aegean islands and the north Asia Minor shores, and would establish eastern colonies that would form an "Ionian" league of Greek-speaking settlements.

800-700, rise of aristocracies throughout Greece.⁴¹

Mid-800's, Assyrians under Shalmaneser III occupied regions of upper Mesopotamia and east of the Euphrates River, with deportations of Medes⁴² and Persians to other Assyrian-dominated areas.

³⁵ *Dorians* = as a tribe were named by ancient Greek writers, and the "Dorian Invasion" is a debatable historical concept used to explain subsequent changes from pre-classical dialects and traditions in S Greece.

³⁶ *Boeotia* = N of the E part of the Gulf of Corinth. Thessaly = part of northern Greece. (Boeotians, a subgroup of Aeolians [see next], were driven of Thessaly by the Thessalians and moved to Boeotia.)

³⁷ *Aeolians* = one of four major Greek tribes, originating in Thessaly (part of which was called Aeolia; during Dorian invasions they fled to Lesbos Island and to a region in Asia Minor called Aeolis.) Ionia = ancient region comprising a strip of central coastal Anatolia near historical "Smyrna" (now Izmir) in present-day Turkey, and including the islands of Chios and Samos. (According to Greek tradition, Ionia's settlement was connected with the legendary history of the Ionic people in Attica, the colonists were led by Athen's last king—one date given being 140 years after the Trojan war.)

³⁸ The united David kingdom often misnomerally is referred to as Kingdom of 'Israel'.

³⁹ Conflict between the monarchy and Jeroboam (son of Zeruiah, a servant of Solomon; originally chief administrator of the House of Joseph/territory [Ephraim and Manasseh—with the Exodus, Joseph descendants Ephraim and Manasseh were bestowed equality with Jacob's other clans (Joseph had married Asenath, daughter of an Egyptian high priest)—refer to *Old Testament*.] Jeroboam had taken refuge with King Shishak of Egypt when Solomon looked to kill him after Shilonite priest Ahijah professed Jeroboam was to rule "ten, the tribes."

⁴⁰ *Israel* = essentially ancient district of Shomron/Samaria corresponding roughly to N part of present "West Bank;" its capital was/now is Samaria City/Nablus and other major cities were Shechem and Tirzah. At the split the tribes of Judah and Benjamin constituted the south (a Judah kingdom/the Davidic line had begun to emerge after Saul's death with elevation of David, who moved from a prior capital at Hebron to Jerusalem).

⁴¹ It seems that many Greek city-states originally were petty kingdoms with some ceremonial functioning official (*basileus*; *archon basileus*); by stages, in the Archaic period most had become aristocratic oligarchies. *Oligarchy*, (from the Greek, *to rule, to govern, to command*) = system in which the power base rests with a specifically privileged group. Aristotle used the term for rule by the rich, while *plutocracy* is the term there. An oligarchy need not always be rule by wealth or royalty but simply by a privileged group (e.g. the military).

⁴¹ NW of Asia Minor/Anatolia on the south coast of Sea of Marmara.

⁴¹ Athens, expecting a big win, held Alcibiades responsible despite his not being present, appointed one Conon as chief commander (Alcibiades took refuge in a Hellespont castle

776, traditional date of First Olympiad.

753, Rome founded; the Kingdom of Rome would last until formation of the Republic c. 509/508.

738, initial Assyrian incursions into Kingdom of Israel regions.

c. 732, Assyria took Damascus and ruled “Syria”/Aram.

727, Babylonia seceded from Assyria.

727, Kush⁴³ conquered Egypt.

726, Assyria’s Shalmaneser V began sieges of Samaria/Kingdom of Israel region.⁴⁴

725-722/721, Samaria fell to Assyria; Assyria conquered (“northern”) Kingdom of Israel—end of King Hoshea. In Assyria’s victories it sent some captives to Assyrian cities and some to Mede cities.

Meanwhile, rise of Elam, sustaining defeats by Sargon II.

720, Assyria advanced to Egypt’s border. Assyria’s Sennacherib continued campaigns against Elam.

709, King Sargon of Assyria set up a stele in Cyprus.

703, “Chaldean” Merodach/Berodach-baladan proclaimed himself King of Babylon and with Elamite backing rebelled against Assyria; envoys were sent to Judah’s King Hezekiah for support against Assyria.

c. 700, Deioces was established as King of Media (to 647).⁴⁵ Phrygia’s King was Midas.

691, Assyria under Sennacherib won major battle at Tigris against Elam.

689, Sennacherib crowned himself King of Babylon.

680, Assyrian empire, which included Egypt, Syria/Aram, Palestine,⁴⁶ Arabia, and parts of Turkey and Persia, began gradual decay under Sennacherib son, Esar-haddon, as frontiers became difficult to hold.

678 (to 652), Gyges was king of Lydia⁴⁷

681 (to 668), King Assarhaddon ruled Assyria.

675, Anshan fell under Persian Achaemenid⁴⁸ rule in its capture by Teispes, who styled himself King of the City of Anshan/a minor kingdom during a period of Elamite decline until next century, when Anshan would become the nucleus of a Persian Empire as the Achaemenids embarked on greater conquests.

674, Pharaoh Taharqa of Egypt and Kingdom of Kush defeated an Assyrian invasion.⁴⁹

⁴² *Media* was bounded on W by Assyria proper and Armenia, on N by Elburz mountains and Caspian Sea, on E by Parthia, and S by Elam and Persia. Parthia (Latin from Old Persian *Parthava*) = region of present NE Iran; political and cultural base of Arsacid dynasty which ruled a Parthian Empire.

⁴³ Kingdom of Kush/Cush=ancient African state centered located in N Sudan on confluences of the Blue and White Niles and River Atbara; now in Republic of Sudan; one of earliest civilizations in Nile River Valley; also referred to as Nubia and as “Ethiopia” in ancient Greek and Greco-Roman records.

⁴⁴ *Samaria* = ultimate translation, “belonging to the clan Shemer/Shamir;” Samaria City believed originally sited some 30+ miles N of Jerusalem and seven NW of later Shechem/Sy’chem/Sychar (present Nablus) at E end of a six-mile diameter basin surrounded by high hills at E end of narrow valley between Mt. Gerizim/Gerissim and Mt. Ebal; it and its surrounding region first appearing (after Joshua) in the territory of Manasseh. “King of Samaria” is employed before and after the fall of the Northern Kingdom c. 740 b.c., taken to denote a leader over the 10 “northern tribes,” their various villages/cities being scattered disparately in the region. “Samaria” presently denotes that region roughly corresponding to the northern part of the (‘Palestinian’) West Bank.

⁴⁵ *Media* = on W, bounded by Assyria proper and Armenia; on N, by Elburz mountains and Caspian Sea; on E, by Parthia; on S, by Elam and Persia; royal city of Ecbatana lay roughly at center.

⁴⁶ [Greek *Palaistina*; Latin *Palaestina*; believed derived originally from Hebrew *Pelesheth* for Philistine] = name eventually applied by Romans to all of Canaan land; references by *Herodotus* include (1) reference to a branch of the continent that ran “along the Mediterranean coast through *Palestine in Syria* to Egypt [page 228]; (2) “This part of Syria, together with the country which extends southward to Egypt, is all known as *Palestine* [page 400]; and (3) the “fifth” Persian province founded by Darius I contained “the whole of Phoenicia and that part of Syria which is called *Palestine*” [page 192].

⁴⁷ *Lydia* = Iron Age kingdom of W Asia Minor generally E of ancient Ionia in present Turkish provinces of Manisa and inland İzmir; population spoke an Anatolian language known as Lydian; at greatest extent, Lydia’s kingdom covered all W Anatolia.

⁴⁸ The Achmaenid (Persian *Hakhamanis*) dynasty, progenitor of Cyrus II the Great (see following); an Anshan clan of the Pasargadae tribe.

c. 672, Assyria conquered Egypt.

671, Assyrians expelled Kushites from Egypt.

668, At death of Esar-haddon, competition between his sons resulted in a divided rule of Assurbanipal in Assyria and Shamash-shum-ukin in Babylon.

668 (to 626), King Assurbanipal ruled Assyria.
 Civil war in Elam.
 Phraortes II succeeded Deioces in Media (650-625).

650 (to 600), “age of law-givers in Greece.”
 Rise of tyrannies in Ionia.
 Ardys and Sadyattes reigned in Lydia.

647, Assurbanipal defeated Susa/Elam.
 Egypt threw off Assyrian yoke (645).
 Egypt dominated by Ethiopia/Kush.

639, last record of reign of Assyrian Assurbanipal.

634, Cyaxares I began 40-year reign of Media.

631/630, Assyrian power near death; Scythians⁵⁰ invaded “Syria” and captured Ascalon.⁵¹

630, Libyan colony of Cyrene founded.

626, Revolt in Assyria by “Chaldaeans” Nabopolassar; commencement of Second Babylonian/Neo-Babylonian Dynasty/Empire (to 539 b.c.)⁵²
 Assyrian/Babylonian hostilities proceed; anarchy in Assyria; Cyaxares I also opposed Assyria.
 (Hebrew military colony in Elephantine.⁵³)

615, Media sacked Asshur, long-time capital of Assyria.

612, Cyaxares I and Nabopolassar united and took Nineveh. Assyrian government under Ashur-uballit moved to Harran in N “Syria.” Cyaxares I and Nabopolassar marched on Harran; Assyrians fell back to Carchemish;⁵⁴ Harran was occupied by Babylonians and Scythians with a Babylonian garrison. Decisive Carchemish victory sealed the upcoming total Assyrian collapse.
 Nabopolassar and Cyaxares I divided Assyria territory.
 Egypt ruled by Necho II.
 At some point Nabopolassar made his son, Prince Nebuchadnezzar, military commander.

609/608, Necho II, advancing to aid Assyrians, entered Palestine, captured Gaza, and at Megiddo defeated Judaeans king Josiah. The “people of the land” made Josiah a son, Jehoahaz/Shallum king, who reigned just three months before Necho II imprisoned him, put Judah under tribute,⁵⁵ and made another Josiah son, Eliakim/Jehoiakim, “client” king.⁵⁶

⁴⁹ (Per another source, “701 Kushites repelled Assyrians from Jerusalem “[?]”).

⁵⁰ *Scythini* = peoples on W border of Armenia.

⁵¹ /*Askalon/Askelon/Ashkelon/Ashqelon* = Mediterranean coast city in S Palestine 31 miles S of present Tel Aviv and 8 miles N of Gaza strip.

⁵² During preceding three centuries Babylonia ruled by fellow Akkadian speakers and northern neighbors, Assyria, throughout which Babylonia enjoyed prominent status. Babylonia and Assyria shared essentially same language, culture, religion, history and ethnicity but had volatile political relationship. Assyrian managing to maintain Babylonian loyalty changed 627 with death of Assurbanipal, last strong Assyrian ruler; Babylonia rebelled under Nabopolassar the Chaldean the following year, and allied with Medes in sack of Nineveh, when seat of empire again transferred to Babylonia.

⁵³ An island in the Nile River in upper Egypt.

⁵⁴ At current boundary of Syria and Turkey on upper Euphrates River some 60 miles west of Harran and 500 miles N of Jerusalem; most anciently, an important Hittite city which subsequently became a possession of Egypt until captured by Assyrian Sargon II.

⁵⁵ Valuables or money paid/extorted by one ruler to another in submission or as the price of peace.

⁵⁶ The record is not clear completely on the mothers of sons of King Josiah, who had children with more than one woman. As far as can be determined, one Hamutal (only use of name) was mother of Jehoahaz/Shallum and Mattaniah/Zedekiah; one Zebudah (only use of name) was mother of Eliakim/Jehoiakim (below), who had son

c. 608/609, Nabopolassar died. Nebuchadnezzar ruled Babylon.

605, Babylonians won a decisive victory over Egyptians at Carchemish, drove Egypt back to its borders (also sealing Assyria's total collapse also). Nebuchadnezzar dominated "Syria" and Palestine.

598-597, Nebuchadnezzar ("in the/his 7th year") encamped against Judah, besieged it, and captured King Eliakim/Jehoiakim.⁵⁷

c. 597, Nebuchadnezzar continued the Jerusalem siege until Queen Nehushta, wife of Eliakim/Jehoiakim, surrendered herself with hers and Eliakim's young son, Jehoiachin (for whom she had been regent during the previous three months). They were taken to Babylon,⁵⁸ and Nebuchadnezzar left Mattaniah/Zedekiah as King, under heavy tribute. (Along the line, Nebuchadnezzar caused a large number of exiles and deportations.)

Sometime after 597 (according to common dating, c. 587 b.c.), Hebrew King Mattaniah/Zedekiah rebelled; Nebuchadnezzar waged another Jerusalem siege.

595 to 585: First "Sacred" War was fought 595-585 b.c. between the Delphi⁵⁹ Amphictyonic League ["League of Neighbors"⁶⁰] and a central Greek city called Kirrha, over robberies and mistreatments of Delphi pilgrims and encroachment on Delphic land by Kirrha city, which was destroyed.⁶¹

590, five-years of conflict began between Media (King Cyaxares I) and Lydia (King Alyattes).

587-586, Jerusalem's walls were breached; Mattaniah/Zedekiah's sons were killed; Zedekiah was blinded, bound, and taken to Babylon.

586, Nebuchadnezzar's force under Captain Nebuzaradan sacked Jerusalem, took a captivity, exiled an unstated number, and left only "the poorest of the land."

585, Cyaxares I battled Alyattes of Lydia.

585, In Media, Astyages (son of Cyaxares I) succeeded his father and began a 35-year reign as King.

In this timeframe,

A peace treaty was effected between Media's Astyages and Lydia's Alyattes.

Cambyses⁶² I of Anshan married Astyages' daughter, Mandane; they became parents of Cyrus II the Great. At some point Nebuchadnezzar married Amytis, who it appears also was a daughter of Astyages.

573, Tyre fell to Nebuchadnezzar after a long siege.

569, accession of Amasis in Egypt. Unrest on Babylon's frontiers.

562/561, Nebuchadnezzar died. Amel/Awil-Marduk/ Evil Merodach ruled Babylon.

561/560, Hebrew Jehoiachin in his 37th year of captivity was raised to royal status at Awil-Marduk's court.

560, Awil-Marduk was assassinated. Nergalsher-usur/Neriglissar ruled Babylon.

560, Croesus succeeded to Lydia throne.

556, Labashi-Marduk succeeded Neriglissar (whose end is not specified); but Labashi-Marduk conspiratorially was killed in his first year. "Nabonidus"⁶³ ruled Babylon.

Jehoiachin/Jeconiah/Coniah with Nehushta, daughter of Elnathan of Jerusalem. (Consequently it is unknowable what effect the origin(s)/ethnicity(ies) of mothers [potential possible earlier 'alliances'] may have had on conquerors' decisions on substitute kings; conquerors also changed their names.)

⁵⁷ Biblical text says Eliakim/Jehoiakim was taken in fetters to Babylon, while *Josephus* reports that Nebuchadnezzar had him killed and his body thrown before Jerusalem's wall.

⁵⁸ It is not reported what other Josiah relatives were taken to Babylon, one issue being whether Daniel of *The Book of* was not one; however, excavations in Iraq (area of ancient Ishtar Gate, Babylon) unearthed records (e.g. "Jehoiachin's Rations Tablets" in cuneiform; dated to c. 592 b.c.) which mention Jeconiah and five (more) or his sons as recipients of food rations. See 561 re Josiah's longevity in Babylon.

⁵⁹ *Delphi* = on SW spur of Mount Parnassus in the valley of Phocis in central Greece.

⁶⁰ ancient associations of Greek tribes formed before rise of Greek city-states.

⁶¹ The war is noted for use of chemical warfare at the siege of Kirrha, hellebore being used to poison its water supply

⁶² Parsargadae Tribe-Achaemenid Clan...Teispes...-Cyrus I--Cambyses I.

550, Cyrus II the Great, now “king of Anshan” (deposed or replaced his grandfather, Astyages).

In this timeframe, Cyaxares II (mother unclear), son of Astyages and Cyrus II’s uncle, succeeded Cyaxares I of Media.

Cyrus II united Median and Persian forces and became overall *de facto* leader.

Babylon’s Nabonidus left Babylon and the government in the hands of the apparently ineffective “Belshazzar.”⁶⁴

Egypt, Babylonia, Lydia, Sparta/aka Lacedaemon (prominent city-state in SE Peloponnesus) and others were united in opposition of Persians.

549-546 Cyrus II advanced on Lydia, where successor Lydian King Croesus had hoped for Nabonidus aid. Instead, Cyrus II pushed Croesus to Sardes/Sardis.⁶⁵ Sardes fell to Cyrus II; “Persians” conquered Asiatic Greeks, giving them full domination of, and appointment of tyrants⁶⁶ to rule “independent-minded” Ionian cities. Persians seized south Babylonian coast. Babylonia remained as last major W Asia power not yet under Persian hegemony.

539, A major decisive engagement of Cyrus II and Babylonian forces north of Babylon capital (Battle of Opis⁶⁷) was won by Persians in September, as Cyrus continued his Mesopotamian invasion. City of Sippar⁶⁸ surrendered a few days after.

539/538, Cyrus II entered Babylon without a fight (there being some ‘festival’ in progress⁶⁹) and took the city, but preserved it. Cyrus II was proclaimed King of Babylonia and its subject territories, thus incorporating the former Babylonian Empire into a greater Persian Empire, over which concentration was placed on administration and infrastructure with its subjects left religiously free.

538, Cyrus II granted/commissioned one “Sheshbazzar, leader of Judah/governor,” to lead some earlier exiles back to Jerusalem to re-establish its temple, along with 5400 gold and silver vessels formerly seized by Nebuchadnezzar.

530/529, Cyrus II died. He was succeeded by his son, Cambyses II (mother, Cassandane). Cambyses stopped the rebuilding at Jerusalem, after warnings from governors in surrounding districts⁷⁰ that it would become rebellious and hinder passage between regions.

528, Buddhism was founded.

525, Persians defeated Egyptians at Pelusion/Pelusium;⁷¹ Cambyses II led his force along coast and defeated Egyptian force that included Ionian and Carian⁷² mercenaries. Egyptian forces retreated to

⁶³ Much confusion persists as to Nebuchadnezzar’s family, and the descendancy of formidable Queen Mother Nitocris, further compounding the identity/relation of “Belshazzar” (below)--refer to *History of the Daughters*, Appendix 3A.II.

⁶⁴ “Belshazzar”/?Baltasari/?Naboandelus—seemingly a “Nabonidus” son; but again, much record confusion here. (Nabonidus took himself to the Arabian town of Teima in formerly ancient Midian territory.)

⁶⁵ *Sardis/Sardes* = ancient city at site of modern *Sart* in Turkey’s Manisa province; was capital of ancient kingdom of Lydia, an important city of Persian Empire, seat of a proconsul under Roman Empire, and metropolis of Lydia province in later Roman and Byzantine times. (One of the Seven churches of Asia addressed by author of the Book of Revelation); its importance was due first to military strength, second to situation on an important highway from the interior to the Aegean coast, and third to its commanding wide and fertile plain of the Hermus.

⁶⁶ Not in the modern sense of repressive autocracies.

⁶⁷ *Opis* = ancient Babylonian city on the Tigris River believed not far from Baghdad, but its precise location is not established.

⁶⁸ *Sippar*/(Sumerian *Zimbar*) = on E bank of Euphrates river some 45 miles N of Babylon and 22 miles SE of Baghdad (present-day modern Tell Abu Habbah in Iraq).

⁶⁹ “Belshazzar” was sitting at Babylon’s court (cf. Daniel presence -- another son of earlier captured Queen Nehushta?; re “writing on the wall:” “You have been weighed in the balance and found wanting”). Present also was (queen mother?) Amytis, aunt of Cyrus II and the only named Nebuchadnezzar wife; her involvement (if any) in Cyrus’ takeover is unknown.

⁷⁰ Persia’s satraps of Syria and Phoenicia (Sisinnus) and Sathrapuzanes; Tatnai, Persia’s governor of “Beyond the River.”

Memphis (south of Cairo) and were defeated. By the end of the year Cambyses II was recognized as King of Egypt.

522, Cambyses II, having heard of an attempted palace coup, died at Harran enroute home.

521, Darius I (“the Great;” of another branch of Achaemenid line) emerged as king of Persia. He initially dealt with revolts in some parts of the empire (including Susa and Babylon, but Palestine was not named among rebellious provinces); he captured Babylon (and would recapture it in 519), and ultimately took Ecbatana.⁷³ Darius I established “satrapies;”⁷⁴ the fifth, known as Abar-Nahara (“Beyond the River”), consisting of Syria, Phoenicia, Palestine and Cyprus.

512, first European expedition of Darius, in which he conquered Thrace.⁷⁵

c. 512-510, Darius I reconquered Egypt and caused construction of 125-mi canal between Nile River and Suez, opening sea commerce between Mediterranean and Red Sea.

c. 511, Zerubbabel appealed to Darius I and received authorization to continue Jerusalem restoration. Zerubbabel led another large return which included Jeshua (son of Chief Priest Josedek) and a Joacim (seemingly, this Joacim would be Chief Priest of the Ezra period [below]).

509-508, a Roman Republic was established following overthrow of the pre-existing monarchy. The Republic’s complex constitution was aimed to center checks and powers on principles of separation of powers, and was influenced heavily by conflicts between aristocracy/wealthy “patricians” and “plebeians,” Romans not from famous families. (The early Republic resulted in control by aristocratic individuals who could trace ancestry to early kingdom history; but dominating laws over time would be repealed to yield emergence of new “aristocracy” dependent on societal structure of society, rather than law.)

509, Samaritans were rebuffed by the Zerubbabel contingent to partner in Jerusalem/temple rebuilding. When Syrian and Phoenicians officially questioned Zerubbabel’s authority, Darius I reconfirmed Cyrus II’s decree and mandated cooperation.

503, rebuilding was completed of the Jerusalem temple, including cloisters.

c. 500, the “Classical Period” commenced in Greece.⁷⁶

501, Meroë⁷⁷ was the center of iron production.

⁷¹ Pelusium/*Paramoun* (Temple/House of Amun/Old Testament *Sin*) = major city of in E extremes on bank of Nile Delta some 15 miles SE of modern Port Said, then about two and a half miles from the seaboard between it and Delta marshes; as a frontier border fortress it was a key of Egypt relative to “Syria” and the sea.

⁷² *Caria/Karia* (“steep country”) = region of W Anatolia along the coast from mid-Ionia S to Lycia (a region in Anatolia on the S coast of present day Turkey) and E to Phrygia (W central Anatolia, present day Turkey). Its inhabitants were joined by colonizing Ionian and Dorian Greeks in formation of Greek-dominated states. Dorians = one of four major tribes of ancient Greeks, distinguished by their Doric Greek dialect and characteristics of traditions; with Ionians formed the two most politically Grecian groups; place of origination uncertain (two theories are, that they came from N and NE Greek mountain regions, ancient Macedonia and Epirus [SE Europe region between Pindus mountains and Ionian Sea]; or from Asia Minor; in either case, Grecian origin.) Like Aeolian and Ionian tribes, subdivisions often resulted in hostilities between clans.

⁷³ Once capital of Media, now at site of modern Hamadan, Iran some 5 mi S of present Tehran on NE slopes of Orontes mountains; claimed founded by Deioces, first-named Median king—rendered in *Septuagint* and *Vulgate* versions of *Book of Ezra* as Ecbatana and given as “Achmetha” in *Masoretic* and *Peshitta* versions.

⁷⁴ Satrapy = territory/province and administrative region under a “satrap”/appointed governor answerable to the Emperor, which regions often held groups of different bloodlines.

⁷⁵ *Thrace* = large region S of Scythia.

⁷⁶ During the next two centuries the period would be dominated by Athens and the Delian League, displaced by Spartan hegemony, a shift of power to Thebes and the Boeotian League, and finally to Macedon (all below).

⁷⁷ *Meroë* = ancient city on E bank of Nile about 4 mi NE of Kabushiya station near Shendi, Sudan and approx 130 mi NE of Khartoum; capital of Kingdom of Kush for several centuries; site is marked by 200+ pyramids in three groups, identified as Nubian pyramids because of their distinctive size and proportions and of which much is in ruins.

499, Miletus⁷⁸ tyrant Aristagoras tried to conquer Naxos Island⁷⁹ with Persian support--a debacle that incited all Hellenes⁸⁰ in Asia Minor and began an Ionian Revolt against Persians, which progressively drew more and more Asia Minor regions into the conflict.

Commencement of Greco-Persian/Persian Wars between the enormous Persian Achaemenid Empire and fractious political city-states of the Hellenic world.

498, Ionian forces under Miletus' leader Aristagoras, supported by Attica's Athenians⁸¹ and Eretria⁸² captured Persia's regional capital of Sardis and burned it, but were forced to retreat.

497-495, Ionian Revolt effectively remained a stalemate during this time.

494, Regrouped Persians attacked Miletus, the revolt's epicenter, where Ionians suffered a decisive defeat ("Battle of Lade), and the rebellion collapsed; its final embers stamped out the following year.

Darius I, aimed at securing his empire from both further revolts and mainland Greek interference, and to punish Athens and Eretria for burning Sardis, began plans to conquer Greece.

492, the first Persian invasion of Greece, commanded by Mardonius, subjugated Thrace and Macedon;⁸³ but several mishaps forced an early end to that campaign.

490, Darius I's naval task force crossed the Aegean, subjugated the Cyclades and besieged, captured and razed Eretria. The fleet then sailed for Attica to attack Athens and reached the bay near the town of Marathon.⁸⁴

490, Battle of Marathon: Attica's Athenians, aided by a small force from Plataea,⁸⁵ marched to and blocked the two exits from the Marathon plain. After an unclear 5-day standoff, the Athenians attacked and despite the Persian's numerical advantage Athenian hoplites devastated the more lightly armed Persian infantry, routing its wings before turning in on the center Persian line. Defeat of the Persians ended their first invasion, their forces retreating to Asia. King Darius I, however, began raising a huge new army for another invasion but was forced to postpone a new Greek expedition, because of Egyptian revolts.

486/485, Darius I died, without completing plans for a complete conquest of Greece. Xerxes I, son of Darius I and Atossa, daughter of Cyrus II, succeeded his father as King of Persia.

By this time, Nabataeans were established at Petra (their capital; present S Jordan).⁸⁶

In this interim (479? ⁸⁷), Xerxes I authorized Esdras/Ezra, a principal priest of the Hebrew diaspora in Persia, to lead a group to Jerusalem. Xerxes' authorizing epistle directed that all precious items found in Babylonian countries that had belonged to the temple should be returned, and also advised governors of other regions that as many persons there that desired also could go. Ezra was

⁷⁸ *Miletus* = Greek city on W coast of Anatolia (in what is now Aydin Province, Turkey) near the mouth of the Maeander River in ancient Caria; before Persian invasion considered greatest and wealthiest Greek city.

⁷⁹ The largest Greek Aegean island; in the Cyclades group of Greek islands S of mainland Greece..

⁸⁰ *Hellene* = term used generally for Greeks; linguistically, for Greek language and its various dialects. *Hellenic* and *Hellenistic* = with reference "Greek" culture (e.g. *Hellenistic* gods), primarily after the rise of Alexander the Great.

⁸¹ *Attic* (from Greek *Attikos* and Latin *Atticus*) = ancient Greek dialect relating to (ancient "Attica") = Athens/Athenians.

⁸² *Eretria* = city state (*polis*) on W coast of Euboea Island facing Attica's coast across narrow Euboean Gulf.

⁸³ *Macedon/Macedonia* = centered in the NE part of the Greek peninsula and anciently roughly equal to modern Macedonia; bordered anciently on W by Epirus, N by Paeonia (of obscure boundaries but taken as Thrace on E and Illyria on W); E by Thrace, and S by Thessaly (which in Greek Dark Ages was known as Aeolia); Macedonia being heard referred to as "Northern Greece."

⁸⁴ *Marathon* = village/city-state/plain NE of Athens.

⁸⁵ *Plataea* in Boeotia..

⁸⁶ *Nabataea* = region largely equal to ancient Edom. Near end of this millennium, Nabataeans rose to power in after the Babylonian captivities, expanding to occupy and rule territory that included present S. Jordan, parts of S Canaan (with incursion W into Negeb and S Judaea), and N part of Arabia, and control of trade routes crossing from Gulf of Akaba to Syria and Egypt to Persia. (Historian *Josephus* in his time, 37 – c. 100 a.d., would use "Nabatene" to describe the borderland between Syria and Arabia, from the Euphrates to the Red Sea.)

⁸⁷ Dating of the Ezra (and subsequent Nehemiah) period(s) is open to debate; refer to *History of the Daughters*.

authorized to appoint judges for all Coelesyria⁸⁸ and Phoenicia; transgressors were to be punished by death; and tribute payment was forgiven. Ezra sent a copy to Hebrews in Media, gathered subjects beyond the Euphrates; delivered the epistle to the governors of Coelesyria and Phoenicia; and established temple treasurers of priest families as caretakers of restituted money and valuables.

486-485, Egypt revolted against Persia.

484-483, Persia recovered control of Egypt.

c. 483, Ezra received accusations against some repatriated “priests, Levites⁸⁹ and others of the multitude,” that they had transgressed Temple law by marrying foreign wives. Inquiry was held; Ezra directed that any such wives and children born of them, be cast out. “A great many” of the posterity of Jeshua and others priests and Levites immediately did so. At this time Jeshua son, Joacim, was Chief Priest.

482, Athens increased its fleet.

481, Battle of Thermopylae:⁹⁰ Persia again invaded Greece, this time with one of the largest ancient armies ever assembled, led personally by Xerxes I, against an alliance of Greek city-states led by Sparta. Athenian commander Themistocles proposed that the allied Greek army block Persian advance both at Thermopylae Pass (“the Hot Gates”) and the navy, at the nearby Straits of Artemisium. The vastly outnumbered contingent of Greek allies at the Pass, led by King Leonidas of Sparta, held off the Persians in historically famous three days (August-September), before their rear-guard was annihilated. After the second battle day a local resident (one Ephialtes) betrayed the Greeks, revealing a small path to the Persians that led behind allied lines. Aware of the outflanking, Leonidas dismissed the bulk of his army but remained to guard the rear with 300 Spartans, 700 Thespians, 400 Thebans and perhaps a few hundred others, the vast majority of whom were killed. The ultimate Persian victory allowed Persians to overrun most of Greece. On news of the Thermopylae defeat and given the losses (and because the Greek strategy had required both the Pass and Artemisium be held), the Greek navy withdrew to Salamis Island to prepare to defend the Isthmus of Corinth, in hopes of preventing Persian naval operations against the Peloponnesus/Peloponnese.

480, September, Battle of Salamis: Reportedly, Persians overran Boeotia and Attica. Athens, which had been evacuated, was briefly captured; but Xerxes I, anxious for a decisive battle, sailed the Persian navy in Salamis straits to block entrances. The cramped straits, however, were a fatal hindrance: his ships, disorganized, struggled to maneuver. Seizing opportunity the Greek fleet formed in line and scored a decisive victory, sinking or capturing at least 300 Persian ships. Xerxes I retreated to Asia with much of his army, leaving Mardonius to try for a complete land conquest.

480, Carthaginians invaded Sicily (battle of “Himera”).

479, Battles of Plataea and Mycale:⁹¹ The last major battle of Persia (Mardonius) and Greece saw at Plataea the defeat by Greek force of the remaining Persian army and, at Mycale,⁹² of the Persian navy. (Persian garrisons at Sestos⁹³ were expelled the same year.) Ionians revolted from Persia.

⁸⁸ *Coele/Koile* [“hollow”] ‘Syria’ = vague historically, and much discussed; but more or less a region of S ‘Syria’ greater than the Beqaa valley in E Lebanon, while often used for the whole area S of the Eleutherus River, including Judea (with one ancient historian indicating also the Palestine coasts as far as Joppa). (Eleutherus/now Nahr al-Kabir al-Janoubi, Arabic for *the southern great river*, forms the N end of the border between present Lebanon and Syria and flows into the Mediterranean Sea.)

⁸⁹ *Levite/pl. Levites* = descendant(s) of Hebrew tribe of Levi. Biblical texts reflect distinctions between (Levi...Aaron-) Levite *priests* and non-Aaronic Levite levites, servants of the priests and priesthood.

⁹⁰ Eastern central Greece on the only land route large enough to bear any significant traffic for passage from N to S along the East coast of the Balkan Peninsula.

⁹¹ Fought on the slopes of Mount Mycale on the coast of Ionia opposite the island of Samos.

⁹² Mountain on the W coast of central Anatolia (present Turkey).

⁹³ Greek town of the “Thracian Chersonese”/Gallipoli peninsula of historic Thrace now part of modern Turkey; the peninsula running SW into the Aegean Sea between the Hellespont/Dardanelles) and Melas/Saros bay. (Hellespont: narrow strait between Europe and Asia leading from Aegean Sea through a tiny Sea of Marmara and

(On Xerxes I's return after Salamis, he suppressed revolts in Babylonia [under Shamash-erba] and Bactria⁹⁴ [under satrap Masistes], and ultimately reduced Babylon city from any notable position. He also undertook an apparently never-completed building of a new palace at Persepolis,⁹⁵ spending the remainder of his reign at Susa.)

[Note: Infra-battlings of Grecian tribes are not detailed.]

478, the allies expelled Persian garrisons from Byzantium.⁹⁶ Persia made no more attempts on the Greek mainland; from then onward the Greek *poleis*⁹⁷ would take the offensive and be on the counter-attack. Athens fortified itself.

Actions of Spartan general Pausanias at the siege of Byzantium had alienated many of the Greek states from the Spartans; the anti-Persian alliance reconstituted around Athenian leadership--the "Delian League" (Confederation of Delos⁹⁸), which continued to campaign against Persia the next three decades, beginning with expulsion from Europe of remaining Persian garrisons. Athens undertook fortifications.

469 or 468, Battle of Eurymedon (under Athenian general Cimon): Freedom for the Ionian cities was won in a double battle of the Delian League and the Persians on both water and land, in the vicinity of the mouth of the Eurymedon River in Pamphylia.⁹⁹

[Note: Details of all expeditions/battlings in this and following timeframe are not included.]

465/464, Xerxes I of Persia was murdered ("in his 21st year"). His successor was Artaxerxes I "Longimanus," son of Xerxes I and one Amestris. At some point Artaxerxes I replaced Persian Queen Vashti with "Esther".¹⁰⁰

462 (depending on dating), Nehemiah, former cupbearer to the Persian king, learned that Jerusalem' still was in poor condition (reportedly 'neighbors' had done a great deal of mischief with fighting, pillaging, and damage to wall construction). He sought and received royal authority to go to Jerusalem, and is found referred to as 'governor'.

461-460, Athens allied with Argos (city of the Peloponnese).

on through the Bosphorus Strait to the Black Sea. Bosphorus Strait/*Istanbul Strait* = presently Turkish strait; along with Dardanelles/Hellespont forms part of Europe/Asia boundary and connects to the Aegean Sea.)

[1], the modern Gallipoli peninsula in European Turkey. Situated on the Hellespont opposite Abydos,

⁹⁴ District/province on W side of Himalayas, embracing SE Turkestan and NE Afghanistan (Zoroaster its most ancient king).

⁹⁵ *Persepolis* = ceremonial capital of Achaemenid Empire; situated approximately 45 miles NE of modern Shiraz in Fars Province of Iran.

⁹⁶ Thracian city on the Bosphorus Strait; later named Constantinople; now named Istanbul, Turkey.

⁹⁷ Singular, *polis*: city; city-state; also citizenship and body of citizens; term persisting into Roman times when equivalent Latin was *civitas*, also meaning 'citizenhood'; although English "city-state" does not fully translate the Greek term--*poleis* were not like other primordial ancient city-states like Tyre or Sidon, ruled by a king or a small oligarchy, but rather a political entity ruled by its body of citizens; term changed with development of governance center in city to indicate state which included its surrounding villages; finally with emergence of a citizenship notion between the land owners it came to describe the entire body of citizens. Ancient Greeks didn't refer to Athens, Sparta, Thebes and other *poleis* as such; they rather spoke of the Athenians, Lacedaemonians, Thebans and so on. The body of citizens came to be the most important meaning of the term *polis* in ancient Greece. Ancient Greece consisted of several hundred more or less independent city-states (*poleis*), which were fierce in maintaining independence, many remaining neutrally apart from defensive alliances of others. The *poleis* were focused on urban centers within often tiny city-states. An independent nature carried also to external colonies, despite perhaps counting a certain homeland *polis* as their founding city. Membership in smaller group leagues saw constant flux; in the later Classical Period leagues would become fewer and larger and dominated by one city (particularly Athens, Sparta and Thebes), with other *poleis* compelled to join under threat.

⁹⁸ The island of Delos at center of Cyclades was the confederation's meeting ground.

⁹⁹ *Pamphylia* = a region in the south of Asia Minor between Lycia and Cilicia (modern day Turkey).

¹⁰⁰ Of the *Book of Esther*; her reign per the biblical record involves confusion between the names/identities of Xerxes, Artaxerxes and Ahasuerus—refer to *History of the Daughters*.

460/454, involvement of a Delian League expedition in an Egyptian revolt resulted in its catastrophic defeat. Further campaigning was suspended.

459, Athenians made an expedition to Egypt.

458, [Per the Ezra/Nehemiah dating herein], the Jerusalem walls were completed.

457, Lacedaemonians made an expedition to Phocis and Boeotia ("battle of Tanagra").

Athenians conquered Boeotia ("battle of Oenophyta") and became masters of the whole land excepting Thebes.¹⁰¹ Athens' empire now embraced continental as well as maritime dominion.

In this timeframe, c. 460, in Egypt, Inaros, son of Libyan prince Psamtik led a revolt against the Persians with help from Athenian allies. The Persian force there initially was defeated and retreated to Memphis.

456/454, Artaxerxes I sent his Phoenician fleet to the Egyptian rebellion. Under general Megabyzus the Athenians in Egypt were defeated after a two-year siege. (Inaros reportedly was crucified at Susa).

454, the Delos confederacy treasury was transferred from Delos to Athens.

453 (to 446), Achaëa was incorporated into the Athenian empire.

451/450, after Cimon battles (in which he died at the second) with Artaxerxes I, at Cyprus, a major Greek victory off Salamis did not move the Athenians to continue warring—they were disposed to make peace with Artaxerxes. There is nothing on record regarding the negotiations (some historical sources suggest there was a peace treaty¹⁰²). However, the Greek cities on Cyprus were left to deal on their own with the Phoenicians, who soon got the upper hand and would hold it for many years.

451, commencement of a five-year truce between Argos and Lacedaemon/Sparta.

449-448, Second Sacred War, over Sparta's detaching Delphi from the hegemony of Phocis (central part of Greece including Delphi) and rendering it independent and yielding an indirect confrontation between Athens (champions of the Phocians) and Sparta—a precursor to the Peloponnesian Wars (below). Immediately after Spartan departure, the Athenians recaptured Delphi for the Phocians.

447, commencement of construction of the Parthenon.

446/445, hostilities between Sparta and Athens (then the strongest city-state in Greece) following 460 b.c. (during which Sparta was challenged by Athens in a number of battles) were halted with a truce agreement and 30 years of peace between Athens and the Peloponnesians. (Rivalry would continue, however, as Athens expanded its navy, extended dominion over the Mediterranean, and meddled in Peloponnesian politics. Many Greek polises looked to Sparta for leadership; and fighting ultimately resumed.)

432, "Battle of Potidaea" (a siege lasting until 430/429): major catalyst of the Peloponnesian war; fought on the Chalcidice peninsula¹⁰³ between Athens and Perdiccas II of Macedonia, a combined army of Corinth and Potidaea (a Corinthian colony, but priorly a member of the Delian League that paid tribute to Athens), defectors to Perdiccas. (At the time, Perdiccas II of Macedon¹⁰⁴ was fueling revolts of other Athens allies in Thrace.)

431, during a naval blockade of Potidaea by Athens,¹⁰⁵ assemblies at Sparta decided on war against Athens.

Peloponnesian Wars (in three phases to 404).

[**Note:** Not all details of the Peloponnesian warring are included.¹⁰⁶]

¹⁰¹ To the north of the mountains that divide Boeotia from Attica.

¹⁰² Eventual Greek triumph in the major wars can be seen to begin at Marathon which, in ensuing 200-years' rise of Classical Greek civilization, is seen as a pivotal moment in European history. Legend of a Greek messenger running to Athens with news of victory became inspiration for Marathon athletic event introduced at 1896 Athens Olympics, originally run between Marathon and Athens. "Peace of Callias" = a purported treaty negotiated by Athenian politician Callias 449 b.c. between Delian League and Achaemenid Persia.

¹⁰³ *Chalcidice* = in north Greece/southeast portion of central Macedonia.

¹⁰⁴ King of Macedonia c. 454- 413. C. 434, his brother, Philip, had challenged him for the throne, enlisting Athens' support. Perdiccas' response was stirring up rebellion in a number of Athenian tribute cities, Potidaea included.

¹⁰⁵ Philosopher Socrates is revealed in several Plato dialogues as being a veteran of the battle and having saved the life of Alcibiades (*Symposium* 219e-221b).

431. First phase of Peloponnesian wars, Archidamian War (to 421)—10 years of various attacks, revolts, and varying advances. The “Peloponnesian League,” led by Sparta, launched repeated invasions of Attica; Athens used naval raids suppressing insurgencies in the Peloponnese. (In the second year, Athens suffered an outbreak of plague.¹⁰⁷) Ultimately neither side was able to supravene, and some allies of both were left without restoration of their land.

424, Persia’s Artaxerxes I died after a 40-year reign. He ultimately was succeeded by son Ochus/Darius II, son of Artaxerxes I (mother unknown), (“whom the Greeks nicknamed *Nothos*, “the bastard”).¹⁰⁸

421, “Peace Treaty of Nicias” ended the first phase of the Peloponnesian Wars, with a defensive alliance between Athens and Sparta. The treaty, however, was soon to be undermined by changing alliances and renewed revolts and fighting.

Much blame for resumption of the wars has been attributed to Athenian general Alcibiades’ convincing Athens to war against Syracuse (SE corner of Sicily Island) and a valuable provider of food to Sparta. Alcibiades stressed that, if Athens was established there, Sparta could be weakened into subjection; further, Athens could draw manpower from Italy, North Africa and Iberia (homeland of most of the mercenary army of Carthage,¹⁰⁹ which ruled the west of Sicily. Rome could defeat Sparta, dominate the W Mediterranean and rule all then known Western world. The Sicilian city of Segesa, threatened by Syracuse, offered to pay for the expedition, and Alcibiades went to Sicily with co-Commanders, Nicias and Lamachus.¹¹⁰

414/413, Battle of Syracuse/Sicily, second phase of Peloponnesian Wars: A massive expeditionary force dispatched by Athens in 414 to attack Syracuse failed disastrously, with destruction of its entire force.

After the Sicily debacle the rumor was the Athenian Empire’s end was nigh—treasury and docks depleted, its supply of men dead or captured. A good part of Ionia rose in revolt; Syracuse sent its fleet to the Peloponnesius, and Persia supplied Sparta with money and ships. Athens survived only in that opponents’ support was slow in coming, Spartan officers were poor diplomats, and the rebelled Ionians, not receiving early protection, rejoined Athens. Most important was that Athens had reserved some money and 100 ships.

412/411, A Council of 400 was established (in the tradition of legal reformer Solon, some 100 years before, which had consisted of 100 citizens each from the four primary tribes, to deliberate before the people, and ensure nothing brought to the assembly was without its prior resolution). However, with the present council’s 400 oligarchs at Athen’s helm, the reserved fleet based at Samos (island off the coast of Asia Minor) refused cooperation, and appointed Athenian Thrasybulus as general and leader. Thrasybulus (who later would lead the democratic resistance), recalled Alcibiades (who had been condemned because of the Syracuse debacle), to co-command.

Meanwhile, an assembly at Colonus (northwest of Athens) had made provisions for a new constitution.

411, the 400 was overthrown, having governed but a matter of a few months.

The next couple of years were marked by emergence of an alliance between Sparta and Persia versus Athens. Tissaphernes, Persian satrap of Lydia, supported Sparta; Athens first lost nearly all Ionia,

¹⁰⁶ Readers are referred to Bury’s *History of Greece*, in which he details all the years of warrings, including various makings and breakings of alliances.

¹⁰⁷ An estimated one-third of Athenians ultimately died, including Athens’ leader, Pericles.

¹⁰⁸ Artaxerxes I’s nitial successor was Xerxes II (mother unknown), killed almost immediately by half-brother, Sogdianus who ruled some months until Ochus supervened.

¹⁰⁹ *Carthagina/Carthage* (*New City*, from Phoenician, implying I was “New Tyre”) = on the E side of Lake Tunis across from present Tunis, North Africa, it was a major urban center which, according to Roman legend, was founded 814 b.c. by Phoenician colonists from Tyre under leadership of Queen Dido/Elissa. Its development as a strong Mediterranean power resulted in rivalry with Syracuse and later Rome.

¹¹⁰ Of 45,000-50,000 men of Athens’ force, 7000 survived final battles and all were sold into slavery excepting Nicias and Demosthenes who were killed. One Gylippus is credited with saving the Syracusans; Syracuse remained free and would be a major W Mediterranean power until the third century b.c. Punic Wars (below).

then gradually recovered some through battles with Persian satrap Pharnabazus of Phrygia on the Hellespont.

410, Athens' fleet under Alcibiades attacked the Spartans at Cyzicus¹¹¹ and obliterated its fleet. Sparta immediately made overtures for peace based on territorial status quo, which was rejected. The Cyzicus victory led to reunion of the Athenian state (for at least a year Athens and Samos had been divided), and Athens proceeded to reestablish its financial basis.

Meanwhile, the attention of Persia's King Darius II had been brought to focus on the west. He sent his son, Prince Cyrus III to Sparta. Simultaneously the Spartans appointed a new admiral, Lysander, who formed a strong relationship with Cyrus III.

409, Carthaginians again invaded Sicily.

406, Lysander succeeded in defeating an Athenian fleet at Notion, a Greek city-state on the west coast of Anatolia, where the fleet had been guarding Ephesus on the west coast, near present-day Selçuk, Turkey.¹¹²

405, Battle of Arginusae (islets south of Lesbos Island) was a great victory for the Athenians. However, failure of the Athenians to finish off Sparta's fleet and to rescue stranded crews caused a government trial that resulted in the execution of six high naval commanders. Nonetheless, the victory restored Athens command of the eastern Aegean, and Sparta proposed peace on the same terms as before. The offer again was rejected.

Sparta needed to restore its fleet, and Lysander (given a second command contrary to existing rules) went to Cyrus III at Sardis and obtained necessary funds. With his new fleet, Lysander gave the Athenian fleet a couple of merry chases, refusing to engage in battle, until he had the Athenian fleet poorly placed, provision-wise, at Aegospotami (an open beach without harborage on the east side of the Hellespont). Lysander waited it out four days and then attacked when the Athenian sailors had disembarked for a meal and, scattered on the shore, were defenseless against 200 galleys that rowed across the straits. Only 20 Athenian ships escaped; 160 were captured; and three to four thousand Athenians were put to death.

Athens was certain it needed to prepare for siege. Lysander, however, had no such intent; he planned to starve Athens into submission. He prepared for a successful blockade by driving all colonists he could find in the islands into Athens itself.

405, Dionysius I (the Elder), tyrant at Syracuse/Sicily and previously a foe of Carthage, made peace with Carthage.

404, once Lysander had ordered affairs in the subjugated regions of the Hellespont and Thrace, he blockaded Piraeus with 150 ships. When provisions began to fail, the Athenians proposed peace, offering to resign imperial status and become Lacedaemon/Spartan allies. The terms proposed were unacceptable (demolition of the "long walls"¹¹³ appeared to be a definite condition for peace).

404, Athens, starving and diseased (having also endured a plague) surrendered to Sparta, soon followed by its allies. Terms included destruction of the long walls and Piraeus fortifications; surrender of all foreign possessions, forfeit of Athens' entire fleet except for 12 triremes. Sparta, however, denied a Peloponnesian Confederacy's call that Athens be demolished. Sparta received Athens into its system as an ally, with Athens pledging to follow its leadership.

Not all Athenians were miserable at the war's outcome. For the oligarchs, foreign occupation was a certain path for the death of democracy.¹¹⁴ Lysander was invoked ostensibly to establish a new 'constitution'; and a combined cowed and oligarchic Athenian assembly endorsed a measure for

¹¹¹ *Cyzicus* = NW of Asia Minor/Anatolia on the South coast of Sea of Marmara.

¹¹² Athens, expecting a big win, held Alcibiades responsible despite his not being present, appointed one Conon as chief commander (Alcibiades took refuge in a Hellespont castle).

¹¹³ "Long walls" were built from a city to its port as a secure connection to the sea should the city be besieged. Athens' long walls connected it to its ports at Piraeus and Phalerum. Athens' long walls were too strong for attack.

¹¹⁴ Reports lend credence to suspicions that the oligarchs even had for some time abetted Athens' placement at the foe's mercy, toward that end.

nominating a body of 30 men ("the Thirty"/[Tyrants], to draw it up and to manage affairs until it was completed. [Note: Only highpoints are related. Not included are voluminous details of the competitive politics and tyranny at Athens, the various constrictive entities ("the 3000," etc.), and measures undertaken such as purgings and executions of prominent democrats (even of more liberal oligarchs).]

Meanwhile, exiles driven out by the oligarchs had taken refuge in neighboring states which, once foes of Athens, had not received fair shares from Sparta of the spoils of war and knew disgust over "The Thirty" under Lysander's discretion.

c. 404, Persia's Darius II died and was succeeded by Artaxerxes II *Mnemon/Menmon*, son of Darius II and Parysatis, daughter of Artaxerxes I.

404, Thebes and Thrasybulus took the first major opposing step against the Athenian oligarchy. With a band of 70 they seized and established a defense at the Attic fortress of Phyle, close to the Boeotian frontier.

403 (to 389), successes of Thrasybulus in the Hellespont: a first expedition of the Thirty against Thrasybulus was aborted by weather. A second, in May, was routed in a surprise night attack. Thrasybulus and his force descended from Phyle and seized Piraeus. Although he had 1000 men by then, Piraeus, without fortifications, did not provide adequate defense.¹¹⁵ The Spartans had a garrison at Athens. Thrasybulus drew up his forces to the hill of Munychia; and the next morning his force defeated the combined forces of the Spartan garrison and the army of the Thirty.

403, in the wake of the resisters' victories (the Thirty having fled) 'democracy'¹¹⁶ was re-established was re-established at Athens.

c. 402/401, Battle of Cunaxa (some 50 miles N of Babylon): Cyrus III, younger brother of Artaxerxes II, sought with aid of 10,000 Greeks to overthrow his brother and perished in the fight.

During reign of Artaxerxes II, Persia's control of Asia Minor entered a seesaw of varying alliances involving both Greece proper and Asiatic Greek satrapies, as revolts against Persia were accompanied by Greek civil warring factions.

c. 397, Macedon¹¹⁷ at this point was ruled then by Amyntas III, having come to the throne after a confusing decade of previous rulers. He had enemies at home, and was driven out by Illyrians.¹¹⁸

394 (to 387), Corinthian War--Sparta pitted against a coalition of the allied states of Thebes, Athens, Corinth, and Argos, backed initially by Persia and fought on two fronts: on land near Corinth and Thebes and at sea in Aegean, the immediate cause local conflict in NW Greece in which both Thebes and Sparta

¹¹⁵ The Thirty, to secure for themselves a place of refuge should Athens become untenable, seized Eleusis (about 15 miles W of Athens) and put about 300 Eleusians to death.

¹¹⁶ More interested persons are advised to consult research for all the niceties of the democracy that embraced Athens and its surrounding region of Attica (*e.g.* details of selection and attendance), in that the following is but a very rough summary. The system was not one in which *selectively eligible* voted on legislation and executive bills but not for representatives. Although participation was open only to a specific group, it was not restricted to economic class. Of a 4th century Attican estimated population of 250 to 300 thousand, eligible citizen families may have amounted to no more than 100,000, from which some 30,000 adult males who had completed military training were entitled to vote in the assembly. (The number previously in the 5th century might have been as high as 60,000, to fall dramatically during the Peloponnesian war with stricter definition of citizen.) The majority of the population was excluded from eligibility--slaves, freed slaves, women, resident foreigners (*metics*), and citizens whose rights were suspended such as for failure to pay a debt to the city. Reforms after 450 b.c. stipulated that citizens had to be descended from citizens on both sides of the family. Three political bodies formed the government--the *assembly*; the *boule* (a council of 500); and the courts (a subset of citizens over 30), with the assembly and courts the real powers, their members not liable to review and prosecution as were council members and all other officeholders.

¹¹⁷ Region of southeast Europe/central Balkan peninsula between Adriatic and north Aegean seas.

¹¹⁸ Illyria//*Illyris Romana/Illyris Barbara/Illyria Barbara* = stretching from Drilon River in modern N Albania, W to Istria/Croatia), N to Sava River (Bosnia and Herzegovina); Salona (near modern Croatian split) functioned as capital; S Illyria later to become Epirus Nova of Roman Macedonia.

¹¹⁸ *Marathon* = village/city-state/plain NE of Athens

intervened, with the deeper cause hostility towards Sparta provoked by its expansionism in Asia Minor, central and northern Greece, and even west. On land the Spartans achieved early successes but were unable to capitalize; fighting soon became stalemated. Sparta's fleet, decisively defeated by the Persian fleet early on, effectively ended attempts at naval power. (Thrasylbulus died in this battle.)

Athens, taking advantage, launched several naval campaigns, including retaking a number of islands of its fifth century empire. Alarmed by Athen's successes, Persians switched support from the allies to Sparta, which forced the allies to seek peace.

387, Peace of Antalcidas/"King's Peace" ended the Corinthian War: Antalcidas' success at head of Persian-led naval operations *circa* the Hellespont was such that Athens was glad to accept terms of peace, and Persia confirmed as controlling all Ionia. All other Greek cities were given independence but with Sparta as guardian and enforcer of the peace. In effect, the war had established Persia's capacity to interfere successfully in Greek politics, and to affirm Sparta's hegemonic position in the Greek political system.

[**Note:** Here the timeline departs from ensuing Athens/Sparta events (*e.g.* Sparta's seizure of Thebes and other battles and/or changing alliances) and changes focus to ascendancy of Macedon. All ensuing Greek/Macedon encounters, however, are not detailed.]

390, Amyntas III succeeded Perdiccas as King of Macedonia. He cultivated friendship with Athens and subsequently at a Spartan congress Amyntas III joined Greeks in voting Athens' recovery of possessions, a treaty that allowed Amyntas to keep timber revenues.

385-383, Persia's Artaxerxes II overcame major rebellion of Persia's coastal and Asia Minor satrapies.

Upon the death of Macedonian King Amyntas III, Philip II (his youngest son; mother, one Eurydice) returned to Macedon from Thebes. (While being held as a hostage¹¹⁹ at Thebes during Theban hegemony he had received military and diplomatic education). Deaths of his father and elder brothers (Alexander II and Perdiccas III, who reigned only briefly) brought Philip II as regent for Perdiccas' son, Amyntas IV.

363, Philip II deposed Amyntas IV and himself rose to Persia's throne, ushering in Macedonian dynasty domination of all Greece. He secured his position in immediate environs with diplomacy and promised tributes.

358, Persia's Artaxerxes II died and was succeeded by Artaxerxes III, son of Artaxerxes II (mother unknown).

By 356, Philip II first secured his north border, victorious over Illyria and Paeonia; he secured Amphipolis--most important city along the north Aegean Sea, controlling entrance to Thrace and with valuable nearby silver mines, once part of Athen's empire).

Macedonia's formidable hereditary monarchic system was a sharp contrast with culture and institutions of the Grecian mostly aristocratic or democratic city-states. Military skills and vision of Macedonian greatness fueled early successes. Philip strengthened the Macedonian army, introducing the phalanx infantry with its famous long spears/*sarissa*, and would capture other Greek sites as well as putting down various revolts. Gaining prestige as a warrior he rapidly expanded his kingdom through various campaigns.

356/355, Alexander III (the Great) was born to Philip II and Olympias, daughter of the King of Molossi of Epirus.

c. 353 to 346, Third Sacred War/"War of the Allies"/also may be referred to as "Social War:" fought between Phocians and the Delphic Amphictyonic League (led by Thebes), stemmed from a large fine imposed on the Phocians the preceding year for cultivation of sacred land. The Phocians refused to pay, seized Delphi's Temple of Apollo, and used its treasures to fund large mercenary armies which, although they suffered several major defeats, enabled them to continue the war so many years.

¹¹⁹ It was an ancient practice for one superpower to hold hostages as security, usually offspring or significant relatives of dynasty's over which they dominated.

353 or 352, Battle of Crocus Field/Battle of Volo, recorded as bloodiest battle of ancient Greek history and the last battle of the Third Sacred War: Thebes, which had the strongest ground force of any city-state, had called on Philip II for support and submitted to Macedon. Joined by Thessalians, the Macedonian army defeated the Phocians and their allies, with Philip's resounding victory secured his appointment as ruler of Thessaly.

352-346, Philip was active in completing subjugation of Balkan hill-country to the west and north and in reducing Greek cities of the coast as far as the Hebrus /Maritsa/Evros River (longest-running river solely in Balkan interior).

351, Artaxerxes III of Persia invaded Egypt and failed; he faced new uprisings in Asia Minor; took Sidon; allied with Thebes.

348, Artaxerxes III finally took strategically placed Olynthus (which had shifted alliance to Athens), which housed relatives, pretenders to Macedon's throne (Arrhidaeus and Menelaus). With Macedon and regions adjoining it then securely consolidated, Philip celebrated his Olympic Games at Dium.

347, Philip II compelled submission of Thracia's prince.

Athens, hamstrung by the Sacred War, had been unable to stop Philip II in Thessaly, where he had taken its southeastern region, Magnesia, and the important port of Pasagae. Despite Athens' declaration of war against him, Philip had formed alliances as needed while increasing power in northern Greece, with a garrison established at Crenides/Krinides, where Thracians had called upon his help; its mines provided him with campaign gold.

347 and 346, Athens sent embassies to Philip II.

343, Persia's Artaxerxes III finally succeeded recovering Egypt.

343/342, Aristotle went to Macedonia to tutor Alexander III.

342, Philip II He made a great expedition crossed Epirus to the Adriatic Sea against Scythians.

341-339, Philip II conquered and marched east through Thrace, and attempted to capture Byzantium and the Bosphorus, which would cut off Black Sea grain that supplied Athens with much of its food. Sieges at Perinthus/Perinthos/Heraclea (west of Byzantium) and Byzantium failed. Athens, in the face of its own grave danger, built a coalition of city-states under Demosthenes to oppose the Macedonians, the other principal member being Thebes.

Philip II descended into and campaigned in Greece proper.

338, Battle of Chaeronea (in Boeotia), between the Athens-allied coalition and Philip II's army yielded decisive victory for the Macedonians and left Philip II the unquestioned master of Greece. In the end the exhaustion of the Grecian states and Philip's power allowed him to impose a peaceful settlement of the wars and Macedonian hegemony over Greece. Macedonia became the leading state in the Amphictyonic League, and Phillip as head of the Pythian Games¹²⁰ stood at center of the Greek political world.

Philip II entered the Peloponnesus.

338/337, Phillip II, having consolidated Macedonia over Greece's heartland, he did not attempt to annex the territory or unify it into a new province. He simply established a federation of Greek states, the League of Corinth, compelling most of the poleis (at two "Synedrions" at Corinth)¹²¹ to join his own Corinthian League.¹²² Members agreed never to wage war against each other unless to suppress a revolution, and Philip II was elected leader (*hegemon*) of an army to invade the Persian empire.

338, Artaxerxes III of Persia was poisoned by one Bagoas who installed Artaxerxes III's son, Arses/Artaxerxes IV (mother unknown) as King.

¹²⁰ /*Delphic Games* = one of four 'Panhellenic' games; forerunner of Olympic Games, they were held every four years at the Apollo sanctuary at Delphi.

¹²¹ *Synedrion* = "sitting together; assembly; council." (Later adopted by Hellenistic Jews from corrupted Aramaic as *sanhedrin*, "[great] council" in Late Hebrew; further corrupted to *sanhedrim* as false correction when the Greek was taken into Mishnaic Hebrew).

¹²² Before, many southern Greeks did not consider Macedonians, not having had a polis-style government, as full sharers of classic Greek culture despite their Greek dialect and maintenance that they *were* Greek.

336, the invasion of Persia was in its earliest stage when Macedonia's Philip II was assassinated. He was succeeded on Persia's throne by his son Alexander III (the Great), who became commander in-chief of Macedonia and the Grecian league.

336, Aforesaid Bagoas poisoned Artaxerxes IV and installed Darius III *Codomannus*, grandson of and married to a half-sister of Darius II, as Persia's King.

336, Alexander the Great descended into Greece.

By 335, every Greek state except Sparta had submitted to Alexander the Great, who was elected general.

334, Alexander the Great started an expedition toward Persia in the spring.

334 (May), Battle of Granicus (River): First of three major battles with Persians, fought in northwest Asia Minor (near site of Troy and modern city of Ergili, Turkey). Alexander defeated Persia's satraps of Asia Minor including a large force of Greek mercenaries. Alexander conquered Lydia and established sieges at Miletus and Halicarnassus (site of modern Bodrum, Turkey).

334-333, Alexander conquered Lydia, Pamphylis, Pisidia and Cilicia.¹²³

333 (November), Alexander routed the Persians in north Syria—Battle of Issus. Syria and all Phoenicia except Tyre submitted. An offer of Persia's Darius III to cede all Asia west of the Euphrates and pay 1000 talents¹²⁴ was not accepted; Alexander demanded unconditional surrender. Darius III retreated, while Alexander captured and retained Darius' family members in his camp.¹²⁵ Alexander did not pursue him immediately, proceeding instead to take Tyre in a seven-month siege. He then made for Egypt by the "immemorial route through Palestine. On the way, when Samaria refused to submit, he established it as a Macedonian colony. At Jerusalem, where he was welcomed by Chief Priest Jaddua, Judaea submitted.

332, after overcoming two months of Egyptian resistance at Gaza, Alexander arrived in Egypt proper, where Egypt's Persian satrap submitted.

331, Alexander founded Alexandria. Cyrene submitted. By summer he had crossed the Euphrates River resuming pursuit of Darius III.

331 (October 1), Battle of Guagamela:¹²⁶ a decisive win for Alexander. Again, Darius III fled. Alexander moved on to Babylon, where he was welcomed. In December he was at Susa and had secured Persia, taking it, Persepolis and Pasargadae.¹²⁷

330 (January – April), Alexander, hearing of the defeat of Sparta by Macedonian forces, he entered Media and occupied Ecbatana, to which Darius III had retreated; death of Darius III.¹²⁸

Alexander III the Great now reigned as "King of the Lands."

330-329, Alexander wintered in Drangiana.¹²⁹

¹²³ *Pisidia* = N of Lycia and bordering Caria, Lydia, Phrygia and Pamphylia (corresponding roughly to modern Turkey province of Antalya). *Cilicia* = S coastal region of Asia Minor region S of central Anatolian plateau.

¹²⁴ *Talent* = ancient unit for a mass of precious metal; initially equal to the mass of water held by an amphora (specific sized jug). Archaeologically-proposed estimates have been, Greek/Attic talent, 57 lbs.; Roman, 71 lbs.; Egyptian, 60 lbs; Babylonian, 67 lbs.; ancient Palestine, the Babylonian weight; *New Testament*, 130 lbs. Talents were subdivided by the various powers into smaller unit values per talent (*e.g. minae, drachmae* and *librae*).

¹²⁵ On Alexander's orders, Darius III's mother, two sisters, a young son and their paternal grandmother were treated well and allowed to keep their social status.

¹²⁶ Most commonly accepted opinion is that the flat open plain Darius III chose to deploy his numerically superior forces was east of Mosul in modern-day northern Iraq.

¹²⁷ Pasargadae was the Achaemenid Empire's first capital, some 25 miles from Persepolis in present Fars Province of Iran.

¹²⁸ Alexander's tenacious pursuit of Darius III ended midsummer when two of Darius' co-fugitive officers stabbed him as Alexander was descending upon them. Alexander left Darius III's remaining family members (who had been traveling with Alexander's army) at Susa, with instructions that the children be taught Greek--they then wards of their grandmother, their mother having died. (Darius III had tried several times to ransom his family in return for relinquishing some land and ending the war, which Alexander refused.)

¹²⁹ Region occupied by an ancient "Iranian" tribe, the Drangians, comprising territory around wetlands on the present Pakistan/Iran/Afghanistan border.

329-328, two more submissions later, Alexander wintered in the Cabul/Kabul Afghanistan region.

328, Alexander reached the Hindu-Kush; Alexander conquered Bactria and west Sogdiana.¹³⁰

328-327, Alexander wintered at Zariaspa/Balkh/Bactria.¹³¹

327, Alexander was at Samarcand/Samarkand.¹³² Alexander conquered east Sogdiana.

Alexander married Roxane, daughter of Bactrian nobleman Oxyartes.

Alexander recrossed the Hindu-Kush range and prepared for an expedition into India.

327-326, Alexander led winter campaigns in the Kunar/Chitral valley (Afghanistan/Pakistan region) and Swat region (Pakistan).

326, Alexander crossed the Indus, a major river flowing the full length of Pakistan. He fought the Battle of (on the banks of) Hydaspes River in the Punjab,¹³³ against Hindu King Porus/Pururava. Hydaspes was Alexander's last major battle. Alexander's army, exhausted, mutinied and refused to continue on more Indian expeditions. Nonetheless, he won a few more victories over Indian clans along the Indus, which secured his rule there, and founded some outposts and trade centers along the lower Indus, before abandoning further advances.

325 at Susa--toward Macedonian and Persian harmony-- Alexander had taken an oath of unity before reportedly 9000 Persian and Greek soldiers, and held marriages of senior Macedonian officers to Persia and other noblewomen. Reportedly, Alexander also married a Parysatis, daughter of Artaxerxes III, and Stateira, daughter of Darius III.¹³⁴

324, At Opis, Alexander faced another military mutiny of his original veterans. After considerable opposition and concessions, the men resubmitted. Veterans, led by Macedonian generals Craterus and Polyperchon, started out for Macedonia, where Craterus was to supersede Antipater as regent, and Antipater go to Asia with a fresh supply of troops. Alexander (who retained some "30,000 orientals, drilled in Macedonian fashion, that had come to him at Susa) spent summer and fall at the Median capital of Ecbatana.¹³⁵ Toward the end of the year he set out for Babylon, his plans no less ambitious than at the outset: shipwrights commission to build a fleet to navigate the Caspian Sea; most immediately, circumnavigation and conquest of Arabia; hopes to establish a trade route from the Indus to the Tigris and Euphrates rivers, and via canals to the Red Sea and the Nile. A major expedition was planned for the next summer.

323, on arrival at Babylon, Alexander undertook sweeping military reform, including effective upgrading of the phalanx. Then, with all ready for the southern expedition its departure was delayed. After a couple of days of heavy feasting and drinking Alexander fell ill to a high fever (possibly from something contracted in a recent journey through marshes). At some point within 10 days, his condition having

¹³⁰ *Hindu-Kush* = 500-mile mountain range stretching between central Afghanistan and N Pakistan; a sub-range of the Himalayas. *Bactria/Balkh/"Zariaspa"* = in Central Asia between Hindu Kush mountain range and Oxus River; part of NE periphery of present Iranian world and now part of Afghanistan, Tajikistan, Uzbekistan, and, smaller part, Turkmenistan. *Sogdiana* = N of Bactria, corresponding to modern provinces of Samarkand and Bokhara in modern Uzbekistan as well as the Sughd province of modern Tajikistan, and inhabited by an eastern "Iranian" people, ancestors of modern-day Tajiks.

¹³¹ *Bactria* was the name the Greeks gave for "Balkh" (N Afghanistan). *Zariaspa* could be either an alternate name for the city or a part of it. Balkh is regarded both as the first place where Zoroaster preached his religion and where he died.

¹³² *Samarcand/Samarkand* = city in Uzbekistan noted as a central position on the Silk Road between China and the West.

¹³³ *Punjab* = area of S Asia stretching from central Pakistan to NW India.

¹³⁴ Parysatis' precise relationship is uncertain; and some scholarly conjectures remain as to correct identifications of a "Barsine" relative to Stateira (Barsine possibly the widow of Darius III—it being common for a conqueror to marry a losing ruler's wife).

¹³⁵ At Ecbatana, Alexander temporarily was personally demoralized by the death of his close companion, Hephaestion.

become more violent and rendering him speechless, Alexander died, having not yet reached his thirty-third birthday.¹³⁶

Macedonia initially was left in the hands of Antipater. The wider parts of the empire were left in the hands of the Macedonian imperial generals established there. Over the next decades they and their dynasties would compete for supremacy. The first goal of the general in Egypt, Ptolemy I *Soter/Lagus* (posthumous son of Philip II by Arsene), was to secure control of both Egypt and its outlying areas (Cyrenaica, Cyprus, Syria and the province of Judea/Coelesyria); over ensuing years he would form different alliances with the competitors.

Greece revolted from Macedonia.

In the Palestine region, at some point toward the end of Alexander's reign he had authorized Samaritans to construct a temple on Mount Gerizim, held sacred by them.

The time after Alexander the Great's death is taken as the beginning of the "Hellenistic Period," when Greek culture and influence would expand into the near and middle east.

318,Pyrrhus (of the descendancy of Neoptolemus, King of the Molossi tribe) was King of Epirus.

301, Battle of Ipsus (village in Phrygia)—an ultimate, decisive post-Alexander battle, fought by Antigonos I Monophthalmus (son of Philip II and one Elimeia) and his son Demetrius I *Poliocetes* (mother, Stratonice), supported by Pyrrhus (brother-in-law of Demetrius I¹³⁷), against a coalition of Cassander (son of Antipater), Lysimachus (an Alexander officer) and Seleucus/Seleukos I *Nicator* (another Alexander officer).

The Antigonids were defeated, yielding the following: Cassander remained over Macedon (317-298); Seleucus I (who secured Babylon) ruled the region of Macedonia's eastern conquests—Kingdom of the Seleucidae/"Seleucia"¹³⁸ (307/305-280); and Lysimachus ruled Thrace. Greek city-states resumed forming military and naval alliances against each other, beginning with an Athenian campaign as early as 323 against the Macedonians.

Ptolemy I remained in Egypt (323-284). Although the Seleucids would continue to contend over old Canaan areas, the Ptolemies would dominate Judah, Samaria and Galilee regions for some 125 years. Reportedly Ptolemy I was a liberal hegemon (Hebrews in Alexandria, Egypt had equal privileges with established Macedonians¹³⁹). There were problems between Hebrews in the territories, however, in that those in the south maintained Jerusalem was the chief temple where sacrifices/tithes should go, while those in the Samaritan region were resolved to send them to Mt. Gerizim.

¹³⁶ The many intervening feats of Alexander are not detailed here, not just in battles—in which he indeed defied the very gods in exposing himself to danger and endured wounds—but in managing fleets dispatched to various rivers and seas. He has been immortalized, also, for an inherent respect for the peoples and their practices of the many regions that he penetrated. However, although seemingly he was not vicious by nature, he was not hesitant to take either deserved revenge or mete punishments (such as upon treasonous or profiteering satraps, in his return through conquered regions. Readers interested in his persona, which as yet has not moved beyond speculations, would find *Bury's* lengthy accounts valuable. (As to his death, suggestion has been made that Alexander may have been administered poison, via machinations of an offended general Antipater whose sons Cassander and Iolas were in Alexander's camp. The date of his death has been given as early as April. This year also marked the death of Aristotle.)

¹³⁷ Pyrrhus/Pyrrhos, c. 297 was king of the Greek tribe of Molossians (royal Aeacid house).

¹³⁸ "Seleucia" is used herein for the dynastic empire, there having been a city also by the name, distinguished as such when it appears.

¹³⁹ Relatively liberal, Ptolemy I involved Egypt as little as possible in rivalries in Greece and Asia Minor, losing what he had held in Greece but subjugating Cyrene rebellions in 300 and placed it under his stepson, Magas and would reconquer Cyprus 295/294. He had recruited Macedonian and Greek soldiers in his service; and as a patron of letters he had founded the great library at Alexandria. He personally sponsored the great mathematician Euclid. Finding Euclid's *Elements* too difficult and asking if it more easily could be mastered, reportedly Euclid replied, "Sire, there is no royal road to geometry." It also is worthwhile to recall that the Ptolemaic dynasty that took over after Alexander, and would end with Cleopatra VII (the Great), was of Macedonian Greek descent, with Greek the kingdom's language.

300, Meroe became capital of Kush.

298, Pyrrhus was taken hostage by Egypt under terms of a peace treaty between Demetrius I and Ptolemy I Soter. There, he married Ptolemy I's step-daughter, Antigone (daughter of one of Ptolemy I's wives, Macedonian Berenice I, by a Philip who had been an officer of Alexander the Great).

298, Cassander died.

298 (to 294), rule of Macedonia passed consecutively through Philippos/Philip IV, Antipater, and Antipater with Alexander V.¹⁴⁰

297, Pyrrhus was restored as King of Epirus with financial and military aid of Ptolemy I.

296/295, Demetrius I took Athens after a year siege.

295, Pyrrhus began war against Demetrius I.

294 Alexander V died (purportedly murdered by Demetrius I).

Demetrius I ruled Macedon.

288, a coalition of King Pyrrhus of Epirus and Lysimachus drove Demetrius I out of Macedon.

286, Lysimachus expelled Pyrrhus from Macedon and ruled Macedon solely.

283, Ptolemy I died.

285 (to 246), Ptolemy II *Philadelphus* (son of Ptolemy I and third wife, Eurydice) ruled Egypt.

Ptolemy Ceraunus/Keraunos (eldest son of Ptolemy I and Eurydice) had left Egypt and gone to Lysimachus' court, where 'family' drama resulted in his accompanying his sister Lysandra to the court of Seleucus I for aid.

280, Seleucus I, seeing possible political gain, both in Lysimachan Macedon and Thrace and Ptolemaic Egypt, marched against and defeated Lysimachus ("Battle of Corupedium").

280/279-278, Ptolemy Ceraunus briefly ruled (18 months) in Macedon.

280-261, Antiochus I *Soter* (son of Seleucus I and Apame/Apama) ruled Seleucia.

280-279, Damascene War and **276-272** First "Syrian" War saw Ptolemy II take Miletus, Phoenicia and western Cilicia from Antiochus I.

279-275, Antiochus I fought and finally defeated Galatians.¹⁴¹

Pyrrhus, a strong opponent of Rome, fought for the Tarentines in Italy after Rome broke a treaty with them.

274-272, Pyrrhus, restored, ruled Macedon.

273/271, Egypt's Ptolemy II concluded an alliance with the Roman Republic.

In this timeframe, there began the Syrian Wars, a series of six wars between the Seleucid and Ptolemaic kingdoms over the regions of Coelesyria, a primary avenue into Egypt. The conflicts would drain both both parties and leave them weak before Parthia and Rome.

An attempted campaign by Demetrius I in Asia Minor failed; he died a captive, leaving a son, Antigonus II *Gonatas*.

272 (to 243), Antigonus II (son of Demetrius I and Phila, daughter of Antipater) ruled Macedon

271, the First "Syrian" War ended with major victories for Ptolemy II, who had reconquered territories initially taken by Antiochus I in both Syria and south Anatolia. Ptolemaic rule was extended north as far as Caria and into most of Cilicia.

268, Antigonus II took Athens (and would keep it for 12 years).

At this stage, the foremost world powers were: West, Rome and Carthage; East, Egypt, Seleucia, and Macedonia.

Punic¹⁴² **Wars** (264-241): Three major conflicts between Rome and Carthage, with Berbers¹⁴³ on the latter's side, and among the largest wars ever. Their main causes were conflict of interests between the

¹⁴⁰ Refer to *History of the Daughters* for internal intra-dynastic competitions, inter-dynastic family relations, and their ramifications, in all three post-Alexander entities.

¹⁴¹ *Galatia* = region in highlands of central Anatolia in modern Turkey.

¹⁴² *Punic* from Latin *Punicus/Poenicus* ["Phoenician"].

¹⁴³ *Berbers* = indigenous peoples of North Africa west of the Nile Valley.

then Carthaginian Empire and expanding Roman Republic, Romans initially interested in expansion via Sicily (then a cultural melting pot), part of which lay under Carthaginian control.

264, First Punic War, fought partly on land in Sicily and Africa, lesser in the Apennine peninsula,¹⁴⁴ but was largely a naval war beginning as a local conflict between Sicily under Hiero II of Syracuse and Mamertines of the Sicilian isle of Messina, the latter enlisting aid of the navy of the Carthaginians, then betraying them by entreating the Roman Senate for aid against Carthage. Rome sent a garrison to secure Messina, and the outraged Carthaginians then lent aid to Syracuse, embroiling the two major powers into a full-scale war between Carthage and Rome for control of Sicily. (Previously there had been trade agreements between Rome and Carthage and even a mutual alliance against King Pyrrhus of Epirus.)

261, Rome defeated the Carthaginians (land Battle of Agrigentum, city on island of Sicily), after which the Carthaginians concentrated on the sea where it had the advantage and initially prevailed.

260, Carthaginians defeated Rome's fledgling navy (Battle of Lipari Islands), but within two months Rome had assembled a fleet of over 100 warships with assault bridges that changed tactics to ship-to-ship engagement, bringing Rome's superior infantry to bear. Save for one disastrous defeat at Tunis and two lost naval engagements, Rome had a near-broken string of victories

263, Pergamum, ruled by Eumenes I, became virtually independent of the Seleucids.

Ptolemy II quelled a revolt led by his brother, Magas, King of Cyrene, a revolt encouraged by Antiochus I. After Magas was killed, Ptolemy II and Antiochus I entered into a treaty of alliance.

262, Eumenes I of Pergamum defeated Antiochus I at Sardis.

261 (to 246), Antiochus II *Theos/Theus* ruled the Seleucids.

260-255 (or 253), Second "Syrian" War, against Egypt: Seleucid Antiochus II had the support of Macedon's Antigonos I (both wanting to push Ptolemy II out of the Aegean Sea). Attacks were made on Ptolemaic outposts in Asia. This war resulted in restoration of Ionia (including Miletus, Coele Syria and western Cilicia) to the Seleucids. Antiochus II and Ptolemy II put an end to warring.¹⁴⁵

256, Antigonos II restored Athens to liberty.

In this timeframe, Chief Priest Eleazar at Jerusalem, at the request of Egypt's Ptolemy II, provided Ptolemy II with Jerusalem Temple's Code to produce a Greek translation.¹⁴⁶ (Chief Priest after Eleazar was Manasseh.)

250, Parthians¹⁴⁷ under Arsaces [I] with Bactrians under Theodotus revolted from Macedon.

249/248-247, Arsaces I established himself in the province of Parthia.

246-222/221, Ptolemy II died and his son, Ptolemy III *Euergetes I* (mother uncertain) ruled Egypt. He engaged in early conflict with Antiochus II (heralding Third Syrian War/Laodicean War/War of Berenice--below).

246-226, Seleucus II *Callinicus* ruled Seleucia.

246, Antiochus II died (per some sources, poisoned by Laodice).

246-241, Third "Syrian" War: Antiochus II's repudiated queen and queen Berenice (Ptolemy II's daughter), competed to place their respective sons on the Seleucid throne. Laodice claimed her son, Seleucus II, had been named heir by Antiochus when on his deathbed, and Seleucus II was crowned. Berenice argued that her newly born (unnamed) son was legitimate heir and enlisted her brother (or

¹⁴⁴ *Apennines* = chain of a mountain range along peninsular Italy that join in the NW with the Ligurian Alps, end in the SW at the coastal tip of the peninsula, and mountains N of Sicily's form an arc enclosing the E sides of Ligurian and Tyrrhenian Seas. Eastern slopes down to the Adriatic Sea are steep; western slopes form foothills where most of Italy's peninsular cities are located.

¹⁴⁵ Antiochus II accepted Ptolemy II's daughter, Berenice, in marriage--requiring him to put aside wife Laodice--which appears to have been a condition of the peace; *refer to History of the Daughters*.

¹⁴⁶ The Greek translation that was produced supplied the *Old Testament* text for its eventual restitution into Hebrew, following loss of the original codices in the later Roman conquest (below).

¹⁴⁷ *Parthia* = region of present NE Iran, political and cultural base of the Arsacid dynasty. (Per some scholars, Parthians were of Scythian descent.)

half-brother) Ptolemy III to come to Antioch,¹⁴⁸ to help place her son on the throne. When he arrived, she and her child had been assassinated.

Ptolemy III declared war on Seleucus II and forced him to surrender coasts of Syria, briefly occupying Antioch, and advancing as far as the Tigris River (meanwhile, losing the Cyclades to Antigonus Gonatas at "Battle of Andros"). On his return through Jerusalem he offered sacrifices to God in accordance with local practice.

Laodice had forced Seleucus II to grant co-regency to his younger brother, Antiochus Hierax, and let him rule over Anatolia territories, where Hierax promptly declared independence, undermining Seleucus' defenses against Ptolemy.

241, with the end of Third "Syrian" War, and Ptolemy III's gain of Seleucid territories on Syria's north coast and the port of Antioch, the Ptolemaic kingdom to the height of its power.

241, End of First Punic War: Carthage signed a peace treaty under the terms of which they evacuated Sicily and paid Rome a large war indemnity, Carthage being the more seriously destabilized.

Interval between the First and Second Punic Wars:

239 (to 229), Demetrius II *Gonatas/Aetolicus* reigned in Macedon after the death of his father, Antigonus II).

238, Carthage was plunged into the "Mercenary War," a result of delayed payment to mercenaries who had served in Sicily during the First Punic War (Egypt failing to respond to Carthage appeal for financial aid)—a revolt supported by Libyan natives. Rome along with Syracuse lent support to Carthage in this war; exiled mercenaries that temporarily gained authority over Sicily and Corsica during years of civil warring ultimately were subdued by Rome. Rome revisited the treaty that ended the First Punic War, over which there had been disputes; and Carthage, still involved in a difficult war, reluctantly relinquished—and Rome annexed—Corsica and Sardinia; and its indemnity to Rome was increased; relations between the two powers were at a new low point.

Meanwhile, two opposing Carthaginian factions arose: the reformist party led by Hamilcar Barca¹⁴⁹ (whose generalship had secured ultimate quelling of the mercenary uprising. Hamilcar finally left Carthage for the Iberian peninsula, subduing many tribes, fortified his army with native troops, and captured rich silver mines.

235, Arsaces II of Parthia conquered the province of Parthia and Hyrcania¹⁵⁰ and founded the Kingdom of Parthia. A defensive expedition Seleucus II failed. Arsaces II made Armenia¹⁵¹ an independent kingdom.

Seleucus II was taken prisoner by the Parthians.

229 (to 221) In Macedon, Antigonus III¹⁵² *Doson* was regent for young Philip/Phillipus V (son of Demetrius II and Chryseis, widow of Alexander of Corinth), after Demetrius II died in a tribal battle.

229-228, Attalus I of Pergamum drove Antiochus Hierax out of Asia Minor.

228, Hamilcar died in battle; Hasdrubal followed as Carthaginian commander in Iberia.

227, Seleucus II drove Attalus I to Thrace, where he died.

226 (to 223), Seleucus III *Ceraunus* (son of Seleucus II) took the Seleucid throne.

Seleucus III was murdered after a three-year reign by "two of his officers" while in the early stages of a war with Pergamum.

224/223 (to 187), Antiochus III (the Great) took the Seleucid throne. His ambition was to restore original possessions, from the Greco-Bactrian Kingdom to India in the east, the Hellespont in the north, and Syria. He was partial to the Aetolians against other Greeks and conquered King Cleomenes of Sparta.

¹⁴⁸ *Antioch* = on the eastern side of the Orontes River. It is near the modern city of Antakya, Turkey.

¹⁴⁹ Carthaginian general and statesman, leader of the Barcid family and father of Hannibal, Hasdrubal and Mago, and father-in-law of Hasdrubal.

¹⁵⁰ Land in West Asia around the south end of the Caspian Sea (now part of north Iran).

¹⁵¹ *Armenia* lay in the highlands surrounding biblical mountains of Ararat; home in the Bronze Age to several states including the Hittite Empire.

¹⁵² Sometimes referred to as II.

Further events in the interval between Punic Wars:

225, Rome (aware of a rising alliance between Carthage and Celts (“Gauls”) of the Po River valley in north Italy,¹⁵³ pending an expected invasion of Italy with Carthaginian backing) preemptively invaded the Po region.

220, Romans had annexed the Po River valley region as Gallia Cisalpina. About the same time, Hasdrubal was assassinated, bringing Hannibal¹⁵⁴ to the fore.

219/218, Hannibal took the Romans by surprise and revived Hasdrubal’s original Gaulo-Carthaginian invasion plans. The silver mine output both financed a standing army and payment of the war indemnity to Rome. Hannibal attacked Rome-protected Saguntum (southeast Iberia; crossing the Ebro/Iberus River contrary with the peace treaty, but reasoned as against attacks of Carthaginian protectorates by neighboring tribes and massacres of pro-Punic factions.

Rome had no legal protection pact with any tribe south of the Ebro River, but nonetheless asked Carthage to hand over Hannibal over. When the Carthaginian oligarchy refused, Rome declared war.

222, Ptolemy III died, having passed the last years of his reign in peace (if excepted is the refusal of the Hebrews to continue to pay the 20 silver talent tribute that their predecessors always paid to Egyptian monarchs).

222/221 (to 205/203), Ptolemy IV *Philopater* took Egypt’s throne.

221 (to 178), A mature Philip V ruled Macedon.

221, by this time Antiochus III had re-established Seleucid control over the eastern provinces, retaken Anatolia (from a rebellious uncle), and had his eyes turned to Syria and Egypt.

220-217, Philip V of Macedon assisted in another Social War in Greece, instigating assembly of the Hellenic League of Greek States (Achaean) and leading the League in battles with Aetolia, Sparta and Elis (on the Peloponnesian peninsula, acquiring thereby respect abroad besides in his own kingdom.

219-217, Fourth Syrian War: In Egypt, weakened by self-interested ministers, court intrigue and public unrest, Ptolemy IV murdered the queen mother, Berenice II, to all of which Antiochus III took advantage. He took cities in Phoenicia (including Tyre) along with the Antioch port, then, spent a year consolidating the new territories.

Meanwhile, in Egypt an army was recruited from both the local Greek population and native Egyptians.

218 to 202, Second Punic War/“Hannibalic War”/“War of Hannibal:” There were three military theaters: Italy (involving Hannibal), Hispania/Iberia/Spain (where Hasdrubal defended colonial cities), and Sicily (where Rome had military supremacy). After Sargentum, Hannibal led Iberians with three dozen elephants crossed the Pyrenees and Alps mountains into north Italy. c. 218, Publius Cornelius Scipio was routed by Hannibal 218 b.c. on right bank of Ticino River near the its north confluence with the Po River (he was saved by his then 18-year-old son, the later *Africanus*).

The war in Italy: Icy conditions caused loss of Hannibal’s siege engines and most elephants, but his army, reinforced by Gauls allies, nonetheless defeated Roman legions in several major battles, including Trebia River (not far south from its confluence with the Po River, and the ambush of Lake Trasimene, but most significantly, Cannae (southeast Italy). After Roman defeat at Cannae many Roman allies switched to Carthage, which prolonged the war in Italy and during which more Rome armies were destroyed.

Hannibal lacked war engines and enough manpower to take the city of Rome, itself; but as he devastated Italian countryside most Roman allies remained loyal and fighting. Hannibal received few reinforcements from Carthage (as opposed to what it sent to Hispania). A Roman army under Quintus Fabius Maximus intentionally deprived Hannibal of open battle, while making it difficult for him to forage supplies. Rome was able to raise more soldiers, yet could not bring the war in Italy to a decisive

¹⁵³ The Po River flows eastward across north Italy.

¹⁵⁴ *Hannibal* = tactical Carthaginian military commander of Carthaginian forces.

end, as it contended with Hasdrubal in Hispania and simultaneously was embroiled in another war theater – the First Macedonian War, in the Eastern Mediterranean and the Ionian Sea (below).

Despite setbacks, however, Roman forces were more able in siege craft than Carthaginians and eventually recaptured all the cities that had joined the enemy, defeating as well a Carthaginian attempt to reinforce Hannibal (“Battle of Metaurus”). Yet Hannibal's campaign in Italy would continue inconclusively for 15 years.

217, Ptolemy IV engaged and defeated Antiochus III at the Battle of Raphia (aka/Rapha; now at the very south of Gaza). Ptolemy IV preserved control over Coele Syria but was weak and declined advancing further into Seleucid regions; and his kingdom would suffer economic problems and rebellion in coming years; a nationalist sentiment had developed among native Egyptians that fought at Raphia.

Antiochus III stopped in Jerusalem, where the Hebrews forcibly prevented his entry to their temple. In retaliation he made preparations to have a large number of them trod to death by elephants, but the elephants turned instead on Egyptian spectators. Antiochus III's behavior “terrified Ptolemy IV,” who subsequently was circumspect toward the Seleucids.

Macedonian and Seleucid Wars: A series of conflicts during and after second Punic war, in eastern Mediterranean, Adriatic, and Aegean, which, along with Punic wars, resulted in Roman control or influence over the entire Mediterranean basin.

214-205, First Macedonian war: during Second Punic War, Philip V of Macedon allied with Hannibal. Fearing Hannibal's reinforcement, Rome dispatched legion forces across the Adriatic (after 211, aided by allies from Aetolian League and Pergamon¹⁵⁵). During this war Macedon was attempting unsuccessfully to gain control over parts of Illyria and Greece. Rome's intervention was not to conquer but to keep Macedon, Greek city-states and political leagues divided and non-threatening; it did little more than skirmish with Macedonian forces and seized minor territory along the Adriatic coastline.

212, Scipio offered himself for command of the new army that the Romans resolved to send to Hispania, all of its territory south of the Ebro River being under Carthaginian control.

211, Both Scipios, Publius (“the elder;” father of later “Africanus”) and his brother, Gnaeus, died fighting Hannibal's brother, Hasdrubal Barca, in “Hispania”/Iberia/Spain, where Hasdrubal had established the “Barcid Empire” of Punic (Carthaginian) territories, a private military-economic hegemony backed by Carthage, Gades (later Cadiz¹⁵⁶) playing a minor role.

210, Despite the youth of Publius the elder's son, Publius Cornelius Scipio (later “Africanus”), his enthusiasm and being the only man asking for the job (and perhaps because of it) the Roman Senate unanimously elected him to command a new army to go to Spain. He landed at the Ebro mouth and caught the Carthaginian headquarters/“New Carthage” by surprise, captured it, and secured a rich cache of war stores and supplies along with an excellent base harbor. Hispania south of the Ebro river was under Carthaginian control under Hannibal's brothers, generals Hasdrubal and Mago. Rome's advances were aided by both uncoordination of the generals and Carthage's preoccupation with revolts in Africa.

209-206, Scipio drove back Hasdrubal from position on the upper Guadalquivir River.¹⁵⁷ Scipio's hidden cavalry reserves moved behind enemy lines and routed Hasdrubal's forces, but Scipio did not pursue Hasdrubal (reason why being conjectured, either wanting not to lose the glory of securing Hispania, or the Roman soldiers appetite for plunder). Scipio remained, achieved full victory over Ilipa (in vicinity of modern Seville), captured Gades (city and port in the southwest/Cadiz) and firmly secured Roman occupation, then gave up his command and returned to be greatly hailed at Rome and receive the title, *Africanus*.

¹⁵⁵ *Aetolia* - confederation of tribal communities and cities in central Greece. Pergamon/Pergamum = city some 16 miles from the Aegean Sea on a promontory on the N side of the Caicus River.

¹⁵⁶ *Cadiz* = city and port in SW Spain; site originally founded by Phoenicians in 9th century b.c. or earlier.

¹⁵⁷ The Guadalquivir river is the only great navigable river in Spain; currently navigable to Seville but in Roman times, to Córdoba.

The eastern peninsula/coastal territory of Hispania/Iberia/Spain was divided into two Roman provinces, Hispania Citerior[/"Nearer"/] and Hispania Ulterior[/"Further"/].

By this time, Hannibal and his occupied holdings in Italy were limited to the southwestern toe of Italy. (Hannibal's army, subject of debate, has been suggested as mostly Italians pressed into service from south Italy, with most of his elite veterans and cavalry spent.) With Roman occupation secured in Iberia/Spain, Scipio gave up his command and returned to Rome and aid the war in Italy. At the same time, Hasdrubal moved to bring his mercenary army to Italy to reinforce Hannibal.

209ff., Antiochus III reduced Parthian Arsaces III to vassalship; allied with one Euthydemus who usurped the Bacthrian throne; and even secured submission of Indian rajah Sophagasenus—thus restoring the Seleucid kingdom to its former extent.

205, "Peace/Treaty of Phoenice" ended the First Macedonian War in a stalemate; an indecisive conflict, it nonetheless had opened the way for Roman military intervention in Greece.

205 Scipio on return to Rome unanimously was elected consul (at age 31) and, in view of the failure to totally drive Hannibal from Italy, proposed attacking the Carthaginian homeland to force his recall. The Roman senate initially balked as it being too hazardous, finally was won over by partisan influence, and Scipio authority to attempt an invasion, but levied no troops. Scipio sailed to Sicily with a group of 7,000 heterogeneous volunteers. A Roman Senate inquiry at Sicily found Scipio at the head of a formidably trained fleet and army; he obtained permission to cross to Africa if it appeared in Rome's interest but without direct support. (Later the Senate would authorize regulars stationed in Sicily to join his force.) Sicily, only under Roman control since the first Punic War, protested and were exempted so long as they paid only for certain equipment.)

204, Ptolemy IV died.

205/203 (to 181), Ptolemy IV's successor, Ptolemy V *Philometer*, was still a minor, however, at his father's death; and there followed bloody dispute over who would be the child's regent. Ministers (Agothocles and Sosibius) murdered the child's aunt Arsinoe. The regency proceeded to pass from one adviser to another, and the kingdom moved toward anarchy as it was plunged into nationalistic revolt (the "Egyptian revolt").

204, Scipio landed in Africa and first defeated Carthaginians at Utica, near Carthage ("Battle of the Great Plains"). The Carthaginian Senate saw no alternative than to offer peace, which Scipio proposed with modest terms—Carthage would relinquish its overseas empire but keep its African territory, reduce its fleet, and pay a war indemnity--an agreement Rome's Senate would ratify—and the Carthaginian Senate recalled Hannibal.

202/201 (to 195), Fifth Syrian War: Seizing the advantage of Egypt's turmoil, Antiochus III again invaded Coelesyria, having made agreement with Philip V of Macedon to conquer and share the Ptolemies' overseas territories (a short-lived alliance). Antiochus swept through the region. After a brief setback at Gaza, near the head of the Jordan River ("Victory of Panium"¹⁵⁸) his army dealt the Ptolemy forces a decisive blow that won Aniochus III the important port of Sidon.¹⁵⁹

202, Prelude to end of Second Punic War: Rome's ensuring coronation of Numidian Prince Masinissa as King of Numidians brought superb horseman once relied upon by Hannibal to fight for Rome. With Carthage deserted by allies and finding itself surrounded by undefeated Romans, it opened channels for negotiation. Despite again moderate terms offered by Scipio, Carthage suddenly suspended negotiations and again prepared for war. In meantime, Carthaginians had breached the armistice by capturing a stranded Roman fleet in the Gulf of Tunis and stripped it of supplies. The Carthaginians no longer saw a treaty to their benefit and rebuffed it under much Roman protest.

202, Battle of Zama: Hannibal's army (local citizens and veterans from his Italian campaigns; 58,000 infantry and 6,000 cavalry) and Scipio's army (Roman army of legionaries and a body of Berber Numidian calvalry; 34,000 infantry and 8,700 cavalry) met about 100 miles southwest of Tunis. Hannibal's force

¹⁵⁸ *Panium/Paneion* (near Paneas/Caesarea Philippi) = at the foot of Mt. Hermon (Golan Heights).

¹⁵⁹ A letter of Antiochus III granted privileges to the Hebrews for their aid during the Fifth Syrian War.

was resoundingly defeated, and the Carthaginian Senate sued for peace. By the treaty terms, Carthage surrendered Iberia/Spain, agreed to pay 200 silver talents for 50 years, gave up all her elephants and war ships save 10 triremes, and promised to wage no war outside of Libya and in Libya, only with Roman consent (leaving her helpless against Rome's ally, Numidia). With Scipio's consent, Hannibal was allowed to become the civic leader of Carthage.

At this point, in the East were three great kingdoms, remnants of Alexander the Great's empire: that of the Seleucidae in western Asia, including part of Asia Minor; that of Macedonia, with garrisons controlling Thessaly, Corinth and various other Greek states; and Egypt, whose kings claimed Phoenicia and a few possessions in Asia Minor and Thrace. In addition were two Grecian leagues, the Aetolian and Achaean, and many lesser independent states like the Republic of Rhodes, and the kingdoms of Pergamum, Bithynia and Pontus (northwest Asia Minor). Internationally, Egypt sought peace; smaller states engaged especially in commerce, e.g. Athens and Rhodes, looked to Egypt for support; Seleucid Antiochus III and Macedonian Philip V sought to extend their power. The second Punic War had brought Rome into alliance with Aetolia, Athens, Pergamum and other Eastern states, a basis for future complications. Hostile to Philip V (who was operating in the Aegean), Rome, allied to Egypt, consequently was to appear in Greece as a foil to Philip V and a protector of the peace.

In this timeframe, Antiochus III proceeded to raid Ptolemaic coastal strongholds in Caria and Cilicia.

c. 201, The now mature Ptolemy V, needing to focus on the home front, signed a peace treaty with Antiochus III. Ptolemy V agreed to marry Cleopatra I¹⁶⁰/"the Syrian" (daughter of Antiochus III and Laodice), and conceded possession of Coele Syria to Antiochus.

About this time, Samaritans were flourishing and making incursions into Judaeen territory. Then Chief Priest Onias, seen as abetting the Seleucids, was opposed overtly by the party of one Simon/Simeon of "Bilgah" (name uncertain).

201, ambassadors from Pergamon and Rhodes brought evidence before the Roman Senate that Philip V of Macedon and Antiochus III of the Seleucid Empire had entered into a non-aggression pact. Although some scholars have suggested such "secret treaty" was a fabrication by Pergamon and Rhodes, it resulted in Rome launching a second Macedonian war with aid from its Greek allies. The first army primarily profit-seeking volunteers that Rome sent to Greece accomplished little; then it sent a legion under consul Flamininus.

200, Rome, weakened from the Punic warring, had renewed a treaty of alliance with Egypt toward the last of Ptolemy IV's reign. It could brook no disruption of grain imports from Egypt, sent demands to Macedonian Philip V and Seleucid Antiochus III that they refrain from invading Egypt. Since neither monarch had such plans they willingly agreed.

197-196, End of Second Macedonian war, Battle of Cynoscephalae in Thessaly: Rome was victorious against Philip V. By the Treaty of Tempea, Philip V ceded all of Macedon's possessions in Greece to Rome, and agreed not to interfere with affairs outside his borders (which condition he adhered to the rest of his life).

Rome's Senate succumbed to common opposition to Roman aggression in the East and any establishment of garrisons in Greek towns. At the following spring's Isthmian festival a herald proclaimed the freedom of all Greeks previously ruled by Philip V. The only guarantee to their retaining freedom, however, would be undermined by not being able to keep a unified Greek peace. Meanwhile, Rome withdrew completely from the Balkans, with seemingly no further interest in the region; and Hannibal, forced into exile by Rome, had been taken in by Antiochus III, to whom Hannibal became chief military advisor.

In Egypt, the nativist movement which began with the Egyptian Revolt was supported by Egyptian priests and intensified with Egypt's need to increase taxations to cope with its economic

¹⁶⁰ It is to be recognized that the numbering of Cleopatras varies, depending on texts.

troubles. Turmoil and sedition had been spawned throughout the kingdom; and natives had established their own “kingdom” in Upper Egypt.¹⁶¹

192, the “Asiatic”/Seleucid War: Antiochus III (the Great) invaded Greece with a small, 10,000-man army, where he temporarily was elected commander-in-chief by the Aetolians.

191-190, Rome responded by sending in its legions against Antiochus III in Greece. The Romans routed Antiochus at Thermopylae (where unwisely he engaged them as had the Spartans the Persians 300 years earlier), and Antiochus III was obliged to withdraw to Asia.

190-188, Further Roman legion overwhelming defeat of Antiochus III in Anatolia resulted in his surrender to Rome of all possessions west of Mount Taurus,¹⁶² plus a yearly fine (Treaty of Apamea). Rome bestowed parts of the surrendered territories on Pergamum and Rhodes, left several small sates independent, and thus was its protectorate extended over all Asia Minor.

Rome, however, allowed Antiochus III to retain Coele Syria and Judaea (that he had taken from the Ptolemies, who wanted it back), which territories were administered by Seleucid governors.

188-187, Short on funds to pay the Roman fines, Antiochus III was killed in an attempt to plunder a temple in the region of ancient Elam.

Antiochus III was succeeded by his son, Seleucus IV *Philopater/Soter* (mother, one Laodice). His kingdom continued to be weakened by the yearly payments due Rome.

181/180, Ptolemy V died, poisoned by ministers from whom he threatened to take funds for a war chest.

Ptolemy V was succeeded by his son, Ptolemy VI *Philometor* who was but a boy.

180 (to 146), Egypt was ruled by Cleopatra I, Ptolemy VI's mother, as regent during her son's minority (how long is unclear). When she died, for a period of time reportedly he was “under a eunuch who...was one of his favorites.”

180/179, Philip V of Macedon died.

179 (to 167), Philip V was succeeded by his son, Perseus/Perses (mother, “a concubine”). Perseus moved aggressively against neighbors in attempts to restore Macedon power, combining clever diplomacy with Greek aspirations.

176/175, Seleucus IV sent his minister Heliodorus to Jerusalem to seize the temple treasury so as to have money to pay Rome. Heliodorus aborted the attempt after a mysterious attack on him and his party (believed instigated by then Chief Priest Onias II). On Heliodorus' return, Seleucus IV was poisoned and died.

175/174 (to 163), Antiochus IV *Epiphanes* (brother of Seleucus IV) usurped and occupied the Seleucid throne.

In this timeframe, the two regents of young Ptolemy VI declared war on Antiochus IV (reasons obscure) to recover the provinces of Palestine and Coele Syria—Sixth Syrian War (below).

172/171 (to 167), Third Macedonian War: Rome declared war against Macedonia's Perseus, with whom some Greeks had begun to bond (Perseus also being implicated in an assassination plot against an ally of Rome). For the first three years Rome's generals mainly plundered Greece instead of fighting, their greed alienating allies and encouraging the foe.

171, Sixth Syrian War: Antiochus IV made an expedition against Egypt and quickly seized strategic Pelusium and then defeated Egypt's generals beyond Pelusium. Regents Eulaeus and Lenaeus were overthrown for their folly and replaced by Comanus and Cineas, who sent envoys to negotiate peace. Antiochus IV took Ptolemy VI (his nephew) into captivity, thus to keep control himself. That was unacceptable to the people of Alexandria, who proclaimed as king Ptolemy VIII *Physcon* (another son of

¹⁶¹ Converse to what would be expected, “Upper” Egypt is not the north part; “Upper” Egypt it begins south of Cairo and runs south to about the point of the Aswan Dam (the north part of Egypt being referred to as “Lower” Egypt.)

¹⁶² The most extensive and a far-reaching mountain in Asia, frequently confined to the region separating Phrygia and Pamphylia from Cilicia.

Ptolemy V; mother uncertain). Antiochus IV expelled Ptolemy VIII and allowed Ptolemy VI to remain as a puppet king, to avoid alarming Rome; but he kept Pelusium.

In this timeframe:

At Jerusalem, Chief Priest Onias II (son of Simon the Just) had been killed by Andronicus, Antiochus IV's administrator in Jerusalem, because Onias publicly protested Andronicus' confiscation of gold temple vessels via the hands of Menelaus, brother or half-brother of Onias II. Onias II's son, Onias IV, was an infant, and one Jesus/Jason obtained the chief priesthood by promising Antiochus IV a large tribute. Three years into Jason's tenure, his brother or half-brother Onias III/Menelaus outbid him and Antiochus made Onias III chief priest. Further temple robberies by Seleucid officials eventually caused riots, but Onias III was cleared of charges while those who had taken the city's cause suffered cruel punishment.

In Egypt: Afterward, Ptolemy VI recalled and reconciled with Ptolemy VIII. Instead of civil war, the two initially joined in a co-reign; but soon hostilities arose again between them. Ptolemy VI banished Ptolemy VIII, who immediately repaired to Rome with his complaints. Rome gave the governments of Libya and Cyrene (Africa) to Ptolemy VIII and confirmed Ptolemy VI in Egypt and Cyprus.

Antiochus IV once again invaded Egypt, seized Cyprus and Memphis, and was marching on Alexandria. Rome's Senate dispatched a legion which confronted Antiochus at Eleusis (on the outskirts of Egypt's capital), and issued a Senate ultimatum he evacuate Egypt and Cyprus immediately. Antiochus' plea for time to consider instantly was denied; he chose to obey, and the "Day of Eleusis" ended Antiochus III's hope for territory in Egypt.

168, in the Third Macedonian War, Perseus again marshaled himself against the Romans. Rome put into command Lucius Aemilius Paullus *Macedonicus*, whose legion smashed Macedonia's phalanx at the Battle of Pydna/Pidna (coast, in Macedonia).¹⁶³ Perseus was captured, humiliated at Rome, and either died in prison or was put to death.

The once great state of Macedonia was divided into four puppet republics controlled by Rome and forbidden political intercourse.¹⁶⁴ Rome and its Senate were at the pinnacle of power, receiving international homage; but that power and its wealth would be corrupting.¹⁶⁵ For Greece, peace and freedom would only be a dream, left with conflicts between Roman and Macedonian factions, exacerbated by detentions and exiles, including some of its most prominent statesmen by Rome's Commission for settlement. Ultimately, Rome's Senate was moved once again to interfere.

In Jerusalem, in the interim of Antiochus IV's last invasion of Egypt, on false rumors he had been killed, Jesus/Jason led an attack on the city. The returning Antiochus IV—already enraged and thinking Jerusalem was in revolt-- entered Jerusalem (those of his party opening the city gates for him). He slew a great number of persons who favored the Ptolemies and restored Onias III as Chief Priest, with one "Philip, a Phrygian" as governor of Jerusalem and Andronicus at Mount Gerizzim.

To strengthen hold over the region, Antiochus IV decided to side with the Hellenistic Hebrew faction (who identified more with Greco-ness and secondarily, the Ptolemies)-- anathema to the orthodox faction. He proscribed all local customs and rites and circumcision--any persons who did not comply underwent great miseries; and he ordered that his own temples, altars and idols for the worship of Zeus be erected in every city and village. A general named Bacchides was assigned to maintain region fortresses and order, and a Greek military garrisoned citadel was built (the "Acra"¹⁶⁶).

¹⁶³ Perseus, captured, died in prison.

¹⁶⁴ The cities yielded to the victor shiploads of furniture, precious metals and works of art. For siding with Perseus, Roman troops plundered Epirus (taking vastly more spoil, with 50,000 sold into slavery); and Rome annexed Illyria (also plundered; Illyrians and placed under annual tribute), the Illyrians having given Rome trouble in prior years.

¹⁶⁵ As Bosford remarked, "among all the senators there was no wise man to utter the warning, 'Pride goeth before destruction.'"

¹⁶⁶ *Acra* = ancient term for fortified structures during the Hellenistic era (precise site unknown). This "acra" often is called the Seleucid Acra, distinguished from the sometimes called "Ptolemaic acra" (Ptolemaic *Baris*, the third

166, An Antiochus IV army (under a Mysian¹⁶⁷ commander) entered Jerusalem pretending friendship. Instead they unexpectedly attacked, destroyed many persons, plundered and pillaged, burned the finest buildings, and took some 10,000 captives. (Some persons found secretly observing Sabbaths were burned to death.)

165, inhabitants from Shechem in the Samaria region convinced Antiochus IV that they originally were of Sidonian stock and not liable for behavior of Hebrews. The temple at Mount Gerizzim was renamed “Temple of Jupiter Hellenius.” But one priest at Jerusalem, Mattathais,¹⁶⁸ retreated to his hometown of Modein (some 17 miles northwest of Jerusalem) and refused to comply with the new edicts. He and his sons killed one or more of the hegemon enforcers and fled to the mountains with other rebels. Gradually an army of compatriots began to assemble.

165, Mattathais died, having beforehand appointed son Simon/Thassi/Matthes, as patriarch of their assembly, and son Judas (“the hammer”) as commander of their army. Judas increased his army with all who fled the Jerusalem disaster.

164, a depleted treasury caused Antiochus IV to delay action against the Maccabaeans/“Maccabees”¹⁶⁹ and instead made a Persian expedition, leaving one Lysias in charge at the Antioch capital.

163, Judas et al moved into Jerusalem, refurbished the deserted temple and held a rededication. He and his forces fortified the temple walls and established a garrison; meanwhile Antiochus’ garrison still occupied their citadel.

Antiochus IV, routed at Persepolis, got word that forces dispatched by Lysias were put to flight, but illness prevented his proceeding immediately to Jerusalem. Meanwhile Lysias negotiated a settlement with Judas, rescinding all prior proscriptions.

163/162, Antiochus IV, still in Persia, died. The dying Antiochus IV gave his signet ring to one Philip (his companion/foster brother); but Lysias seized power over the Seleucid kingdom, keeping control of Antiochus IV’s young son Antiochus V *Eupator* (mother unknown), and assumed command over Coelestria and Phoenicia. Philip solicited aid from the Ptolemies.

163-162, Lysias ruled the Seleucid kingdom as Regent for Antiochus V.

162, Judas learned that Lysias was invading. Meanwhile, surrounding territories, uneasy at the Maccabean power, marshaled against them, including local rulers of Ptolemaic/Acco, ‘gentile’ Gileadites¹⁷⁰ and Ammonites (under one Timotheus/Timothy joined with Baccides), and the ‘posterity of Esau’ in Idumaea.¹⁷¹ Judas split his army into three contingents, one guarding Judaea and one, the Gailiee, while he and brother Jonathan/Apphus crossed the Jordan River east into Gilead to answer an appeal for aid from the Tobiads/Toubiani.

[**Note:** Refer to *History of the Daughters* for sequentially narrated details of Maccabee battles and successes.]

century citadel of Ptolemaic Egypt during its rule of Jerusalem), and distinguished also from a Jerusalem quarter that inherited Acra as a name.

¹⁶⁷ *Mysia* = a region in northwest Asia Minor.

¹⁶⁸ Descended from a joining of the bloodlines of Onias II and Asamoneus of the Order of Joarib (*refer to History of the Daughters*).

¹⁶⁹ “Maccabee” = Hebrew, *hammer*; although other suggestions for origin of the term have been made (one possibility being its relationship to “Machah”—*refer to History of the Daughters*).

¹⁷⁰ *Gilead* extended along the E side of the Jordan River, N from the torrent valley of the Jabbock River and reached S toward the torrent valley of the Arnon River, bounded by Ammon on the E and Bashan on the N. (Bashan = upper E Jordan/E Sea of Galilee area at times appears included in Gilead references. (Anciently Gilead was spoken also of two parts—the combined Gad/Reuben tribal apportionment to the S and the Manasseh-east apportionment called “the rest of Gilead.”)

¹⁷¹ *Idumaea* = land to E and S of Dead Sea, between the Dead Sea and Gulf of Aqaba (ancient Edom lands). Strabo, writing around the time of Jesus, maintained Idumaeans were Nabataean in their origins and constituted a majority of the population of W Judea, commingling with Judaeans and adopting their customs.

161, Judas called the people together to prepare to besiege and take out the garrison still in the citadel. Informants alerted Lysias, who formed a mercenary army joined by Onias III, marched into Idumaea, and began a siege of the Maccabaeen force Bethsur/Bethsura/Beth-zur (placed about four and one-half miles N of Hebron). The citadel siege had begun, and Judas took a force out to meet the foes head-on; Judas' brother Eleazar/Avaran/Auran was killed. Then news reached the Seleucid camp that Philip, back at Antioch, was heading a rebellion

160, Lysias parleyed with Judas and an agreement was effected: Judas was left as military and civil governor of territory from Ptolemais to the region of the "Gerrenes," and retired to Jerusalem. (The Ptolemaians were angered over the peace treaty but Lysias won them over by persuasion.¹⁷² (Onias III, accused by Lysias as the cause of all the trouble by persuading Antiochus IV to proscribe Hebrew religious practice, was executed. Chief Priesthood was transferred to Alcimus/Jacimus.¹⁷³

160, Demetrius I Soter,¹⁷⁴ son of Seleucus IV (who had been in Rome) set out to claim what he considered *his* rightful dominions, and was received by the Seleucid military as their lawful sovereign (to 150). He apprehended and put to death both Lysias and Antiochus V. Alcimus courted Demetrius, accusing Judas and the whole 'nation' as seditious war mongerers hindering peace. (Judas' forces also had been joined by Hasideans.¹⁷⁵)

160-159: Judas refused to negotiate with general Bacchides, whom Demetrius I sent with an army, to enforce acceptance of Alcimus. Bacchides searched out and punished Maccabaeen partisans around the countryside to gain submission to Alcimus, then retired from the region. Judas killed all he found of the opposing party; Alcimus again besought Demetrius, who appointed a general Nicanor as governor of Judaea and sent him in out a large force.

Nicanor, indisposed to bloodshed and, after Simon (another Judas brother) suffered a slight repulse, Nicanor sent an embassy. Formal proceedings were held and an agreed peace was reached, in which apparently Alcimus initially was accepted. Nicanor stayed on in Jerusalem; there is evidence that he and Judas formed a companionable friendship. Alcimus again went to Demetrius, alleging Nicanor was plotting and had designated Judas would be successor-Chief Priest. Demetrius ordered Nicanor to arrest Judas. Judas noted a change in Nicanor's attitude and he and supporters went into hiding in the Samaria region. In an ensuing battle, in which Nicanor was killed, the Maccabaeans emerged victorious. Demetrius I again sent out a Bacchides force, who battled the Maccabaeans in the Galilee.

159, Bacchides and his army encamped at Jerusalem. Alcimus, who had ordered tearing down the sanctuary wall, instead suffered a stroke and died; and the "people" proclaimed Judas Chief Priest.

158, Judas (who previously had sent ambassadors to Rome) at some point had entered a Roman League.

155, Bacchides, however, provoked a day-long battle at Bethsur (a famine had induced some men to defect to the Seleucids). The battle ended when Judas was killed, and his remaining forces fled.

¹⁷² *Ptolemais* = seaport city at the northern point of the Acco/Acre bay below Mount Carmel; Gerrenes, uncertain.

¹⁷³ Onias III's son, Onias IV, fled to Ptolemy VI in Egypt.

¹⁷⁴ Not to be confused with Macedonian Demetrius.

¹⁷⁵ *Hasideans/Assideans* = members of a Hebrew religious sect, which remains in obscurity of scholarly debate arising from differing interpretations of ancient and biblical comments (*e.g.* mighty men; most pious/saints/martyrs/ascetics that held strictly to The Law as opposed to war mongerers; chief force in the struggle for independence; first among Judas' forces as opposed to playing a minimal role; developed out of the Nazarenes and appeared later in the order of Essenes; etc.) [Nazarene (from the Greek; used six times in *New Testament*) = "Jesus of 'Nazareth'" literally can be translated "Jesus the *Nazarene*," reflecting Jesus' childhood town of Nazareth in Galilee (north); the additional vowel in the other scriptually-used form, "Jesus the 'Nazorean,'" (used 13 times in the *New Testament*) has posed some translation questions (both forms are irregular in Greek). That Jesus would be called a "Nazorean" (*Gospel of Matthew*), the word has no *Old Testament* source; but some scholars believe it refers to *ne-tser*/branch (from a passage in *Book of Isaiah*); others refer to a passage referring to Samson as a *Nazirite* (*Book of Judges*), it being just one letter off from Nazarene in Greek. (*Nazarene* is the modern Hebrew word for Christian and one of two common Arabic words to denote Christian.)]

But dissension continued, as resisters gravitated to Jonathan (another Judas brother) as their general. Bacchides supervened in their battle, restored Jerusalem's battered walls and put garrisons in several cities. Jonathan and Simon escaped and Bacchides returned home. Not long after, opponents of the Maccabaeans caused Demetrius I to send out Baccides again. Instead of an anticipated easy capture of Jonathan, his men wasted the Bacchides camp in a surprise night attack. Jonathan accepted a proposed truce; Bacchides returned to Antioch; and Jonathan was left to govern the multitude.

151, Alexander Balas, a son of Antiochus IV, laid claim to the Seleucid crown. Ptolemais gave over to him. Both Balas and Demetrius I courted Jonathan for support; Jonathan sided with Balas, who recognized Jonathan as high priest, which appointment made it possible for him to move to Jerusalem from his interim residence at Mishmash¹⁷⁶ and suppress the remaining pro-Seleucid faction that had held power there after the death of Judas.

150, Seleucid Demetrius I was defeated and killed in battle by Balas.

150 (to 148)Fourth Macedonian War: Renewed Greek quarrels fueled by bitterness against Rome by returning exiles combined with a popular Macedonian uprising led by one Andriscus (who claimed to be son of Perseus) resulted in Rome's sending in its legions. Roman forces under Metellus overcame the Andriscus revolt, and Macedonia was made a Roman province (end of the Fourth Macedonian War).

Prelude to the Third Punic War:

c. 150/149, Rome sent a commission to Carthage to investigate complaints of Nubian king Masinissa's seizure of some of Carthaginia's best lands. Reportedly, in effect the commissioners instead were intended to secretly encourage the plundering. Statesman and commissioner, Cato, back at Rome, easily convinced the Senate majority--capitalists desirous of world's commerce--that while Hannibal still menaced Rome Carthage should be destroyed.

The Senate of Rome was arbitrator of disputes under the treaty ending the Second Punic War; and in claims of Carthage against its plundering neighbor Numidia (a Roman client state), the Senate's rulings had been slanted heavily in Numidia's favor. After 50 years in those conditions, Carthage finally had discharged the Second War indemnity to Rome, and it had mustered an army of its own to repel Numidia. It no longer considered itself restricted by the treaty, although Rome believed otherwise. Further, the combination of growing anti-Roman agitations in Hispania and Greece, the visible improvement of Carthage's wealth and maritime power over the intervening years, together with its new militarism, was of special alarm to the Romans.

149, Ptolemy VI gave his daughter, Cleopatra III (mother, Cleopatra II), in marriage to Balas.

149, Attempting to draw Carthage into open conflict, Rome made a series of escalating demands, one being the surrender of three hundred children of the nobility as hostages,¹⁷⁷ and finally demanding that the city be demolished and rebuilt away from the coast, deeper into Africa. When the Carthaginians refused this last demand, Rome declared the:

Third Punic War (to 206): Scipio sailed to Utica with an immense army.

c. 148ff. ((concurrently) the Achaean War/Destruction of Corinth/Battle of Corinth: Until now Rome only had campaigned in Greece against Macedonian allies, clients, and forts. After Macedonia's fall, however, remaining free Greek powers of the Achaean League (with Corinth chief offender) rose up against Rome's presence and declared war—a rash, suicidal move abetted by nationalist stirrings fueled by league city demagogues. Rome's legion under Mummius defeated the Achaean army, entered and utterly destroyed Corinth. Greece became the Provinces of Achaea and Epirus; its people no longer could deny that Rome was their master, ruling indirectly through partisan aristocracies in towns, and through their Governor of Macedonia (“politically the Greeks were dead”). Meanwhile Rome, still a republic, possessed an empire throughout the western and central Mediterranean.

[“Roman Greece” is the name given to the period between Roman victory at Corinth and Constantine's establishment of the Roman Empire's capital at Byzantium in 330 a.d./c.e. (below)].

¹⁷⁶ *Mishmash/Michmas* = identified with a hill some seven miles NE of Jerusalem.

¹⁷⁷ The Romans also took 300 children as hostages, there being pitiful tales of their frantic mothers' grief.

147, Seleucid Demetrius II (son of Demetrius I) went from Crete¹⁷⁸ to Cilicia with a mercenary army to repossess his homelands. In the contention, Balas was supported by Ptolemy VI, Attalus II of Pergamum, and Rome.

146, Ptolemy VI led his army to Ptolemais to support Balas, but discerned that Balas was party to a plot against his life. Civil warring had begun anew, in which Hebrews were deeply involved. While Balas hastened to Antioch to confront Demetrius II, general Apollonius (Balas' governor of Coeseyria) challenged Jonathan. A Maccabaeen force under Jonathan and Simon won a resounding victory. Balas, claimed Apollonius' act had been unauthorized, honored Jonathan and increased his tribute.

In the meantime, the Carthaginians, undone by Roman perfidy and resolving to defend themselves, had dedicated themselves to making new weapons, converting even temples into workshops, while women gave their hair for bowstrings. For two to three years they gallantly manned and defended Carthage's walls.

146, Battle of Carthage/end of the Third Punic War: Scipio constructed a mole to block the harbor and finally broke through the walls, meeting fierce resistance and prolonged house-to-house fighting, before the total surrender.¹⁷⁹ Carthage systematically was burned to the ground. After hundreds of thousands of soldier deaths in the Punic Wars, Rome triumphed to become the most powerful state of the west Mediterranean. Carthage territory became the Roman province of Africa. Rome would proceed to refound Carthage, to become its Empire's third most important city.

Also in this timeframe, while Balas was countering a revolt in Cilicia, Ptolemy VI "easily" persuaded the people of Antioch to reject Balas and was declared King of Antioch by the army there. However, Ptolemy VI being wary of Roman envy should he wear Asia's crown as well as his own, persuaded they receive Demetrius II, with Ptolemy pledging to keep him in check. Ptolemy VI 'divorced' Cleopatra III from Balas and gave her to Demetrius II.

Demetrius II had managed to keep peace at home but failed to support Ptolemaic soldiers sufficiently. Subsequently, one Diodorus Tryphon (a son or pretender-son of Balas) took possession of Antiochus VI *Entheus*,¹⁸⁰ joined with the Demetrius II's defected forces and battled Demetrius II. While Demetrius II won victories over Mithridates I of Parthia, Tryphon occupied Antioch and Demetrius retreated.

Meanwhile, Rome secretly was supporting Ptolemy VIII who made a claim on Cyprus. Ptolemy VI seeded a rebellion in Cyrene to draw off Ptolemy VIII.

Further In this timeframe, Hebrews of Alexandria, connected with the Jerusalem temple, and the Samaritan Hebrews connected with Mount Gerizzim disputed before Ptolemy VI¹⁸¹, each claiming their respective temple was the main temple under Mosaic law. Ptolemy confirmed Jerusalem as the main temple. Meanwhile, Ptolemy VI approved an Onias IV request¹⁸² to build a temple in Egypt at Heliopolis,¹⁸³ on the basis the Hebrews would through greater good will aid in fighting the Seleucids, but also possibly drawing Jerusalem Hebrews.

Meanwhile, Jonathan (who was in the process of levying an army) appealed (bestowing "splendid gifts") to Demetrius II (who it appears was at Ptolemais), to clear Seleucid garrisons in his territories. Demetrius II confirmed Jonathan's chief priesthood and in writing confirmed Jonathan's dominions of Judaea, Peraea, Galilee and three other toparchies/prefectures in Samaria territory. Afterward, however, Demetrius II's troops revolted and confined him to his castle. Jonathan responded

¹⁷⁸ Crete = largest, most populous of the Greek islands.

¹⁷⁹ An estimated 50,000 surviving inhabitants were sold into slavery. Rome annexed the surrounding land and declared it *ager publicus*, shared between local, Roman and Italian farmers. (One highly interesting account is the acts of Hasdrubal's wife who sacrificed herself and her children in fire.)

¹⁸⁰ Son of Balas, whose mother possibly was Cleopatra III; he had been in the custody of Arabian Imalkue/Malchus.

¹⁸¹ Note, a temple also served as a treasury, receiving traditional tithes and sacrifices.

¹⁸² It now some 71 years since his self-exile after murder of his uncle Onias III.

¹⁸³ *Heliopolis* (Greek for *City of the Sun*) earlier was known as On; on the east bank of the Nile a little N of present-day Cairo.

with his army, suppressed the uprising, freed Demetrius and restored peace; but once restored Demetrius broke all promises and threatened war if tribute was not paid as required in the past.

Tryphon's Antiochus VI regime sent Jonathan an epistle reconfirming him as high priest; Jonathan pledged allegiance. (Jonathan's "governorship" appears to date from this point.) He was given leave to assemble a large army out of Syria and Phoenicia to war against Demetrius II generals. Jonathan scoured Coelestrian cities and through "west of the Euphrates as far as Damascus" exhorting support for Antiochus VI, meeting with varying successes. Battling took place primarily at Kadesh/Cadesh in the Galilee region (which people Jonathan "would not overlook [as they] were his own people") and at the Bethsur garrison where Simon installed a garrison of his own. Jonathan sent select men to Rome to confirm and renew Roman friendship, with diplomatic regards also to Sparta.¹⁸⁴

Jonathan and his force routed a large Demetrian army in the country of Hamoth,¹⁸⁵ fought against Nabataeans in Arabia, and at Damascus sold off captives and confiscated goods, while concurrently Simon took Joppa and fortified strongholds over all Judea and other Palestine areas as far as Askelon. Back at Jerusalem they organized restoration again of Jerusalem's walls and towers and built a wall in the middle of the city to cut off supplies to the opponent garrison still in its citadel.

Balas re-entered 'Syria' and battled Demetrius II and Ptolemy VI, conquering the latter in the Antiocheian plains, where Ptolemy VI was seriously wounded and subsequently died. Balas, forced to flee to Arabia, soon met death at the hands of an Arabian [?Nabataean] prince who sent his head to Ptolemy VI. Shortly afterward Ptolemy VI died, and his men in the fortified cities were killed.

In Egypt, queen Cleopatra II (allied with the Hebrews) laid claim to the Egyptian crown for infant, Ptolemy VII *Neos Philopater* (her son by Ptolemy VI¹⁸⁶), and served as Regent for about one year--contended by Ptolemy VIII (at Cyrene). (Reportedly, Ptolemy VI and Cleopatra II had Hebrew generals, Dositheus and one Onias and Dositheus, over their army; and Onias has been credited with initially subduing civil war by achieving terms with [unspecified] Alexandrians at war with Cleopatra II.) Ptolemy VIII came from Cyrene, bent on ejecting Cleopatra II and her progeny. When he basely murdered young men of Alexandria,¹⁸⁷ all Egypt revolted. Matters were resolved (briefly!) by an agreement that Cleopatra II would marry Ptolemy VIII, on condition that at his death Ptolemy VII would be heir. However, at the marriage 'ceremony', Ptolemy VIII murdered Cleopatra's son in her arms. He then repudiated Cleopatra II and instead married her daughter by Ptolemy VI (another "Cleopatra"--IV). Cleopatra II fled to her eldest daughter, Cleopatra III, then wife of Demetrius II, who was allied with the Hebrews.

145 (to 116), Ptolemy VIII ruled Egypt.

Meanwhile, to 141: Tryphon, occupying with title of King at Antioch, and determined to be king of all Asia, laid a plot to first eradicate Jonathan, an ally of the surviving Antiochus VI, before doing away with him. Tryphon succeeded duping Jonathan with an offer to give him Ptolemais; but when Jonathan arrived with only a small force, Tryphon annihilated it and took Jonathan captive. In Jerusalem, Simon (a supporter of Demetrius II) held an assembly, was appointed governor/commander by the people, and immediately began preparations for war. Tryphon extracted money and sons of Jonathan as hostages on promise to free Jonathan, but instead retained him and embarked on entry to Judaea from Idumaea. Snow caused him to remove to Coele-Syria; he fell instead on Gilead, and he killed Jonathan.

Subsequently, Simon (a) starved the last opponents out of their citadel and caused its demolition; (b) sent a large force to Joppa under "Jonathan, son of Absalom," who drove out its occupants and remained there; (c) received capitulation of, and fortified Gazara where he built his

¹⁸⁴ Per *Josephus*, at this time there were three sects in Palestine region—Pharisees, Sadducees, and Essens (see fns. 195, 195, and 236, respectively).

¹⁸⁵ *Hamoth* = in vicinity of Orontes River north of Damascus.

¹⁸⁶ Sometimes omitted in the Ptolemy monarchs numbering.

¹⁸⁷ Murdering as well young prince Memphitis (who appears to have been his nephew, son of a daughter of his father), fearing the Alexandrians would crown him..

“residence;”¹⁸⁸ (d) granted peace to Gadara¹⁸⁹ under another brother, John/Gaddi/Gaddis (fifth and last son of Mattathias) as governor/commander; (e) received condolences (for Jonathan’s death) from Rome and Sparta and reaffirmation of pacts established under Judas and Jonathan; and (f) sent a great shield of gold to Rome in confirmation of his alliance.

Demetrius II granted Simon independence and confirmed him as chief priest (Hebrew records and contracts c. 140 began to be inscribed with “the first year of Simon, High Priest, Governor, and Leader” and a tablet erected decreeing him “high priest, governor general and ethnarch [with] supreme authority.”).

In the interim, also, Parthia had extended its kingdom into Persia.

141, Greeks and Macedonians in Mesopotamia/Media/Babylon regions sent word to Demetrius II pledging II marched east, but was taken captive by the Parthians.

141 (to 139), Tryphon, who murdered Antiochus VI shortly after Demetrius II’s capture, ruled the Seleucids.

Tryphon sent a force against Judaea; Simon, advanced in years, envoyed Rome for regional authority and turned over command to his eldest sons, John Hyrcanus I and Judas (#2), whose forces prevailed. Trypho’s soldiery support if he aided them against king Arsaces (and/or Phraates). Looking for resources to fight Tryphon, Demetrius revolted from him to Demetrius II’s wife, Cleopatra III (who was separated from Demetrius).

Cleopatra III sent an invitation of ‘marriage’ to Antiochus VII *Sidetes* (son of Demetrius I; mother unknown; he was living in “islands of the sea”)), to pursue unification of the Seleucid kingdom.

c. 137, Antiochus VII wrote to Simon of his intent to come and reclaim his ancestral kingdom. Among promises from Simon for a mutual league he offered cancellation of debts and authority to strike coinage. Simon accepted, providing 2000 elite troops and much gold, silver and equipment. Antiochus VII, once he had the means, invaded “Syria,” marched against Tryphon. Antiochus VII ejected Tryphon from “Upper Syria” into Phoenicia. Cornered, Tryphon killed himself.

139/138 (to 128/127), Antiochus VII ruled the Seleucids. Once he had won over Tryphon, however, he broke all agreements with Simon and threatened war unless Simon returned to him Joppa and Gazara and made restitution of all tributes received from districts outside Judaea. Simon refused and called upon his Roman league of assistance. Rome returned a directive that troublemakers in the region were to be handed over to Simon.

134, High Priest Simon and two sons (Mattathais [#2] and Judas [#2]) were treacherously deceived and assassinated by a Simon son-in-law, one “Ptolemy, son of Abubus,” governor of the plain of Jericho,¹⁹⁰ while they were being feasted during a tour of their cities. Ptolemy Abubus captured and imprisoned Simon’s [unnamed] wife and two others of his sons; then he sent a report to Antiochus requesting troops to secure the country. He also sent men to kill John Hyrcanus I at Gazara, and others to seize Jerusalem and temple mount. Hyrcanus I, forewarned, saved himself with the aid of the people of Gazara, and put Antiochus VII’s agents to death.

Recap:

“Syria:” Ruled by Cleopatra III and Antiochus VII *Sidetes*.

Egypt: Ruled by Ptolemy VIII¹⁹¹ Physcon and Cleopatra IV (sometimes referred to as Cleopatra *Berenice*).

Rome: Third Period of The Republic.

Jerusalem temple: John Hyrcanus I was High Priest.

132, Rome’s provinces now were Sicilia, Sardinia with Corsica, Hispania Citerior, Hispania Ulterior, Gallia Cisalpina,¹⁹² Illyricum, Africa, Macedonia, and Achaia.

¹⁸⁸ A strong fortress in Judaea (recent excavations have uncovered the believed ruins of Simon’s palace).

¹⁸⁹ *Gadara* = tentatively placed a short distance S/SE of the Sea of Galilee.

¹⁹⁰ *Jericho* = about 17 miles E/NE of Jerusalem.

¹⁹¹ Numbering of Ptolemies varies in some texts.

Antiochus VII besieged Hyrcanus I for an unstated period of time and then withdrew after extracting 300 talents and hostages. Hyrcanus I made league with Antiochus VII and accompanied him on one Parthian expedition. Antiochus VII strengthened Seleucid/"Syrian"¹⁹³ power by several victories over Parthia and its King Phraates II.

c. 130, Antiochus VII fell in battle at Ecbatana. Cleopatra III ruled Syria solely.

Parthia freed Demetrius II *Nicator*, who had taken Rhodogyne, King Phraates' daughter, to wife. He then was given leave to return to Syria to reclaim the Seleucid throne, and established himself at Antioch. His first wife, Cleopatra III, was established and ruling at Ptolemais,¹⁹⁴ it uncertain when she took residence there. Demetrius had a mind to war against Hyrcanus I. Threatened, Hyrcanus I went to Rome to invoke a league. Rome was polite but gave no letters of protection.

From that point to 123:

Demetrius III suffered ill will among his ranks, and they and some Syrians solicited Ptolemy VIII's aid. Ptolemy VIII sent one Alexander Zabinas/Zebina to depose Demetrius, and Hyrcanus I allied with Zebina. Demetrius, ill, quickly was overcome; he retreated to Ptolemais, where Cleopatra III refused him admittance. (Demetrius later was caught and killed at Tyre.)

Seleucus V, a son of Demetrius II, succeeded his father; Cleopatra III with Seleucus V ruled Syria (their respective locations not given); but Cleopatra III had Seleucus V put to death in the first year, and Ptolemy VIII raised Zebina to the throne (it's assumed, at Antioch).¹⁹⁵

123ff., Antiochus VIII *Grypus* (younger son of Cleopatra III and Demetrius II) captured and killed Antiochus VII. Antiochus VIII ruled Syria with Cleopatra III. At some point, Cleopatra III attempted to poison Antiochus VIII; he discovered it and compelled her to drink the poison instead.

117, Antiochus VIII was forced out of Syria by half-brother Antiochus IX *Cyzenicus* (son of Cleopatra III and Antiochus VII). Their battling over territories continued.

Meanwhile, Hyrcanus I gained possession of Shechem and Gerizzim and "subdued" the Idumaeans.

116 to 104/103: Egypt's Ptolemy VIII died. He left Cyrene to son Ptolemy Apion, and Egypt and Cyprus to Cleopatra IV, with instructions to choose one of their two sons to co-rule. She chose Ptolemy X *Alexander I* over Ptolemy IX *Latherus/Lathryus*. When Ptolemy X quickly "became odious" Cleopatra IV replaced him with Ptolemy IX, but allowed him to ascend only if he married Cleopatra VI *Selene* (daughter of Ptolemy VIII, mother Cleopatra IV?). Cleopatra IV and Ptolemy IX co-ruled Egypt.

After indecisive battles Antiochus VIII and Antiochus IX divided the Syrian realm between them-- Antiochus VIII ceded Coelesyria to Antiochus IX. Cleopatra VI's mother took her from Lathryus and gave her to Antiochus VIII.

Also at some point, Hyrcanus I had begun a siege of Samaria city/Sebaste; its people sought assistance from Antiochus IX. Ptolemy IX unleashed 6000 soldiers without his mother's consent, and his force overran Hyrcanus I's home territory to divert him from Samaria. Hyrcanus I's sons, Aristobulus I and Antigonus I (mother unclear), battled Antiochus IX, who fled to Tripoli and left prosecution of the

¹⁹²/Cisalpine Gaul (Latin, *Gaul on this side of the Alps*) = in modern N Italy (including districts of Emilia-Romagna, Friuli-Venezia Giulia, Liguria, Lombardy, Piedmont, Trentino-Alto Adige/Südtirol and Veneto); then inhabited by Celts.

¹⁹³ Syria" (used first by Herodotus) now generally replaces "Seleucid" in texts. "Syria" in its widest sense equaled the territory of the later Roman province, the large region south of the Taurus Mountains between the Euphrates River on the E, Mediterranean Sea on the W, Palestine's S border and Arabia's N border. "Syria" as found in a narrower sense (depending on extant circumstances) excluded Palestine and Phoenicia. (Ongoing referential variations is demonstrated by *Lempriere's* description of "Judaea"—"A famous country of Assyria, bounded by Arabia, Egypt, Phoenicia.")

¹⁹⁴ Ptolemais = seaport city at the N point of the bay of Acco/Acre which is formed by the cape of Mount Carmel.

¹⁹⁵ In 123, people, the "council" and an undesignated Judas at Jerusalem and in Judea sent greetings and health to an undesignated Aristobulus, "king Ptolemaeus' master" (of the stock of the anointed priests) and to Hebrews that were in Egypt.

war to other generals, who failed. Aristobulus I and Antigonus I took Samaria city and its inhabitants; Hyrcanus I obliterated the city. Aristobulus I and Antigonus I marched “as far as Scythopolis [and lay waste all the country that lay within Mt. Carmel.”

John Hyrcanus I had acquired considerable wealth after the death of Antiochus VII, and reportedly many Hebrews in Jerusalem, Judaea, Alexandria and Cyprus had prospered while many others, envious, were moved to sedition. Also reportedly, the Pharisees¹⁹⁶ carried great power with the multitude while the Sadducees held sway with the rich; Hyrcanus I changed his party to the Sadducee sect for the rest of his tenure which appears to have been without major local incidents .

John Hyrcanus I died after 30 years as high priest. He bequeathed the government to his [unnamed] widow and the high priesthood to his eldest son, Aristobulus I [*Judas*; possibly the Aristobulus of the greeting referred to in the above footnote]. Aristobulus I’s [unnamed/step?-] mother “disputed the government with him;” he put her (and some undesigned relatives of hers) in prison, where she died.

Aristobulus I’s wife was named “Salome” but the “Greeks” called her “Alexandra”—here, Alexandra I. (Her lineage is not given.) Aristobulus I assumed the title of King, as well as High[/Chief] Priest. In a brief tenure, Aristobulus I added a great part of Ituraea to his kingdom, imposing Hebrew law and circumcision on inhabitants. While he was ill, palace plotters (Alexandra I said to have been one) contrived the murder of his younger (half?-brother) Antigonus I, greatly favored by the people. **103**, on the death of Aristobulus I, Queen Alexandra freed some imprisoned “brethren” and married Alexander I *Janneus* (mother unnamed), another son of John Hyrcanus I. Alexander I also assumed both the royal crown and chief priesthood.

In Egypt, Ptolemy IX was expelled by Cleopatra IV with the “assistance and intrigue” of Alexandra I and Alexander I *Janneus*.

97/96, “Ptolemais Apion,” ‘illegitimate’ son of Ptolemy VIII and King of Cyrene, died childless after a 20-year reign and left his dominions to Rome (which after suppression of insurrection would be made a Roman province).

Between 93 and 88: Antiochus VIII was assassinated. Seleucus VI (son of Antiochus VIII [mother unclear]) contended with Antiochus IX for the Syrian crown. Antiochus IX expelled Seleucus VI and ‘married’ Cleopatra VI.

Seleucus VI returned, conquered and killed Antiochus IX. Cleopatra VI joined (seemingly at Antioch) with Antiochus XI *Eusebes* (her son by Antiochus IX).

Meanwhile, Ptolemais sent for aid from Ptolemy IX (who was back at Cyprus). Egypt’s Cleopatra IV accepted a plan of Alexander I *Janneus*: they faked an alliance with Ptolemy IX to have him first dispose of a tyrant named Zoilus who had entered the fray, while Cleopatra IV prepared her army.

Antiochus X *Pius* (son of Antiochus IX, mother unclear) defeated and drove out Seleucus VI (who died in Cilicia “b.c.e. 93”). Subsequently, Antiochus XI also was defeated and killed (circumstances not said); but “Philip/*Philippus*” (parents not clear—half-brother of X?) continued the war with Antiochus X. (It appears that Antiochus X then had possession of Cleopatra VI.) Antiochus X opposed the other Syrian contenders for the whole Syrian realm-- Philip and Demetrius III *Eucerus* (son of Antiochus VIII and Cleopatra VI). Philip’s army was destroyed and he remained reigning over only “some part” of Syria. Meanwhile Antiochus X was over Coelesyria also.

¹⁹⁶ *Pharisees*, per *Josephus*: were of continent lifestyle; disposed toward reasoning and the dictates of reason in practice; believed in a form of ‘reincarnation’ whereby good and virtuous souls would revive to live again while vicious and bad souls would endure eternal punishment; pursued concord and public regard. Ascribing all to fate and God, and good and bad actions principally in the power of men. Sadducees (also according to *Josephus*) believed a soul died with the body; abjure fate; suppose God is not concerned with human behavior, it all at man’s choice; neither punishments or rewards in an afterlife; regard only observation of what the law enjoins; there doctrine accepted only by a few but yet those of greatest dignity; but attach to Pharisaic notions if they become magistrates because the “multitude would not otherwise bear them.”

Ptolemy IX assisted Demetrius III to take Damascus and made Demetrius III king of Damascus. Antiochus X died in battle (probably as an auxiliary fighting Parthians). Philip still was over “some part” of Syria and Demetrius ruled the rest from Damascus. (Cleopatra VI’s status at this point is obscured.) Demetrius III warned Ptolemais’ people if they accepted aid from Ptolemy IX, Cleopatra IV surely would bring her army against them. Ptolemy IX routed Zoilus, learned of Cleopatra IV’s and Alexander I’s ploy, and marched for Egypt. Enroute he took Galilee city of Asochis and made an attempt on Sepphoris, one of the Galilee’s largest cities. Seeing Ptolemy IX on the march, Cleopatra IV sent Ptolemy X to Phoenicia with a fleet which she herself with an army went to Ptolemais. Ptolemais refused to receive her, and her army laid siege. Meanwhile, Ptolemy IX made for Egypt, figuring it would be defenseless.¹⁹⁷

When ultimately the Ptolemies IX and X met in battle, there was a great slaughter, in which Ptolemy IX’s force was compensated by auxiliaries and Ptolemy X’s force, not, dissolved. Ptolemy IX also conquered Alexander I *Jannaeus* and reportedly exercised great cruelties, overrunning all of Alexander I’s territories, occupying certain Judaeon villages and gaining control of Gaza, where he wintered. In the interim, however, Cleopatra IV had taken possession of Ptolemais. Ptolemy IX abandoned further attempt on Egypt and returned to Cyprus; Cleopatra IV returned to Egypt.

Subsequently, Alexander I made several advances in Coelesyria, with varying successes and losses. An ambitious expedition upon maritime parts, specifically Gaza,¹⁹⁸ was successful, despite stout fighting by its governors. (King Aretas II, who had promised assistance, was too late to avert the Gaza’s loss.)

Some of Cleopatra IV’s counselors advised her to seize Alexander I and take his country. A General Ananias counseled contrarily--that Alexander was an ally, related to them, and all Hebrews would become her enemies. Cleopatra acquiesced and at Scythopolis,¹⁹⁹ entered into a league with Alexander I. At some point, Ptolemy X—lest he be expelled a second time?—put Cleopatra IV to death. **c. 88 to c. 85**, Ptolemy X was murdered (reported variously as wither by one of his subjects or by the people of Alexandria). The people of Alexandria recalled and restored Ptolemy IX as sole ruler. Some Egyptian cities, however, refused to acknowledge him as sovereign. Thebes²⁰⁰ for its obstinacy was reduced to ruins after a three-year siege.

King Alexander I and Queen Alexandra I made Antipas/Antipater II (son of Antipater I; mother unknown) general/regional governor of all Idumea.

In a battle at Gadara (near Golan²⁰¹) between Alexander I and Nabataean King Obodas, Alexander’s entire army was broken. He escaped to Jerusalem, where the “nation”/“the multitude” rebelled (hating him already, pelting him when he stood at the temple’s altar; over six years he slew “thousands” of factioned Hebrews). He finally resorted to negotiations but was unsuccessful. His subjects solicited Demetrius III for a defense league. Demetrius III came with his army, joined by Hebrews and auxiliaries about Shechem. Neither Demetrius nor Alexander I respectively could bring off

¹⁹⁷ Chelcias, one of Cleopatra IV’s generals, died at this time.

¹⁹⁸ Gaza had achieved relative independence and prosperity under the Persian Empire, in that after Alexander the Great’s capture of it 332 b.c., he repopulated it with Bedouins and organized the city into a polis. Reportedly, Greek culture took root, with Gaza earning a reputation as a flourishing center of Hellenic learning and philosophy.

¹⁹⁹ *Scythopolis*, anciently Beth-Shan/Beth-Shean, currently Beit Shean—at this time known as Scythopolis, it was one of the largest cities of the “Dekapolis/Decapoli,” located west of the Jordan River some 12 miles S of the Sea of Galilee. *Dekapolis*: a region of 10 Grecian cities ranging N through Bashan into Gilead (mountainous region east of the Jordan, N to Mt. Hermon), SW toward Hippos near the E edge of the Sea of Galilee and across W to Scythopolis, then back across Pella (area of current NW Jordan) and down to Rabbah/Philadelphia/Amman (Jordan).

²⁰⁰ Of Egypt (not Greece): about 600 miles S of the Mediterranean on the E bank of the Nile. (This mention of Scythopolis is a rare indication of the territory embraced by “Coelesyria.”

²⁰¹ *Golan*/Gaulonitis; E of the Jordan River in the N.

Hebrews with Demetrius and Greek mercenaries with Alexander; in the ensuing engagement, all of Alexander I's mercenaries were killed and Demetrius III returned to his country.

Alexander I fled to the mountains where he was joined by 6000 Hebrews from Demetrius III's army, but the "rest of the multitude" warred continuously with him. Eventually he either slew or took captive many of them, including the "most powerful;" returned to Jerusalem and crucified some 800 soldiers who had opposed him (another 8000 remaining fugitives for the rest of his reign, for which he finally had procured quiet among his subjects).

Demetrius III besieged Philip at Berea /Aleppo (some 90 miles from the sea). Philip formed an alliance with Berea's tyrant Strato and Mithridates Sinax of the Parthians; Demetrius was defeated, captured, and sent to King Mithridates (where he was held in great honor until he died from illness). Philip then reigned at Antioch (Cleopatra VI's status still uncertain).

Antiochus XII *Dionysius* (son of Antiochus VIII? and ?) entered Damascus and took over rule there.

The next Nabataean king, Aretas, in an expedition against Judaea, won a victory against Alexander I and then retired on certain "agreed conditions."

Antiochus XII made an expedition against the Nabataeans. In his absence, Philip made a try for Damascus, but the citadel's governor held possession for Antiochus XII. Alexander I's efforts to hinder Antiochus XII as he passed through were unsuccessful. Meanwhile the Damascens called on Aretas. Antiochus XII fought "desperately" with Aretas ("a mighty slaughter") and fell at the front of the battle; survivors of his army fled to the village of Cana,²⁰² where most from lack of supplies. Aretas occupied Damascus.

85, Nabataean Aretas was king of Coelesyria. Philip remained at Antioch; Cleopatra VI's status still uncertain.

Meanwhile, in 86, Rome had sacked Ephesus.

84, Rome sacked Ephesus.

83, King Tigranes I of Armenia invaded Coelesyria. Aretas evacuated Damascus; Tigranes remained.

81, In Egypt, Ptolemy IX died and was succeeded by his only daughter, Cleopatra V (found referred to as "Tryphaena;" mother uncertain.)

A co-reign of Cleopatra V with Ptolemy XI *Alexander II* (son of Ptolemy X *Alexander I*; mother unclear) lasted 19 days, when Ptolemy XI fell into the hands of Parthia's Mithridates.

80, Cleopatra V reigned an unspecified time with Ptolemy XII *Alexander III* (another son of Ptolemy X; mother unclear) until he was banished by their subjects, who installed Ptolemy XIII *Auletes* (son of Ptolemy IX; mother unclear). He co-reigned a period until also banished by the Alexandrians, who proclaimed as co-queen his eldest daughter, Berenice (who of his three daughters was "legitimate;" mother, Cleopatra V). Cleopatra V and Berenice co-ruled one year.

At some point Ptolemy XI escaped from Mithridates to Roman dictator Lucius Cornelius Sulla/Sulla, who restored Ptolemy XI to the Egyptian kingdom. Ptolemy XI first married then murdered Cleopatra V. Ptolemy XI took co-rule with Berenice; however, a few days after his restoration he was murdered by "the people/his subjects of Alexandria." Berenice ruled solely.

Toward the end of Alexander I *Janneus'* tenure he undertook a three-year expedition, during which he took Pella, Gerasa/Jerash; north Jordan), "Dios," "Essa" (where Zeno had his treasures), Golan, Seleucia and "that valley which is called the "Valley of Antiochus," and the fortress of Gamala (upper Galilee), where he stripped and turned out the governor (an undesigned Demetrius). Thus the Hebrews at the time possessed many cities that had belonged to Syrians, Idumaeans, and Phoenicians. **76 ff.**, Alexander I *Janneus* died of illness at a fortress beyond the Jordan ("in the bounds of Ragaba"). Queen Alexandra I withheld the news from the military until after she had returned to Jerusalem and secured its fortress. She then consulted with Pharisee leaders, willing to share power, as their authority with the people would reconcile her nation to her.

²⁰² Cana's location has not been determined between sites in the Galilee and a site (Qana) in southern Lebanon.

Queen Alexandra I appointed her and Janneus' son John Hyrcanus II as chief/high priest, believing that his a-political nature would avoid problems with the Pharisees. Their other son, Aristobulus II (who reportedly had a "warm temper") she kept with her privately. She restored practices introduced by the Pharisees that had been abrogated by her father-in-law, Hyrcanus I. While Pharisees became the true administrators, Queen Alexandra I was an able manager of great affairs. She increased the army by a half and procured a great body of foreign troops, until her nation was made both powerful at home and intimidating to foreign potentates. At some point she sent her army out and took possession of Damascus without much resistance. (An alternate remark found is that Cleopatra VI "who ruled Syria" persuaded the Damascens to expel Tigranes I.) Meanwhile, an insurrection at Antioch expelled Philip.

Tigranes I then made a large expedition and besieged Ptolemais. Temporarily diverted from the siege by Parthian incursions into Armenia, he then returned to Ptolemais, took Cleopatra VI *Selene* prisoner and put her to death. Apprehensive, Alexandra I sent ambassadors and gifts to Tigranes I, received back "good hopes" of his favour and made "agreements" with him.

c. 72, [Antipas/Antipater I + ? – Antipas/Antipater II + Cypros I (of an "eminent Arabian [?Nabataean] family) -] Herod the Great was born.

70, the Roman Senate elected consuls Marcus Licinius Crassus and Gnaeus Pompeius Magnus/"Pompey the Great."

Alexandra I consistently had been hounded by Pharisees about punishment of opponents who had influenced the massacre of their 800 constituents; and eventually they took personal vengeance by murdering several former supporters of Alexander I *Janneus*. The principal ones, however, sought refuge with Aristobulus II, who persuaded his mother to spare them on account of their dignity; and they became dispersed "all over the country."

69, Roman general Lucullus expelled Tigranes I completely from Syrian dominions and installed Antiochus XIII *Asiatikos/Asiaticus/Commagenus* (son of Antiochus XI; mother unclear—Cleopatra IV?).

Leading Pharisees (friends of Aristobulus II) insisted that, if Alexandra I truly was committed to them, she would place them in all her fortresses, threatening further that, otherwise, they would join Nabataean King Aretas III as auxiliaries. Alexandra, forced into what appeared the lesser evil, gave them command of 22 of her fortresses, keeping Hyrcania, Alexandrium, and Macherus,²⁰³ which held her principal treasures. After that, she fell ill. Aristobulus II commenced to solidify plans for a coup, his [unnamed] wife being the only one knowing his secret efforts. Within 15 days he had secured all 22 fortresses, where were his settled friends. He then assembled an army of mercenary soldiers and made himself King. High Priest Hyrcanus II complained to Alexandra I; she compassionated his case and put Aristobulus' wife and sons under restraint in Antonia [/"Citadel"/"Tower of Antonia"]--a fortress joined to the north part of the temple. Seventy years old and failing, she told the "elders" and Hyrcanus to do what they thought proper.

67, Alexandra I died, ending her nine-year reign. Although she had committed the kingdom to Hyrcanus II, Aristobulus was the superior of them. Their battle for the crown was met at Jericho, where the majority of Hyrcanus' men defected to Aristobulus. Hyrcanus retreated to, gained control of the Jerusalem citadel, and sent a conciliatory message to Aristobulus. In a resolution before "the whole multitude" in the temple, Hyrcanus gave up both the priesthood and his claim to the crown, while Aristobulus II assumed both kingship and chief priesthood.

Meanwhile, (a) in Syria, the prince of a Syriac tribe in north Syria "by treachery" killed Antiochus XIII, with whom Philip II (son of Philip) had been civil warring unsuccessfully; (b) Rome annexed Crete and Cyprus (the latter found dated alternately to 58); and (c) Antipater II of Idumaea, who was a friend

²⁰³ *Hyrcanium* = unclear, unless the castle complex/fortress built and occupied by Hyrcanus Tobias (original appearance of the name "Hyrcanus"), back in the factioned priesthood conflicts of the 170's-160's; refer to *History of the Daughters*). *Alexandrium* = fortress on a high mountain north from Scythopolis near the entrance into "Palestine" and near to "Coraea." *Macherus* = E side of Dead Sea some 10 miles S of the Sea's N end.

of Hyrcanus II, was lobbying privately against Aristobulus II with the “most powerful of the Hebrews,” urging Hyrcanus II that Aristobulus II be ejected. Hyrcanus at first paid no heed.

65, Egypt’s previously-banished Ptolemy XII *Alexander III* died at Tyre, and by a will, left his claim of rights to the Egyptian kingdom “to the Roman people.”

65-64, Roman consul general Pompey was Rome’s commander in the East. He drove Mithridates VII from Pontus (region on the southern coast of the Black Sea) and joined its territory to the new Roman province of Bithynia.²⁰⁴ Pompey deposed Antiochus XIII from the Syrian throne and made Syria a Roman province.

Meanwhile, Antipater II, also in league with Gazaites and Ascalonites (of coastal city), finally persuaded Hyrcanus II to ally with Nabataean King Aretas. At a meeting at Petra, Hyrcanus II agreed that once established he would return to Aretas 12 cities taken by his father.

Pompey, warring with Tigranes of Armenia, sent Roman general Scaurus to Damascus, where he dispossessed Roman generals Lollius and Metellus, who recently had taken it.

Aretas and Hyrcanus II and Aristobulus II battled; many of Aristobulus’ men defected to Hyrcanus, and Aristobulus retreated to Jerusalem’s temple, where he was besieged and none but the priests continued with him inside the walls, while the “principal” Hebrews of his faction fled into Egypt. Learning that news, Roman Scaurus made haste there, expecting to gain booty. Scaurus interposed himself and lifted the siege. In the ensuing hiatus, both Hyrcanus II and Aristobulus II sent ambassadors to Scaurus with promises of money. He accepted 300 talents from Aristobulus II and ordered Aretas to leave or be declared an enemy of the Romans. Aretas retired to Philadelphia/Amman, and Scaurus returned to Damascus. Pompey with his army crossed the east mountainous limits of Coelesyria (enroute demolishing the Apamia /Pella citadel) and arrived at Damascus, to which he had summoned all regional contenders to appear before him in the spring. Besides the Jerusalem contenders, ambassadors came to Pompey from “all Syria and Egypt.”

c. 64, Hyrcanus II’s lead ambassador before Pompey was Antipater II. Aristobulus II’s lead ambassador was one Nicodemus. Pompey received testimony of the “nation” against them both, that what was desired was not a monarchy but government like its forefathers--subject to the priesthood. Pompey shelved the issue (wanting to see first to the Nabataeans), and admonished the brothers to keep peace until his return.

Aristobulus II, however, went on the march again. Pompey’s anger, fueled by Hyrcanus II and his friends, resulted in a Pompey expedition against Aristobulus II. Aristobulus retreated to fortified Alexandrium. Pompey followed. Pompey forced Aristobulus to write to every governor of his fortified places to yield them up. Aristobulus also promised money and yielding up Jerusalem, but wound up Pompey’s prisoner. Sedition erupted between the faction that would surrender the city to Pompey and the faction that would not. Aristobulus’s party seized the temple and prepared for a siege, while the others admitted Pompey and his army and surrendered the king’s palace where Pompey, assisted in every way by Hyrcanus II, installed a garrison. He then pitched camp (on the north part of the temple), constructed banks for a siege, obtained “mechanical engines,” etc. from Tyre, and battered the temple with stones. At the end of three months the towers were felled, the Roman led force poured in, and slaughter ensued, the greatest part of the many priests slain by countrymen of the adverse faction, and an “innumerable number” committing suicide. (Absalom, Aristobulus II’s “uncle and father-in-law,” was taken captive.)

²⁰⁴In this century, Roman armies fought three “Mithridatic Wars” (named for King Mithridates VI of Pontus): the First, 88-84, commanded by Sulla, which ended with Roman victory 85 b.c. (“Treaty of Dardanos”); the second, 83-81 b.c., commanded by Lucius Licinius Murena, ended inconclusively with Sulla’s withdrawal after a defeat of Romans; the third, 75-63 b.c., commanded by Lucius Licinius Lucullus 75 to 66 and then, Gnaeus Pompeius Magnus to 63, ended with Roman victory and subsequent suicide of Mithredates VI, end of Pontus kingdom and Roman reaffirmation over Anatolia.

64, Pompey made Jerusalem tributary to the Romans. He took away cities of Coelesyria which the kingdom previously had subdued²⁰⁵ and committed the whole of Coelesyria to Scaurus as governor, supported by two legions. Rome's annexations of new provinces now extended its dominion from Egypt's border all the way to the Euphrates, with Antioch the third major city in Rome's empire after Rome and Alexandria.

Pompey restored Hyrcanus II as High Priest. Then he hastily proceeded to Rome, carrying along, bound, Aristobulus II and his children--two unnamed daughters and two sons, Alexander II and Antigonus II. Enroute, however, Alexander II escaped.

Hyrcanus commanded Antipater II to furnish Scaurus with all he needed to make an expedition against Aretas at Petra, where Hyrcanus extracted 300 talents from Aretas to have Scaurus withdraw the army.

59 and ff., Pompey's arrangements in the East were ratified by the Roman Senate. Julius Caesar became a consul, and he, Pompey and Crassus formed the first *ad hoc* "Triumvirate," which had no legal imprimatur and was purposed to consolidate its members' political power and their supporters against senatorial elite.

Egypt's Queen Berenice had sent to Syria for a husband and married one Seleucus *Cybiosactes* (a son of Antiochus XI; mother unclear); "within days," however, she had him strangled.

In Palestine, the escaped Alexander II had been canvassing the country, assembled a large army, and soon had retaken the Hyrcanium, Alexandrium, and Macherus fortresses. Various Roman commanders, including Marcus Antonius/Mark Antony, were sent with their Roman contingents. Combined with subject Hebrews and friends of Antipater II, they battled Alexander II—first in the neighborhood of Jerusalem, where 6000 of his men were killed and 3000 taken captive. Alexander II with the rest of his man retreated to Alexandrium. When he refused to surrender, the Roman-led forces laid siege.

Alexander II's mother (moved by concern for her captive husband and children at Rome) pleaded with Alexander, who acquiesced, asked pardon, and delivered up the three fortresses, which the conquerors demolished. Proconsul Aulus Gabinius reinstored Hyrcanus II to the Jerusalem temple but the an aristocratic government was formed.²⁰⁶ The peoples of the province were to be governed by five councils, over five parts--Jerusalem, Gadara, "Amathus," Jericho and Sepphoris.

By some means, Aristobulus II (Alexander II's father) and son Antigonus II were freed from Rome and, assuming kingship and high priesthood, commenced to assemble former supporters.

Meanwhile at Rome, Pompey had received Egypt's banished Ptolemy XIII; 100 ambassadors who opposed Ptolemy XIII were killed, and the first triumvirate sent a legion under the command of Gabinius to effect Ptolemy XIII's restoration on Egypt's throne.

56, Crassus, Pompey and Julius Caesar renewed their alliance ("second term" of the Triumvirate) and agreed on their future territorial commands (by which they "divided among them the Roman world").

55, Aristobulus II and Antigonus II heard that Lucien Cornelius Sisenna, Mark Antony and Quintus Servilius had been sent against them. They made for Macherus with 8000 men and accompanied by Roman lieutenant Pitholaus, who had defected with 1000 soldiers. Battle was met enroute. Five thousand of Aristobulus II's soldiers were slain and 2000 fled; but the remainder broke through the Roman lines and reached Macherus. After a two-day siege Aristobulus II and Antigonus II were captured and brought to Gabinius. Aristobulus II was taken back to Rome, where the senate kept him in bonds; Antigonus II also was taken to Rome; but Gabinius returned Aristobulus' other children to their mother, as apparently she had promised her back when she aided in yielding of the fortresses

²⁰⁵ There were special arrangements, however, for certain regional cities; *e.g.* Samaria was restored to its own inhabitants.

²⁰⁶ *Aristocracy.* 1: a government by the best individuals or a small privileged class. 2a: a government in which power is vested in a minority consisting of those felt to be best qualified. b: a state with such a government. 3: a governing body or upper class usu. made up of a hereditary nobility. 4: the aggregate of those felt to be superior." Webster, p. 47.

Meanwhile in Egypt, Queen Berenice had 'married one Archelaus, whom Julius Caesar had named priest of the temple of the goddess Bellona, at Comana, in Cappadocia.²⁰⁷

To 51, Gabinius made use of Hyrcanus II and Antipater II for all necessary and, gaining passage to Egypt by enlisting confederates from Hebrews above Pelusium that guarded passes into Egypt, took an army against Archelaus, who lasted barely six months before being killed in battle. Gabinius restored Ptolemy XIII, who killed Queen Berenice.

While Gabinius had been involved in Egypt, Alexander II brought Hebrew supporters to revolt again;" Gabinius returned quickly, found disorder and seditions. Alexander II, who had reassembled a large army, had seized the government a second time and proceeded to besiege Gerizzim. Gabinius sent Antipater II, who prevailed over some revolters;" but 30,000 remained with Alexander II. In an ensuing battle at Mount Tabor, 10,000 of them fell and the rest dispersed. At Jerusalem, Gabinius settled the government as Antipater II wanted. (At some point, Pompey sent Metellus Scipio after Alexander II, who it appears [reportedly] that he was at Antioch when Scipio cut off his head.)

Gabinius next gained victory over the Nabateans, turned over regional governance to Crassus, and returned to Rome.

51, Ptolemy XIII died of disease, leaving behind two sons and two living daughters. Alexandrians proclaimed co-sovereigns the elder boy, Ptolemy XIV (found referred to also as *Dionysius II*), and elder daughter, Cleopatra VII ("the Great"). (Their mother was Cleopatra V.)

51ff., Syria was overrun by Parthians. Crassus, preparing to march against them swang through Jerusalem and took all of the temple's treasury. He and all his army were defeated by King Orodes and perished in Parthia. Crassus was followed by Gaius Cassius Longinus ("Cassius"), who stopped Parthian incursions into Syria and took possession of it. He made a quick march into Judaea, taking some 30,000 captives. He killed Pitholaus (reportedly at Antipater II's behest) and, before heading for the Euphrates and the Parthians, forced Alexander II to come to terms and "be quiet."

Competition erupted between the parties of Pompey and Julius Caesar.

In Egypt, "associates" of young Ptolemy XIV caused an uprising and banished Cleopatra VII. She set sail to Syria with a sister Arsinoe.

Curio, a friend of Mark Antony, having changed his own party to Caesar's, also brought Antony over. The Roman state finally had broken into two hostile factions: the aristocratic party behind Pompey, who was in the city, and the popular party, Julius Caesar, then at the head of an army in Gaul. **c. 50**, Julius Caesar crushed a revolt of the Gauls.

49ff., the Roman Senate ordered Julius Caesar to lay down his command on pain of being declared a public enemy. Proconsuls Mark Antony and Cassius vetoed the action. Civil warring commenced between Pompey and Julius Caesar.

48ff., Julius Caesar conquered Pompey's forces on the plain of Pharsalia in Thessaly (the year varies by two in different texts). Pompey fled for Egypt (where subsequently he was captured and killed). Opponent senators fled "beyond the Ionian Sea."

c. 47/46, Julius Caesar was appointed perpetual dictator of Roman Republic (considered by some historians the pivotal point leading to transition from Republic to Roman "Empire"). He had conquered opposition on all fronts of the Roman territories. "For the first time in history the world of the ancients extending from the Euphrates to the Atlantic bowed to one will;" and Rome had its first 'emperor'-- holding all chief religious and civil offices; "king in all but name."

c. 45, Julius Caesar freed Aristobulus II and Antigonus II and sent them with two legions to take Syria and neighboring parts. Pompey supporters poisoned Aristobulus II before his campaign got underway.²⁰⁸

²⁰⁷ *Cappadocia* = region of present central Turkey; Capadocians in Herodotus' time were reported occupying the entire region from Mt. Taurus to the vicinity of the Black Sea, separated on the S from Cilicia, E by the Euphrates and Armenia highlands; N by Pontus.

Julius Caesar's legions invaded Egypt and occupied Alexandria (Antipater II was very useful to Caesar's undertaking, by order of Hyrcanus II.)

Ptolemy XIV either died in fighting about Alexandria or was put to death by Julius Caesar. Julius Caesar entered into a personal relationship with Cleopatra VII and reinstalled her as queen in a co-reign with Ptolemy XV (son of Ptolemy XIII; mother uncertain).

Returning through Syria and Asia Minor, Julius Caesar settled affairs of the provinces.

Antigonus II alleged to Julius Caesar that his father had been poisoned and his brother beheaded means of Antipater II and petitioned to be recognized as Chief/High Priest, but was unsuccessful. Julius Caesar declared Hyrcanus II to be most worthy and granted him permission to re-raise Jerusalem's walls, leaving Antipater II to choose what authority he pleased. Antipater II was constituted "prefect"²⁰⁹ of all Judea and, once Julius Caesar had left, Antipater (who saw Hyrcanus II unfit to manage) "partly threatened/partly advised" people all about the country that if they did not submit well to Hyrcanus II they would find Antipater "to be their lord instead of procurator [prefect?]." Antipater II also proceeded "to rebuild that wall of his own country (Idumaea) which Pompey had overthrown." He also made his eldest son, Phasaleus I, governor of Jerusalem and parts about it, and sent his next son, Herod [the Great; but 15 years old], to the Galilee with equal authority. Antipater II, for his courage and many wounds sustained in the Egyptian campaign, was made a citizen of Rome by Julius Caesar, and among other bestowals given freedom from taxes. Herod the Great, shrewdly playing the changing politics among Rome's generals, quickly entered the good graces of Sextus Caesar, president of Syria and kinsman of Julius.

In this timeframe, Cleopatra VII gave birth to Ptolemy XVI *Kaisarion/Caesarian*, her only child by Julius Caesar.

Many chief men of the Hebrews (many in the royal palace itself) were pjerorative as to Hyrcanus' perceived abuse by Antipaterian authority, especially when Antipater II obtained money from Hyrcanus II and sent it to Rome as if from him. They openly accused Antipater II before Hyrcanus and urged that Herod the Great, whom they saw as a potential tyrant, be made to answer for his killings in some unilateral aggressions by him in the northlands.

Hyrcanus II privately was envious of Antipater II but concerned more at the steady information of Herod the Great's growing reputation. At length, however, prevailed upon (also by mothers of those slain) he was persuaded to summon Herod the Great to a trial.²¹⁰ Sextus Caesar sent a threatening epistle on Herod's behalf, and Herod garrisoned the Galilee and himself brought an army with him to Jerusalem. The Sanhedrin (the Temple Court) was ready to convict; Hyrcanus, however, bowed under outside pressure, continued the trial a day, and then simply advised Herod to retire from the city. Herod went to Sextus at Damascus and prepared for war in event he should be resummoned. Sextus made Herod ("sold him for money") general of Coelesyria and Samaria, and Herod backed off from an intended assault on Jerusalem by counsel of his father and brother.

At Rome, the aristocrats, jealous of their own titles and privilege, simultaneously honored Julius Caesar while plotting his murder, in which reportedly some 60 were involved, the chief conspirators being Marcus Junius Brutus and Cassius.

44, March 15, Julius Caesar was assassinated after retaining Roman government three years and six months, at age 56. His assassination set off great agitations. His death ostensibly left consul Mark

²⁰⁸ Aristobulus II's widow (who was at Ascalon), on invitation of one "Ptolemy, son of Menneus," sent to him Antigonus II and her daughters, one—Alexandra III—first becoming wife to Philippon, son of said Ptolemy; then said Ptolemy killed his son and married Alexandra III himself!

²⁰⁹ There was a distinction between "prefect" and "procurator," not always referentially clear. "Prefect" was a magisterial title of varying definition and duties, whereas duties of a "procurator," originally financial management, with time embraced more powers. The uses of those terms herein are subject to differentiation.

²¹⁰ The Great had killed one Hezekiah and his followers without The Law's requisite condemnation by the sanhedrin.

Antony at the head of government, but the Republic had perished totally. Men of power took to the party that offered greatest personal hopes.

Caesar's will left two-thirds of his estate to his adopted heir, Octavian. On his adoption Octavian assumed his great-uncle's name, Gaius Julius Caesar, but came to be referred to by history by his original name, to avoid confusions. He appropriated considerable funds that had been allotted by Caesar for intended war against Parthia, along with tributes sent to Rome from its near east province. On a march through Italy his war chest attracted many of Caesar's former veterans. At Rome, Julius' assassins had been granted a general amnesty, but Mark Antony would drive most of them out; but he lost support of many Romans and supporters of Julius by at first opposing a motion to elevate Caesar to divine status. Antony came to be seen as managing with absolute power and lording it over the Senate.

By September Marcus Tullius Cicero's orations were attacking Antony as the greatest of threats to the order of the Senate; and by then Octavian had won support from Caesarian sympathizers who possibly saw him as manipulable in getting rid of Antony. Antony was slated to receive Cisalpine Gaul from Decimus Brutus, one of Julius' assassins, it ostensibly to be handed to him January 1. Octavian meanwhile was building a private army in Italy of Caesarian veterans through monetary offers. By November he won over two of Antony's own legions. Recognizing the danger of staying in Rome, Antony went to Cisalpine Gaul, where Decimus Brutus refused to give it up and Antony besieged him ("battle of Mutina"). Antony rejected Senate resolutions to stop the violence and, while it had no army of its own to challenge him, Octavian and his army stood ready.

43, January 1, Rome's Senate inducted Octavian as a senator, with both consul voting and *imperium* power to legally command troops. Two other consuls, Hirtius and Pansa, were sent with him to confront Antony.

43, April, Antony's forces were defeated (Mutina and "battle of Forum Gallorum), where the other two consuls were killed, leaving Octavian in sole command. Antony retreated. When the Senate then attempted to give sole command of the consular legions to D. Brutus, Octavian refused cooperate or aid any more offense against Antony.

43, July, Octavian sent an embassy of centurions to Rome with a demand that Octavian receive the consulship left vacant by Hirtius and Pansa, and that a decree that declared Antony a public enemy be rescinded. Refused, he marched on the city with eight legions, met no military opposition, and August 19 August was elected co-consul with his relative Quintus Pedius. Antony, meanwhile, formed an alliance with Marcus Aemilius Lepidus, another leading Caesarian.

Also meanwhile, following Julius Caesar's murder, Cleopatra VII murdered Ptolemy XV murdered (or had him murdered), and assumed regency in Egypt for her son by Julius Caesar.

In following civil warrings of Roman factions in which Brutus and Cassius were supported by Parthians, Antipater II's sons assisted in Syria (at Apamia on the right bank of the Orontes River). The Parthians, however, occupied Syria. Charged with levying heavy tributes, Herod the Great followed first the interests of Brutus and Cassius who had got together an army out of Syria. Herod achieved great favor with Cassius with extractions he made in the Gailiee, and Cassius gave him a fleet and army and made him general of the forces in Coelesyria, promising that after victory he would be made king.

In that region, once Cassius had left, hostility toward Antipater II by Malichus (a leader of Roman subject Hebrews against Alexander II), which led to the brink of war, was reconciled by Herod the Great and brother Phasaeleus. That was followed by Antipater II's death by poison (reportedly by Hyrcanus II's cupbearer, bribed by Malichus). Herod temporarily feigned belief in Malichus' innocence to avoid a civil outbreak, and went to subdue an uprising in Samaria City. On his return, Malichus forbid Herod and his armed men from entering Jerusalem. Herod wrote to Cassius, who responded Herod should avenge his father's death. Herod enticed Malichus (with Hyrcanus II) to Tyre for a proposed feast, Cassius having sent orders to commanders there to assist Herod. On approach outside the city Malichus was surrounded and killed.

Subsequently, while Herod was detained by illness, Malichus' brother, Felix, instigated several revolts against Phasaelus. Further, one Ptolemy²¹¹ brought back Antigonus II and supplied him with all he needed to establish himself, and Antigonus also was supported by Marion, a Cassius-placed tyrant at Tyre, who garrisoned three Galilee fortresses. Herod returned, recovered the fortresses and drove out all three—Marion, Felix and Antigonus.

Herod the Great was received at Jerusalem with honor and at some point had “espoused” (was engaged to) Miriamne/Miriam I, daughter of Alexandra II and Alexander II. Phasaelus, in the meantime, was complaining to Herod that Hyrcanus II (Miriamne's maternal grandfather) was abetting their enemies.

c. 42, in the Roman circus, in October (at a meeting at Bologna, Italy), Octavian, Antony and Marcus Aemilius allied in the “Second Triumvirate” (supported, unlike the First Triumvirate) by the *plebs*²¹²), ratified by the Senate for a five-year term, ostensibly to restore the Republic's constitution. The new triumvirs set in motion proscriptions to enable raising military funds and eliminate political enemies.²¹³ Altogether, they assembled 43 legions.

42, January 1, the Senate posthumously recognized Julius Caesar as a divinity of the Roman state (*Divus Iulius*), and Octavian furthered his cause by emphasizing that he was *Divi filius* (Son of God).

42, Battles of Philippi, Macedonia (last of the civil warring between the Second Triumvirate and Octavian). Twenty-eight legions were sent by sea to face the armies of Julius' assassins, Brutus and Cassius, who had built a power base in Greece. At the end of two engagements, the triumvirates were victorious and in unopposed control of the Roman Republic (both Brutus and Cassius having committed suicide).

Following Philippi, new territorial arrangements were effected among the triumvirs. Octavian was left over Gaul and provinces of Hispania and Italy; Lepidus, with the province of Africa; Mark Antony made for Asia Minor and the Near East. Octavian was left with the problem of settling land promises to tens of thousands of veterans of the Macedonian campaign, plus tens of thousands who had fought with Brutus and Cassius and would easily ally with political opponents if not appeased. No government-controlled land was available for allotments, leaving Octavian two options: alienate Roman citizens through confiscations or create soldier oppositions in Roman heartland. Choosing the former, entire or partial evictions occurred in as many as 18 Roman towns.²¹⁴

42ff. Mark Antony, in Bithynia (northwest Asia Minor) heard charges from ambassadors from all parts (including “principal men of the Hebrews”), that Herod the Great and Phasaelus were keeping government by force, with Hyrcanus II but a figurehead. Herod, who had secured Antony's friendship with considerable money, also was present; and Antony was not disposed to credit the charges.

²¹¹Son of Menneus and ruler of Chalcis, under Mount Lebanon.

²¹² General body of free landowning Roman citizens (*plebeians*), distinguished from slaves and distinct from the higher order of patricians, although they could become wealthy and influential.

²¹³ Allegedly 300 senators and 2,000 *equites* (members of the equestrian order) were branded outlaws, to be deprived of property and if they did not escape, lose their lives—although the number of senators actually might have been much lower—with reward to Romans for their capture. (*Plutarch* described the proscriptions as ruthless, cutthroat swapping of friends and family between Antony, Lepidus, and Octavian; e.g. Octavian allowed proscription of his ally Cicero; Antony, of maternal uncle Lucius Julius Caesar IV; Lepidus, his brother Paulus. Assassins finally reached Cicero as he was being carried toward the sea on a litter at Caputae, where he had retreated. “And thus was he murdered,” at age 64, stretching forth his neck out of the litter....” His head and hands, cut off on Antony's order, were hung “up over the rostra, where the orators spoke,” at Rome; where “the Roman people...believed they saw there, not the face of Cicero, but the image of Antony's soul.”)

²¹⁴ Widespread dissatisfaction over the settlements caused many to rally to Lucius Antonius (brother of Mark Antony), supported by Senate majority. Meanwhile, Octavian returned wife Clodia (claiming non-consummation of the marriage) to her mother Fulvia, then wife of Mark Antony (Clodia having been born from a previous Fulvia marriage). Fulvia took action: with Lucius Antonius (an Antony uncle) she raised an army in Italy to fight for Antony rights against Octavian. Bloody events (executions of Fulvia, et al supporters, following Octavian victory at a siege at Perugia in early 40—Fulvia being exiled) sullied Octavian's reputation.

Afterward, at Ephesus, on receipt of a gift of a gold crown from Hyrcanus, he granted Hyrcanus' request for captives take by Cassius.

At Daphne near Antioch, "100 of the most potent of the Hebrews" again brought charges against Herod the Great, with Hyrcanus II present. Having heard both sides, Antony asked Hyrcanus who best governed. Hyrcanus (Herod's future father-in-law) responded, Herod and his associates. Antony, by written letters, made Herod and Phasaelus each a Tetrarch ('one-quarter ruler) in their respective districts (Galilee and Judaea) and committed Hebrew public affairs to them. Jerusalem was in tumult upon hearing of the appointments, and 1000 ambassadors next went to see Antony, by then at Tyre. Antony, "corrupted by money from the Herodians," set Tyre's governor on the embassy, many killed and wounded.

Meanwhile, Parthians had made incursions into Syria. Antigonus II, now allied with Menneus' son, Lysanias, offered Parthian King Pacorus and his commander/governor Barzapharnes, money and women for the death of Herod, deposal of Hyrcanus II, and installation of Antigonus. Pacorus was received by Sidon and Ptolemais. Hebrews from around Mt. Carmel joined Antigonus II, his force growing until it fell on Jerusalem, where it was joined by more people. The king's palace was besieged and battling continued day by day, with continual slaughters. (At Pentecost, "tens of thousands" were gathered about the temple, some in armor, some not.) Antigonus II eventually got Phasaelus I and Hyrcanus II to meet with Pacorus ostensibly to negotiate a truce (Herod exhorted against it). Galilee, too, was rebelling, and Phasaelus and Hyrcanus soon became captives, heard of Antigonus' promises to the Parthians, and realized they were alive only until Herod was captured. (Barzapharnes refused an offer from Phasaelus of more money than Antigonus would pay.)

Herod the Great, receiving his own intelligence reports, saw through Parthian and other lords' words and urgings to exit Jerusalem's walls, to receive good news of a settlement. Instead he fled the Parthians in the night, with his armed men and family members,²¹⁵ and pursued his way to Idumea, meeting repeating skirmishes along the way with both Parthians and Hebrews (the latter reportedly falling on him more heavily than the Parthians). At Masada²¹⁶ in Idumea he was met by his brother Joseph II; by then, supporting people and mercenaries had swelled to some 10,000, nine-tenths of which he gave money and provisions to find safe refuge elsewhere in that the Masada fortress could not hold everyone. Leaving 800 guards for the women and children, and provisions sufficient to withstand a siege, he himself went to Petra to solicit aid from Nabataean King Malthus for intercession and redemption of Phasaelus I from the Parthians (taking with him to Malthus Phasaelus' seven-year-old son for collateral).

41, October, Antony summoned Cleopatra VIII to Tarsus in Cilicia and they formed an alliance. Antony returned with her to Alexandria and spent the winter there.

41 (to 39): Parthians had brought Phasaelus I as a prisoner to Antigonus II at Jerusalem and, after plundering the city, left it in Antigonus' hands. Hyrcanus II they carried bound, to Parthia. Phasaelus, expecting execution, bashed his head against a wall to commit suicide and either died from wounds or from poison administered by physicians sent by Antigonus II. Herod the Great, who had been put off by Malthus, learned of Phasaelus' fate and headed for Egypt. Cleopatra VII (hopeful Herod would command an expedition she was contemplating) received him with splendor; Herod rejected the offer and sailed for Rome, enlarged along the way with ships from friends at Rhodes.

At Rome, Herod related everything. Octavian also favored Herod because of his father's role in assisting Julius Caesar in the conquest of Egypt. A Senate convocation declared Antigonus II an enemy and approved an Antony proposal that Herod be designated King, *provided* he could oust Antigonus II.²¹⁷

²¹⁵ With him were his wives, his mother Cypros I, his sister Salome I, Miriamne his 'fiancee,' Miriamne's mother Alexandra II, and his younger brother Pheroras, the women drawing along their infant children..

²¹⁶ *Masada* = in the S district on the E edge of the Judean Desert, overlooking the Dead Sea.

²¹⁷ "Rome granted Herod the Great kingship "on the 184th Olympiad"—contrary to Roman custom of bestowing kingship on one of the local royal family.

Parthians had occupied Syria; and while Antigonos II's forces besieged Masada, Roman general Ventidius (after subduing Parthians in Syria) marched into Palestine in pretense of aiding Herod's brother, Joseph II, but really to extract money of Antigonos II, who the Parthians had elevated to a puppet king. Ventidius pitched camp near Jerusalem, stripped Antigonos of much money, and left a troop there under one Silo. Antigonos cultivated Silo while privately hoping for Parthians again to come to his defense. Herod, meanwhile, had sailed from Brundisium, Italy (on the Adriatic coast) to Ptolemais and assembled a sizeable army of foreigners and countrymen (the greatest number of people joining in hopes of reward once he was firmly settled in the kingdom). Antony sent word to both Ventidius and Silo to assist Herod, who first had to conquer Joppa.

Silo, who had been taking money from Antigonos II, withdrew from Jerusalem. Pursued by Hebrews, Herod soon put them to flight; and his force suffered little from attempted ambushes from Antigonos supporters along the way. He pitched camp on Jerusalem's west side, joined by Silo's soldiers and men of the city who were in dread of him, while Antigonos II's guards shot darts and arrows and some sallied out in hand-to-hand combat. Herod proclaimed 'round the wall that was prepared to forgive and forget, that he intended the people's good and to preserve the city, while Antigonos II's soldiers clamored interruptingly that it had been wrong for the Romans to give Herod the kingdom, in that he was nothing more than a private man and Idumaeon, when there were royal and sacerdotal family members in good standing with Rome—others who were legitimate if Antigonos wasn't wanted. Antigonos II's men easily drove Herod's troops away from the towers; winter was upon them, and Silo wanted to get his soldiers off the siege; but Herod promised them all they would need and secured an abundance of necessities from immediately surrounding country and via friends about Samaria, which also had joined him. Corn, wine and cattle was stocked at Jericho, where Herod installed a garrison. Meanwhile, Antigonos by bribes got Silo's permission to let part of his army winter at Lydda (/Lod; nine miles southeast of Tel Aviv). Herod did not remain idle; before sending his soldiers to winter in surrounding countryside, his brother Joseph II proceeded to seize Idumaea; Herod settled his family and relatives in Samaria and proceeding to capture Antigonos garrisons in the Galilee and brought over to him all of the Galilee except people living in caves. Also meanwhile, Ventidius called on Silo and Herod to war against the Parthians, but first to settle affairs in the Palestinian regions. Herod sent Silo ahead and arranged for part of his army (under one Ptolemy, undesignated) to clear out the cave-dwellers.

At this time, Antony was abiding in Athens.

Another Galilee insurrection resulted in (said) Ptolemy's death; Herod responded immediately, destroyed a great number of the seditious, raising off sieges at various fortresses, and laid a heavy fine on rebellious cities. By that time, Romans had driven back the Parthians and Pacorus had been slain. Antony now commanded Ventidius to send a general Macheras with two legions and 1,000 horse, as Herod auxiliaries against Antigonos II. After an Antigonos letter to Macheras pleading his cause and an offer of money, Macheras said he would aid Antigonos instead; Antigonos, however, discerned that Macheras was playing both sides and refused him admittance to the city when he approached; Macheras withdrew (but not without slaying all the Hebrews he met on the way, Herod's supporters included).

Herod, at Samaria, provoked, threatened to go to Antony about Macheras' maladministration. Macheras obtained reconciliation by joining forces with Joseph II, whom Herod had left over his army. Herod had enjoined Joseph to avoid any encounters with the enemy in Herod's absence. Herod was enroute to join Antony in Roman sieges at Samosata and Commagena.²¹⁸ At Antioch Herod assumed leadership of a large number of recruits and cleared out ambushes as he went. He gained much respect from Antony by making a quick end of the Samosata siege, where one Antiochus (undesignated) delivered up the fortress to end that war. Antony himself made for Alexandria.

²¹⁸*Commagena* = ancient district of N Syria on the Euphrates River, S of Taurus mountains, now in SE Asian Turkey; Samosata was its metropolis.

Back in the Palestine regions, Antigonus II now had a force under command of one Parthian Pappus. While Herod had been with Antony, Joseph II, against Herod's orders and with five regiments from Macheras, marched to reap Jericho's mid-summer corn. Antigonus in the meanwhile sent forces under Pappus against both Samaria and Macheras.

40, spring, Antony learned of wife Fulvia's involvement in civil strife with Octavian on Antony's behalf and that she had been exiled. Antony left Egypt and sailed to Italy with a large force (Fulvia dying while he was enroute). He first laid siege at Brundisium, but matters became untenable for both him and Octavian—centurions,²¹⁹ who had become important political figures, refused to fight in light of their Caesarian cause, and the legions under them followed suit.

40, autumn, the concurrent centurion mutiny and death of Fulvia led to reconciliation of Antony and Octavian. The Treaty of Brundisium, approved by them, provided that Lepidus would remain in Africa, Antony in the East, Octavian in the West. The Italian peninsula was left open to all for the recruitment of soldiers—in reality, useless for Antony in the East. To further cement the new alliance, Mark Antony and Octavian's sister, Octavia Minor, were marriage. (During their marriage she would give Antony two daughters, Antonia Major and Antonia Minor.)

Both Octavian and Antony vied for an alliance with Sextus Pompeius (a renegade general; son of first triumvir Pompey defeated by Julius Caesar). Octavian secured a temporary one by marrying the daughter (Scribonia) of a Pompey follower.²²⁰ In 39, Sextus was established in Sicily and Sardinia, via an agreement with the Second Triumvirate. (Sextus was not of the Caesarian faction but of the republican party.)

c. 39, Cleopatra the Great gave birth to twins by Mark Antony: Alexander Helios and Cleopatra VIII *Selene*.

Joseph's green regiment was trapped by Pappus and utterly destroyed (Pappus cut off Joseph's head). Upon that victory Galileans revolted from their commanders and drowned those of Herod's party and the greater part of Judaea became seditious. Much change had happened also in Idumaea, where Macheras proceeded to build a wall around a fortress named Gitta/Gittha. When Herod, at Daphne, got all the news he quickened his one Roman legion, joined by 800 men of Mt. Libanus. Proceeding along Galilee by night, he cleared one (undesigned) fortress and then marched to and pitched camp at Jericho.

39-37, By winter's end 39, Herod had defeated Pappus (sending his head to Antigonus to confirm retribution for Phasaelus' fate); Antigonus II's outlying forces were decimated.

Herod returned to Samaria and completed his marriage to Miriamne I.²²¹ After the wedding, Antony sent general Sosius with two legions to join Herod, who himself left Samaria with some 30,000 men, all headed for Judaea

Meanwhile, Sextus Pompeius in Sicily threatened Octavian in Italy, denying peninsula shipments of grain via the Mediterranean, his naval commander son charged with causing widespread famine in Italy. The Sicilian rebellion kept in Italy the army promised to Antony. A temporary peace agreement was reached ("Treaty of Misenum"); the blockade was lifted by Octavian ceding to Sextus Sardinia, Corsica, Sicily, and the Peloponnese, with insurance of a position as consul for 35 b.c.

The territorial agreement amongst the triumvirs and Sextus began to crumble when Octavian divorced Scribonia (of Pompey lineage) and in January of 38 married Livia *Drusilla* (of the lineage of the patrician Claudii, endorsers of Julius Caesar's assassination). After a Sextus naval commander betrayed Sextus, and handed over Corsica and Sardinia to Octavian, Octavian needed Antony's additional support to attack Sextus and Antony, Octavian's for his own planned campaign against Parthia.

²¹⁹ Commanders of a Roman "century" = 100 soldiers.

²²⁰ The political machinations of 'marriages' certainly already have filled books and only are touched upon here as necessary (!)—e.g. Scribonia conceived Octavian's only natural child, Julia, born the same day that he divorced Scribonia to marry another (Livia Drusilla), little more than a year after the Scribonia marriage..

²²¹ At some point, Herod sent away another wife, Doris, "a private person born at Jerusalem."

37, Treaty of Tarentum: Agreement was reached to extend the Second Triumvirate another five years. Antony provided Octavian with 120 ships. Octavian was to send 20,000 legionaries to Antony but ultimately sent only some 2,000.

37, conquest of Jerusalem: in all, the combined forces that pitched camp (near the most easily-assailable part of Jerusalem's wall, "before the temple") consisted of 11 armed foot legions, 6000 horsemen, and additional auxiliaries out of Syria. They first demolished the suburbs and put many hands to work building siege bulwarks, towers, and positioning war engines to attack city walls.²²² The slaughter that followed was irrespective of gender, infancy or old age.

Antigonus II finally descended from the citadel and fell at Sosius' feet, only to be placed in bonds to be delivered to Antony, while Herod's men "all went away full of money." Herod feared if Antigonus made it to Rome he might gain favorable Senate hearing on the legitimacy of kingship. "By giving Antony a great deal of money," Antigonus II was beheaded at Antioch on Antony's order. "[T]hus did government [by] the Asamoneans cease 126 years after it was first set up [and] came to Herod."

Now in absolute power, Herod the Great took revenge on the opponent party, slaying 45 of Antigonus II's principal supporters and all members of the Sanhedrin, included men before whom he had been brought to trial by Hyrcanus II. He confiscated all the royal ornaments and stripped wealthy citizens of silver and gold, from which he bestowed generous amounts on friends and a heap on Mark Antony. Herod appointed one Ananelus, High Priest.²²³

More or less concomitantly, Antony--skeptical of Octavian's true support of his Parthian cause--left a pregnant Octavia at Rome and sailed to Alexandria where he received as expected funding from Cleopatra VII. Antony's invasion of Parthian territory with about 100,000 allied troops was a disaster, Armenian allies deserting after defeats and failures of Antony to capture Parthian strongholds. Antony retreated, his remaining force further depleted through Armenia's deep winter.

Alexandra II wrote to Cleopatra VII asking her intercession with Antony to see that her son, Aristobulus III (Miriamne's brother) be made High Priest, and sent drawings of Aristobulus III and Miriamne I to Mark Antony. He refrained from asking that Miriamne I be sent to Egypt but wrote to Herod the Great to send Aristobulus III. Herod politely refused, claiming "all would be in a state of war," if Aristobulus III left the country, "because the Hebrews hoped for a change in government. He replaced Ananelus with Aristobulus III (saying it had been Aristobulus III's young age that kept being appointed first); but Alexandra II, watched constantly, was no more than a prisoner and again communicated with Cleopatra VII, who advised her to flee to Egypt with Aristobulus III. Alexandra drew a plan of escape, but it was foiled by an informant. For the time being Herod took no punishment on her, knowing Cleopatra VII would not sustain it.

Reportedly, Cleopatra prevailed on Antony to dispose of Herod the Great and Malichus (which he did not do); assassinate "principal men among the Syrians" (which he did); pressed him to get as possessions Syria and Judaea; that he did gave her some portions; and that Herod (who pacified Cleopatra with presents) rented from her land around Jericho and "Arabia" (but became niggardly in payments).

36ff., Cleopatra the Great gave birth to Ptolemy XVII *Philadelphus* by Mark Antony.

Octavian and Lepidus launched a joint operation in Sicily against Sextus, whose fleet almost totally was destroyed (despite some setbacks for Octavian) in September ("battle of Naulochus") under command of general Marcus Vipsanius Agrippa. Both Lepidus and Octavian gathered surrendered Sextus troops, but Lepidus felt empowered enough to claim Sicily for himself. He ordered Octavian to

²²² According to *Josephus*, the defending Hebrews "within the walls fought with great alacrity and zeal, for the whole nation was gathered together." Those within had managed to contrive a few "war engines" of their own. It took 40 days for the first wall to be scaled and 15 the second. Cloisters surrounding the temple were burned. The temple's outer court was taken; the Hebrews fled into the inner court and upper city. Herod granted a request that they be allowed to receive beasts for sacrifices, thinking they then might yield. When that did not occur, Herod made a massive assault.

²²³ Whose stock was of priest captives carried "beyond the Euphrates."

leave; then, when his troops (weary and enticed by more pay) defected to Octavian, he surrendered and was ejected from the Second Triumvirate.²²⁴

Roman dominions now were divided between Octavian in the West and Antony in the East. To maintain peace and stability in his portion, Octavian ensured Roman citizens' property rights, this time settling discharged soldiers outside Italy while returning 30,000 slaves to former Roman owners that previously had fled to join Sextus' forces. As to his and his family's own safety, he had the Senate grant him, wife *Livia Drusilla*, and sister, Octavia "tribunal immunity" (*sacrosanctitas*).

In Rome, the triumvirate essentially was no more. Octavian, in sole power, with Julia Augusta as his wife he wooed the traditional Republican aristocracy to his side, depicting Antony as a man of low morals *vis-à-vis* leaving his wife, etc. Antony several times was summoned to Rome but did not go. Politically, Octavian made himself look less autocratic and Antony more the villain by proclaiming he would step down as triumvir if only Antony would do the same; Antony refused.

Instead, again with Egyptian funding, he invaded Armenia—this time, successfully acquiring the Kingdom of Armenia. At end of a mock Roman triumphal celebration in Alexandria, with Cleopatra and their children by his side (Cleopatra in the interim had given birth to a third child, a son, Ptolemy XVII *Philadelphus*), Antony made clear a full break from Rome and Octavian, naming his children by Cleopatra as heirs to the territory he claimed (the "Donations of Alexandria," the last, fatal breach between Antony and Octavian): Alexander Helios was awarded Armenia, Media and Parthia (which never were conquered by Rome); Cleopatra VIII *Selene*, Cyrene and Libya; and Ptolemy XVII *Philadelphus*, Syria and Cilicia. Cleopatra VII was proclaimed Queen of Kings and Queen of Egypt, to rule Egypt with Ptolemy XV *Caesarion* (son of Julius) as King of Kings and King of Egypt, Caesarion being declared legitimate son and heir of Julius Caesar.

While Antony's 'distributions' did not threaten Octavian's position, Ptolemy XVII as legitimate heir to Caesar's name was a different matter, in that Octavian's power base of popularity and legion loyalties had been his adoptive link to Caesar.

Meanwhile, in the southeast:

Hyrcanus II returned home from Parthia and was led by Herod the Great to believe they would share governance.

Handsome 17 or 18-year-old Aristobulus III had been popularly hailed when he presided as High Priest. An ensuing feast day, hosted at Jericho by Alexandra II, Aristobulus III was drowned by "such of Herod's acquaintance...appointed to do it." Herod appointed as High Priest one "Jesus, son of Phabet."

Understandable antagonism existed in Herod's household, between the camps of his mother, Cypros I, and sister, Salome I, and that of Alexandra II and Miriamne I, as Salome lodged charges of "lust" against Miriamne I because of the drawing sent to Antony—all of which Alexandra II reported all to Cleopatra VII, who "made the case her own" and pressed Antony to punish Herod.

Antony summoned Herod, who first separated the families, his mother and sister with other relatives under care of his youngest brother, Pheroras, at Masada, and Alexandra II et al with his uncle, Joseph I (then Salome's husband) at Alexandria, with instructions to "kill Miriamne immediately" if he didn't return from Egypt, which injunction Joseph revealed to Miriamne. On a false rumor that Herod had been put to death, Alexandra II pressed Joseph I to take her and hers to the Roman encampment around Jerusalem, which he did not do.

In Egypt, Herod made presents to Antony, regaining his favor, and traveled part way with him on an expedition. On his return, Cypros and Salome informed him of Alexandra II's efforts in his absence, Salome also insinuating that "criminal" conduct had occurred between Joseph I and Miriamne I. When Miriamne revealed she knew of Herod's instructions to kill her, Herod used it as evidence that Joseph had "debauched" Miriamne; ordered that Joseph I be killed; and had Alexandra bound into custody. He made Idumaeen Costobarus governor of Idumaea and Gaza in place of Joseph I and had Salome marry

²²⁴ Lepidus was allowed the office of *pontifex maximus* (head of the college of priests), but with his public career at an end, he effectively was exiled.

him. Shortly thereafter, Costobarus wrote to Cleopatra VII that he was ready to transfer his alliance to her and Antony. Herod learned it but on entreaties of his mother and sister pardoned Costobarus; however, a bill of divorce from Salome was sent to Costobarus. (Learning Costobarus had assisted in the escape earlier of some Antigonus II supporters, Herod had all those intimidated sought out and slain.)

33, January, Octavian opened the Senate session with a vehement attack on Antony's grants of titles and territories to his relatives and to his queen.

33-32, the triumvirate legally expired on the last day of 33 and was not renewed; another civil war was in the offing. During 33 and 32 Rome's political arena was aflame with accusations flying from both sides. Antony in Egypt accused Octavian of having forged the Caesar adoption papers and was usurping power. Octavian charged Antony had been treasonous, keeping provinces which rightfully should be given by lots in Roman tradition, of starting foreign wars absent Senate consent, and responsible for Sextus' execution (as had been done) without trial.

32, the Senate formally stripped Antony of all power and declared war against Cleopatra VII (but not against Antony, in that Octavian would not be seen perpetuating internecine Roman bloodshed). Some consuls and senators rushed to the Antony side. When he heard of it, after publicly divorcing Octavia, he went at once to Ephesus with Cleopatra VII, where a vast fleet was gathered from all parts of the East, Cleopatra furnishing a large portion. After a time with his allies at Samos, Antony removed to Athens, his land forces that had been in Armenia brought down to the coast of Asia embarked under L. Canidius Crassus.

Some ministers deserted Antony in the autumn and they gave Octavian information he needed to confirm his Senate accusations. He then stormed the Vestal Virgins sanctuary and forced its chief priestess to hand over Antony's secret will, which would have given away Roman-conquered territories as kingdoms for his sons to rule, alongside plans to build a tomb for himself and his queen in Alexandria. Italians willingly followed Octavian, fearing Antony, with Cleopatra VII intended to make the empire oriental, with Alexandria as capital.²²⁵

Octavian's forces scored a preliminary victory when the navy under Marcus Vipsanius Agrippa successfully ferried troops across the Adriatic Sea, captured the naval port of Methone (at southwest of Peloponnese; loyal to Antony) and cut off Antony's and Cleopatra's main forces from sea supply routes. Octavian landed on the mainland opposite the island of Corcyra (in the Ionian Sea; modern Corfu). Antony, intending to descend on Italy, instead found Octavian's ships guarding the sea. Antony's fleet for the most part lay in the Ambracian Gulf,²²⁶ with land forces encamped near the promontory of Actium,²²⁷ the opposite side of the narrow strait into the gulf protected by a tower and body of troops. Antony rejected Octavian proposals for a conference; both prepared for the next year's struggle.

31, in August, Octavian troops were brought by land to the vicinity of Antony's camp on the north side of the strait leading into the gulf. Antony was waiting for his full strength to gather from various allies and places where his some of his ships had wintered. During those months skirmishes under Octavian's general Agrippa had prevailed so far down the Grecian coast that Antony abandoned the north side and withdrew all of his soldiers to the strait's southern camp. Cleopatra strongly advised that garrisons be put into strong towns and the main fleet return to Alexandria, which apparently was decided.²²⁸

31, September 1, Octavian issued an address to his fleet to prepare for battle. The next day was wet and the sea was rough.

²²⁵ Herod prepared to be an auxiliary to Antony. Antony, instead commanded Herod to go against the king of Arabia (reportedly on Cleopatra VII's contemplation, if the respective kings went against each other, she ultimately would obtain one or the other country); but Herod's army was severely routed

²²⁶ *Ambracian Gulf* = aka Gulf of Arta/Actium/Amvrakikos, in Ionian Sea in NW Greece.

²²⁷ *Actium/Azio* = town and promontory of Epirus.

²²⁸ Reportedly, Octavian—somehow learning of the plan, originally was of mind first to let Antony sail and then attack, but was prevailed upon by Agrippa to give battle immediately.

31, September 2, Battle of Actium:²²⁹ Outside the gulf, Antony for fear of being surrounded gave the word to attack. Antony led his ships (500 of which 230 large war galleys had towers of armed men) into the straits toward the open sea. Octavian's fleet (some 250 warships led by Agrippa) moved into line, waited beyond the straits, at first quiet. Then they began to steer around Antony's ships, Agrippa commanding from the left wing, Lucius Arruntius from center, and Marcus Lurius from the right. Titus Statilius Taurus commanded Octavian's land armies from shore north of the straits. Antony and Gellius Publicola commanded Antony's right wing, Marcus Octavius and Marcus Insteius the centre, with Cleopatra's squadron behind them.

While there are differing versions of the combat, one holds Antony, seeing himself being surrounded, had no choice but to attack, it initially coming from the left wing under Gaius Sosius, while Antony's chief lieutenant Publius Canidius Crassus command the land forces. Battling raged all afternoon with no decisive result.

Many of his ships—larger, cumbersome *quinqueremes*--were undermanned, depleted by severe malaria during the prior wait, as opposed to Octavian's fully manned, more agile vessels. With the death of many oarsmen, the quinquereme head-on ramming tactic failed, as Octavian's lighter ships outmanoevered. Antony burned those ships he could no longer man and tightly clustered the remainder. Further, prior to the battle, a defecting Antony general (Quintus Dellius) gave Antony's battle plans to Octavian, enabling Octavian's ships to stay out of range.

Shortly after midday, Antony was forced to extend his line from protection of the shore and finally directly engage the enemy. Cleopatra in the rear gave signaled her fleet to enter the open sea; but instead of engaging in battle, retreated. Contagion and disorganization spread. It was long after nightfall that Antony managed to escape, transferred to a smaller vessel with his flag and taking a few ships with him as an escort to help break through Octavian's lines. Those left behind were captured or sunk by Octavian's forces.

Essentially, the Empire now had a sole master. But Octavian, who would settle for no less than absolute power, had no intention of giving Antony and Cleopatra rest.²³⁰

Meanwhile, in Palestinian regions: Battling continued between Herod and the Nabataeans, in which Herod ultimately gained the upper hand—significantly, near Philadelphia east of the Jordan. Herod refused all offers of terms of redemption, decimated the foe, and “punished Arabia so severely, and extinguished the spirits of the men that he was chosen by the nation for their ruler.” Following Octavian's win at Actium, Herod, a former ally of Antony, anticipated punishment by Octavian, contemplating further that aged royal Hyrcanus II (father of Alexandra II) might be seen as a logical successor

Alexandra II pressured her father to seek refuge for himself and the family with Arabia's governor, Malchus. A turncoat intercepted a letter from Hyrcanus to Malchus, which Herod allowed to be delivered with orders to also return Malchus' response to him also. Malchus responded with a guarantee of sufficient force for Hyrcanus, et al safe escort. Herod showed the correspondence to the Sanhedrin and immediately put Hyrcanus II to death. He then hastened to a meeting with Octavian at Rhodes. Herod again separating the womens' camps, this time, one “Sohemus of Iturea” in charge at Alexandrium with instructions this time to kill both Miriamne I and Alexandra II if he did not return and preserve the kingdom for Pheroras.

Octavian accepted Herod's exculpatory presentations--his father's and his own previous fealty to Rome; his having counseled Antony to kill Cleopatra VII; etc.--and reaffirmed Herod in his kingdom. On Herod's return he found turmoil in his household at a peak, his mother and sister plaguing him with accusatory stories about Miriamne I.

²²⁹ There are varying reconstructions of the battle; the simplified one given here is not advanced as authoritative.

²³⁰ While the Battle of Actium is considered by some the pivotal point of change from the Roman Republic to the Roman Empire, historians also have proposed two other candidates--Julius Caesar's earlier appointment, and the Senate's grant of extraordinary powers to Octavian/Augustus under the first settlement 27 BC (see next).

30, August 30, Octavian assisted by Agrippa invaded Egypt. Antony, no other refuge open to him and mistakenly believing Cleopatra had killed herself, committed suicide himself (stabbing himself with his sword)²³¹ Afterward, Cleopatra finally was successful in taking her own life.

Octavian had Ptolemy XVII *Caesarion* murdered but spared Antony's other children by Cleopatra, who were paraded through the streets of Rome. Octavia's daughters by Antony were spared; but h's daughters by Octavia were spared; Marcus Julius Antonius, a son by Fulvia, was spared; but his elder son by Fulvia (age 17; potentially a legal heir) was killed.

When word reached Herod of Octavian's complete triumph, he went to meet Octavian and conducted him as far as Antioch.

27, Commencement of "The Diarchy."²³² Extraordinary powers were conferred on Octavian by the Roman Senate, which awarded him the honorific *Augustus* ("the revered one").²³³ An autocratic form of government commenced the first period of the Roman Empire—the "Principate"²³⁴ (to 284 a.d.)--characterized by concerted effort on part of "emperors"²³⁵ to preserve illusion of formal continuance of Roman Republic, but in political reality autocratic rule scrupulously masked forms and conventions of oligarchic rule. In the Principate first century, territory expanded from central Italy to the entire Mediterranean world; in the second century, to domination of North Africa, Iberian peninsula, all Greece, and what now is south France. In practice, the "emperor" was supreme ruler of Rome and supreme commander of the Roman legions.

Augustus organized the provinces, of which Egypt now was one. He added several cities to Herod the Great's kingdom and gave him a 400-man bodyguard. Herod's public position was more magnificent than ever but distress from familial hatreds persisted, Miriamne I having nothing for him but contempt and Salome I suggesting Miriamne had acquired poison to kill him. Herod seized on the confession of a harem eunuch that he tortured that there had been improper conduct between

²³¹Reportedly, before he expired, learning Cleopatra still lived, friends brought him to where she was hiding and he died in her arms. Alternately, some sources claim Antony did not commit suicide but was killed by an Egyptian priest who was in favor of Octavian; also, that Cleopatra was allowed to conduct Antony's burial rites after her capture by Octavian; also, that she made more than one attempt to take her own life, knowing that she was destined to be paraded at Octavian's triumphal return to Rome. (Cicero Minor, son of Cicero, announced Antony's death to the senate; his honors were revoked; his statues removed; and a decree entered, that no Antonii descendent ever again would bear the name Marcus.

²³² *Diarchy*, as used by historians here, meaning dual rule, introduced by Augustus in the Principate as being a division of provincial responsibility between the Emperor and Senate (not "diarchy" as in more ancient form, of two *diarchs*/individuals as co-heads of state, holding the position for life and its power left to their children or family when they died.

²³³ Octavian, having been born Gaius Octavius Thurinus, was adopted posthumously via the Last Will and Testament of Julius Caesar, his great-uncle. Subsequently, between then and 27 b.c., he is found referred to as Gaius Julius Caesar, until the 27 award of *Augustus*, consequently then referred to as Gaius Julius Caesar Augustus. However it became common to refer to him as Octavius/Octavianus/Octavian.

²³⁴ *Principate* (from Latin *princeps* = *chief* or *first*--political regime dominated by leader whether or not formally head of state, merely "first among equals"); characterized by concerted effort on part of Emperors to preserve illusion of formal continuance of Roman Republic, enlightened absolutism w/ occasional forays into quasi-constitutional monarchy, emperors tending not to flaunt their power and usually respecting rights of citizens (but never letting it bind them)--a *de facto* dictatorial regime within constitutional framework of the Roman Republic as alternative to hated early Roman Kingdom. The *Principate* would last until c. 284 c.e.

²³⁵ It is to be noted again that the title, "Emperor," overall largely is a modern concept. While it denotes concentrated power in one individual, it derived modernly, from the earned title 'Imperator' granted by armies to successful generals in emphasis of an army's linked dependence to the ruler on whose power it relied, eventually to change in third century c.e. to authority explicitly invested in the person of "Emperor." (Ranking and administration of government officers, a study in itself, over time will show multiple simultaneously titled "emperors" [as opposed to "kings"] dividing territorial rule.)

Miriamne and Sohemus; he ordered Sohemus executed; he put Miriamne on trial; and the court (described as “those that were most faithful to him”) passed a death sentence on her, which was carried out.

General matters for Herod in his kingdom were calamitous as well. A drought ravaged the country, during which he gave some of his rich possessions to Rome’s prefect in Egypt to obtain corn. He made distributions as best he could, giving seed to the Syrians as well—all of which served to wipe off some of the old hatreds toward him; but disease killed a great number of the people, including some of his most esteemed friends. Another palace intrigue involving accusations against Pheroras added to his miseries. Before long he fell into “a dangerous distemper/inflammation,” for which treatment was undertaken at Sebaste/Samaria City. Alexandra II, in Jerusalem, now proposed to those in charge of Jerusalem’s two fortifications give them over “to her, and to Herod’s sons.” When Herod was told of it by informants, he had Alexandra II slain on his order.

Herod the Great recovery was not total (somewhat afflicted now in mind as well as body); but his public affairs nonetheless soon flourished again. He provided a select company to Roman general Aelius Gallus for a Red Sea expedition. At Jerusalem he built a richly adorned palace of large apartments in the ‘upper city.’ And then he took to wife another Mariamne [II], the daughter of one Simon Cantheras of Jerusalem (the son of one Boethus, a priest of great note in Alexandria). Herod deprived (Phabet –) Jesus of the high priesthood and conferred it on Simon Cantheras.

Herod was particularly friendly with Marcus Vipsanius Agrippa, who had taken over governorship of Rome’s eastern provinces. When some Gadarenes made accusations against Herod; Agrippa bound and sent them to Herod without a hearing.

c. 27-24: The first Actian games were held at Nicopolis, an Epirus city founded by Octavian in commemoration of the Actium battle.

After the games, Octavian, in Syria, held a hearing of complaints against Herod by the Gadarenes (spurred by one Zenodorus), asking severance from Herod’s kingdom to join Rome’s province). “Arabians” [undesigned] in Herod’s dominions also were advocating sedition, claiming Zenodorus previously had sold his territory of Auranitis to them. Augustus bestowed, on Herod, Trachon/Trachonitis, Batanea, and the country of Auranitis/Hauran—Zenodorus’ country; no small one, lying between Trachonitis and the Galilee, containing Ulatha, and Paneas/Panium²³⁶ and the country round about. Augustus made Herod one of his procurators [prefects?] in Syria, and commanded that none of them do anything without Herod’s approbation.” (Herod subsequently began construction of “a most beautiful temple at Paneas, dedicated to Augustus.) Finally, at Herod’s bequest, Augustus granted Peraea to Pheroras as a tetrarchy.

c.23ff., Herod commenced raising and rebuilding the Jerusalem’s temple and construction of royal cloisters, etc. He forgave his subjects some taxes but failed to attain good will by restricting fraternalization, setting spies “everywhere,” putting to death many brought to the citadel Hyrcania openly and secretly, and requiring all (except Essens²³⁷) to take an oath of fidelity. Hatred toward Herod heightened when he unilaterally enacted provisos contrary to Temple law. Meanwhile, he sent Alexander III and Aristobulus IV, his sons by Miriamne I, to Rome, where they lodged with both Caius Asinius Pollio and in Augustus’ palace.

²³⁶ *Paneas*/aka Banias/Panion/Panium = some 100 miles N of Jerusalem and 40 miles SW of Damascus.

²³⁷ Per *Josephus*: *Essens* were of two orders, agreeing as to life style, customs and laws, but differing as to marriage; generally believing the body was impermanent; the soul, immortal and (“like the opinions of the Greeks”) beyond is a good habitation for a good soul but a dark, tempestuous den for a bad one. They had no certain city; dwelled in any city; held all in common as if one patrimony of brethren; carried no personal possessions when they traveled (but for weapons to ward off thieves), sects in each place providing all necessities to traveling members; were continent, peaceful, controllers of passions, took great pains studying the writings of ancients, made just judgments in their court, were lovers of truth, etc. etc. with God their only legislator. The pro-marriage members held that celibacy omitted the vital principle of life by which mankind is continued; the others who eschewed wedlock practiced taking on other people’s children as their kin and furthering their education.

20 to 18 roughly, the period of birth of Miriam/Mary, mother of Jesus (/Yehohshua/ Joshua/Yesu/Iesous/Issa) of the *New Testament* (if Jesus' birth is placed between 6 and 4, alternative years conjectured for his birth. Per apocryphal data, Mary was either 12 or 14 when she became pregnant with Jesus.²³⁸)

Herod sailed to Italy and retrieved sons Alexander III and Aristobulus IV, who had completed studies in sciences. At home, their fortunate adornment and countenances became conspicuously admired by the people, to the reported envy of Salome. Herod married Alexander III to Glaphyra, daughter of King Archelaus of Cappadocia, and Aristobulus IV to Bernice, daughter of Salome I and Costobarus. Alexander III and Aristobulus IV, whose enmity against their father had been sealed by their mother's fate at Herod's hands, let it be known publically that they had no desire for their father's company.

Herod royally entertained M. Agrippa on a visit and the following year made a special effort to assist him with certain affairs at Pontus. On their return voyage through various cities, Herod was an instrumental intercessor in petitions made to Agrippa and gained his further appreciation. In Ionia, Agrippa held a hearing brought by large number of Hebrew residents about their treatment in their places of residence. Agrippa summoned "the principal of the Romans, and such of the kings and rulers as were there." Herod chose Nicolaus, a friend, to plead the Hebrew cause; and Agrippa ruled that they be allowed to observe their customs without injury. On return to Jerusalem, Herod held an assembly, gave a report his successful efforts toward the status of affairs of Hebrews in Asia, and remitted a fourth part of taxes for the year past.

Affairs in Herod's family, however, were disordered more and more, as Salome endeavored that none of Miriamne I's posterity succeed. Alexander III's and Aristobulus IV's outspokenness was seized upon by their opposing faction, with intimations to Herod that Alexander III, relying on his father-in-law, intended to put his cause against Herod before Augustus. The brothers continued defiant public expressions, while Antipater III, son of Doris by Herod, used all means to ingratiate himself with his father and cultivated persons Herod trusted to reinforce ill reports about his half-brothers.

Herod elevated Antipater III's person, recalled Doris to the royal court, and frequently wrote favorably about Antipater to Augustus.

c. 15/14 (?), Agrippa finished his years of governance in Asia, and Herod had him take Antipater III to Rome to gain favor with Augustus. At Rome, Antipater pursued further malignments of his half-brothers.

At some point Herod finally decided to accuse his other two sons in trial before Augustus, charging Alexander III had attempted to poison him, that both were enemies to him and guilty of attempting to take away the kingdom from him. King Archelaus asked friends at Rome to assist Alexander III at the trial.

The brothers in their actual innocence of overt acts drew sympathy from Augustus and his court, and ultimately from Herod, too, as they wept in unsophisticated confusion. Augustus scolded them, exhorting repentance and apology; and they fell at Herod's feet, followed by his public forgiveness. Augustus left it in Herod's power to appoint one successor or distribute his kingdom in parts. Herod offered to divest himself immediately but Augustus would not permit it while he lived. Herod made a Augustus a present of 300 talents and Caesar gifted Herod in return with half the revenue of the Cyprus copper mines.

At home, Herod reported to an assembly that concord had been achieved, and Antipater III pretended to rejoice at the reconciliation. Herod stated that all three of his sons would succeed as kings, but for the time being he himself was to be respected as king by all leaders and the military. Reportedly his speech made no impression on those who wished for a change.

²³⁸ If canonical and apocryphal texts are taken together, Mary was of both royal (Davidic) and priestly (Aaronic) lineages; was placed as a seed virgin at the Temple when she was three years old by her parents, Joachim (of Nazareth of the Galilee) and Anna (of Bethlehem).

13/12, Herod's major building project of Caesarea Sebaste, was completed: a city and harbor on the Mediterranean coast about halfway between Tel Aviv and Haifa.

c. 12, year of birth of Mary, if Jesus birth is placed c. 2 b.c

Herod produced "a great festival"--the "fifth-year games," and pursued construction projects in Syria, Ionia and Greece, in addition to those already funded in his regions. But he continued vigilance over his personal security, with lookouts far and wide. One spy revealed a plot laid to kill him. Herod discerned the names of 10 [unnamed] male citizens purportedly involved by torturing "certain women. Herod executed not just the men but their entire families.

Moreover, while Herod had been in Rome, his commanders had subdued a revolt in Trachonite territory. On his return, Herod went over all Trachonitis slaying rebels' relations. Forty principals took protection with Sylleus, Nabataean King Obodas' manager of affairs; the foes numbers increased until matters came to be like real war. Herod pressed Syria's presidents for both punishment and repayment of a loan he had made to Obodas. They ruled that each side should deliver to the other any of the other's subjects found in their territories and that the loan be repaid in 30 days. Sylleus failed to perform; instead he went to Rome. Herod obtained permission of the Syrian presidents to himself undertake execution of their judgment, led an army into Arabia, captured and demolished the opponents' garrison, and placed 3000 Idumaeans in Trachonitis to restrain foes there.

Sylleus at Rome meanwhile charged that Herod had laid waste in Arabia, destroyed 2500 principal Nabataeans, and carried off booty. Augustus, angered, at confirmation that Herod led an army into Nabataea, wrote Herod sharply that thenceforth Augustus would use him as subject instead of friend. Nabataeans, elevated, paid no money, delivered up no perpetrators, and retained previously-hired pastures rent-free. Then Trachonites rose up against the Idumaeen garrison. Meanwhile, the tumult in Herod's palace went on like a civil war, as the various members carried treacherous insinuations to him.²³⁹ Herod was in the lowest condition. Two embassages he sent to Caesar Augustus were refused audience. Nabataean King Obodas had died (or been murdered by Sylleus) and Aretas IV had taken over the government, with Aretas and Sylleus contending for Caesar's support. Affairs in both Judea and Arabia worsened by the day, partly due to anarchy--Aretas IV, not yet confirmed in his kingdom and Herod in bad repute with Augustus. At length, Herod sent Nicolaus of Damascus at head of another embassy, hoping friends at Rome might have mitigated Caesar's anger.

Then I happened that an unnamed person told Herod that Alexander III had "corrupted" Herod's most trusted and beloved servant-eunuchs. After prolonged torture, Herod obtained confessions implicating Alexander III in "criminal conversation"--that he had many rulers and friends on his side and, with assistance from the eunuchs (later to be richly rewarded), he quickly would have first place in the kingdom. Herod, unable to trust anyone, conducted many torturous examinations, destroyed palace domestics without clear evidences of guilt; killed persons believed faithful to Alexander III, and expelled from the palace or refused entry to old friends. From all the deaths and tortures, one person said that Alexander III had considered killing Herod with his brother's assistance while they were out hunting, and then proceed to Rome and ask for the kingdom. Letters between Alexander III and Aristobulus IV also were found, containing complaints relative to Herod's favoritism of Antipater III.

Antipater III with kindred company raised slander to the point that Herod caused Alexander III to be seized and bound;" then, through further tortures of Alexander's friends, secured a confession that Alexander had sent to friends at Rome to secure him an audience with Augustus, wherein he would

²³⁹Besides Antipater III's conniving against his half-brothers, Glaphyra lorded it over Salome I and Bernice; Pheroras (with one wife he apparently loved) refusing Herod's admonitions that he marry one or another of Herod daughters); Pheroras insinuating that Herod had a passion for Glaphyra causing Alexander III to confront his father about it; Livia/Julia, Octavian's wife (who had been pushing for a Salome/Sylleus marriage (he managed affairs for Arabian King Obodas), which marriage Salome favored, but Herod would approve only if Sylleus converted to the Hebrew religion. Sylleus declined, in that he would lose favor with his own people. Herod then forced Salome to marry one Alexis, a Herod friend, against her consent.

reveal a plot wherein Herod was joined against the Romans with Parthia's king and, further, that Alexander had had a poison prepared (for which Herod searched but did not find). Alexander III plead with his father not to torture more persons and composed four "books" of defenses, which were placed in Herod's hands. The writings pointed to Salome and Pheroras as the greater of plotters and included charges against Ptolemy [undesigned] and Sapinnus (the most "faithful" of Herod's friends), together with other men in power--such that, there no longer "was...room for defence and refutation...all were at random doomed to destruction, so that some lamented those that were in prison, some those that were put to death, and others...that they were in expectation of the same miseries."

King Archelaus came hastily to try to compose the family differences. He adroitly calmed Herod's and proposed a joint investigation. Together they carefully considered Alexander's writings. "[B]y degrees" Archelaus "laid the blame on those men whose names were in these books", "especially upon Pheroras;" Alexander, Archelaus reasoned, may "himself [have been] plotted against." The preponderance of Herod's anger turned to Pheroras. Archelaus counseled Herod that clemency was best for family unity and got Pheroras to prostratedly confess to a temporary madness out of love for his wife, which effected reconciliation. But Herod did not acquiesce to Archelaus' attempt to dissolve the Alexander and Glaphyra marriage. The reconciliations were followed by feasting and gifts for Archelaus, who Herod hoped would to go to Rome and mitigate matters with Octavian.

Subsequently, one Eurycles (a "notable" but "corrupted" Lacedemonian came into Judea and under feigned friendship got Alexander III and Aristobulus IV to open to him their grievances against their father. Eurycles reported all (for money) to Antipater III, which confidences were revealed to Herod, fueled by Eurycles suggestions that should Alexander gain Caesar's audience he would provoke inquiry into the fates of Hyrcanus II and Mariamne I. Herod placed the brothers in custody. Antipater III then caused some persons [unnamed] to allege that his half-brothers had plotted with two of Herod's formerly discharged horsemen to kill Herod in a feigned hunting accident. Finally, Herod was raged completely by a letter produced, purportedly written by Alexander to an [unnamed] governor/commander of Alexandrium's garrison about refuge once Herod was killed, which letter Alexander claimed was drafted by Antipater and forged by the king's secretary

Alexandrium's commander was caught and tortured; then Herod tortured the discharged horsemen before the people at Jericho for public accusations against the brothers, many of them stoned to death by the crowd, which was restrained by Ptolemy [undesigned] and Pheroras from killing the brothers as well. The brothers now were put under guard. The last straw was Salome's telling Herod that Aristobulus IV had cautioned her that Herod was going to kill her, because of her consorting with Sylleus.

At some point in this timeframe, Mary, future mother of Jesus, was discharged from the temple and betrothed to Joseph, an elderly man in the lineage of King David.²⁴⁰

Archelaus sent an ambassador (Melas) before whom Herod questioned the bound Alexander III, who admitted that he and his brother had planned to escape to Archelaus, who had promised to send them to Rome," but otherwise they were innocent of the other charges, which Herod might have learned if from the discharged horsemen (who were giving confessions after extreme tortures) if they hadn't been killed suddenly by persons Antipater had planted in the Jericho crowd. The likewise bound Alexander III and his wife confessed that all they had wanted was to retire to Archelaus in Cappadocia and then to Rome.

Herod dispatched an army general and a friend [undesigned] to Rome with letters about proofs he had ready to show against his sons, the letters to be received by Caesar Augustus should Nicolaus have gained some interceding ground. Herod also wrote to Archelaus, who replied he had

²⁴⁰ Refer to *History of the Daughters* for details (per the *Protevangelion*, and *Gospel of Mary*) concerning the High Priest's "quandary," Mary's initial refusal to leave the temple,

been prepared to receive his daughter and son-in-law but without intent to send them to Caesar, or of any other act of ill will toward Herod.

At Rome, meanwhile, Caesar Augustus had been hearing the matter of Sylleus vs. Aretas. Some of Sylleus' party defected to Nicolaus and testified to Sylleus slaughtering a great number of supporters of former Arabian king Obodas. Nicolaus used the circumstances to make a plea on Herod's behalf--that, in addition to allegations of other wrongs, Sylleus had alienated Augustus from Herod, and that all Sylleus had said about Herod's actions were falsities. Nicolaus was allowed to principally demonstrate that Herod's actions all had been in self-defense. Augustus' final ruling was to formally admit Aretas IV's ambassadors, accepted Aretas' presents, and confirmed him in his government. Then Augustus accepted the information sent by Herod and, although reportedly mightily troubled at the case of the young men, did not think he ought to take away the paternal power. He so informed Herod, advising it would be well to make an examination in a public court, ordering it to convene at or near Berytus (Bayrut/Beirut, Lebanon) and composed of Syria's presidents, Archelaus, and as many more as Herod thought appropriate.

c. 11ff., Archelaus was not invited to the 150-assessors court assembled by Herod, where Salome and Pheroras also were present. Aristobulus IV and Alexander III (who would have drawn pity in open court) were kept in custody nearby at a Sidonian village. Herod presented a vehement case suggesting the sons had confessed designs against him and that he stood ready, upon Caesar's grant, to initiate their death in his own kingdom by stoning. The assessors perceiving no room for equitable reconciliation, they confirmed his authority.²⁴¹

Yet, no one in all Syria and Judaea could believe Herod the Great would be so barbarous as to murder his own children. One Tero, father of a friend of Alexander III, openly castigated Herod and named many of Herod's army captains that had expressed indignation. Herod imprisoned all of them; was told by Tero's barber Trypho he had suggested the barber's cutting Herod's throat, Herod tortured Tero until his son was driven to a confession, after which Herod brought an assembly that stoned to death Tero, his son, the barber, and 300 of Herod's officers. Next, Alexander III and Aristobulus IV were taken to Sebaste and there strangled, by their father's command, Glaphyra being sent back to her father.

It commonly was either suspected or known that Antipater III had perpetrated all the calumnies. Although he governed jointly now with his father, he began to cultivate his sole position with bountiful gifts to favor both friends at Rome and Pheroras; but he made no headway with Salome I. Further, as Herod proceeded to establish betrothals among his remaining descendants, Antipater III anticipated how the posterity of the murdered descendants would become greater--Archelaus would support Glaphyra's and Aristobulus' sons and one betrothed to Tetrarch Pheroras' daughter would have his support. Antipater influenced a change in settlements without Herod's approbation, that he would marry Aristobulus IV's daughter and his son, marry Pheroras' daughter. A different complex then took sway in the palace--Antipater III and mother Doris cultivating the Pheroras' branch, while Pheroras with his wife, mother and aunt (the three unnamed), all secretly united in what was told to Herod, with Salome I—who knew all they did and the only opponent, apprised Herod of their clandestine counsels, and said persons about the palace itself had been perverted. Pheroras' wife also was "inveigled" by Pharisees (which sect "being above 6,000"), who claimed the kingdom should come to her, Pheroras and their children instead of Herod's posterity. Meanwhile, Herod had begun to suspect Antipater III's falsehoods had been responsible for the brothers' deaths.

²⁴¹ If not noted elsewhere, it should be here, that certain Roman Empire territories, of which Herod's was one, were not autonomous but "client kingdoms." Of the court members, Syrian prefect Volumnius' sentence was death; Saturninus (who had succeeded Agrippa in government of provinces of Syria and Phoenicia), his three legate sons, two lieutenants and some others disagreed. Afterward at Tyre Herod encountered Nicolaus returning from Rome, who reported that the consensus at Rome was for imprisonment, not death.

Herod held an assembly of friends and kindred at which he accused Pheroras' wife, among other things, of making Pheroras his enemy and that Pheroras would do well to put her away," to which Pheroras responded he would rather choose to die. Herod charged Antipater III and Doris to discontinue all intercourse with the Pheroras branch, slew such of the principally accused Pharisees and those (unnamed) family members disposed to what the Pharisees foretold; and banished both Pheroras and his wife to Pheroras' tetrarchy of Peraea. Antipater III decided to absent himself, and secured friends at Rome to suggest that he be sent to abide a time with Augustus at Rome.

Herod sent Antipater to Rome with a great deal of money and his Last Will and Testament, in which he named Antipater III as first heir to the kingdom, but, should Antipater be first to die, the successors was to be "Herod," the son of Miriamne II, daughter of High Priest Simon Cantheras.

When Pheroras became ill and died, different reports spread-- that Herod had killed him; that his mother-in-law and aunt had bought a poison; that he fell ill after being brought supper by his wife; that the deed had been managed by Sylleus. Herod conducted another series of tortures of maid-servants and some of Pheroras' women, ultimately collecting various admissions--that Doris was author of it all; of secret meetings; of Antipater's hatred for Herod and despair his father could not die soon enough; of both Antipater and Pheroras commiserating that none of them would escape Herod's beastliness; etc. Herod cast Doris out of the palace and took care of Pheroras' women after their torture, but left no potentially guilty person untortured, including an [undesigned] procurator [prefect?] of Samaria who was under Antipater's management, that man alleging that Antipater had obtained a poisonous potion out of Egypt (delivered by Doris' brother, Theudio/Theudion) which Antipater wanted Pheroras to administer to Herod while Antipater was in Rome, and that Pheroras had put the poison in care of his wife.

Pheroras' wife admitted that he had given her the box in question; when ordered to produce it she instead threw herself off the housetop; was brought, "senseless" from the fall," before Herod, who promised her and her domestics full pardon if she confessed or he would have her torn to pieces. She corroborated the account about the poison but claimed that Pheroras, as he lay dying, had repented of all ill-will and told her to burn that poison left with them by Antipater for destroying Herod. She had saved only a small quantity for herself, she said, which box, when produced, "had a small quantity of potion in it. Further torture of others corroborated the poison's acquisition, via which eventually the very brothers of Miriamne II stated that *she* was conscious of the plot. Herod the Great blotted Miriamne II's son from his testament, it not reported what became of her, took the high priesthood from her father, and appointed "Matthias the son of Theophilus, who was born at Jerusalem," to be high priest

In this interim, Antipater III's freed-man Bathyllus, who had come from Rome, also was tortured and found to have brought another deadly potion for Doris and Pheroras, in case the first proved ineffective. Bathyllus also had letters that Antipater by means of bribes had forged which stated that the killing of Alexander III and Aristobulus IV had been reprehensible to two other Herod sons—Archelaus (son by Herod the Great of one Malthace, "of the Samaritan nation") and Philip (son by Herod the Great of an undesigned Cleopatra "of Jerusalem"), who had been summoned home from Rome earlier due to similar letters spawned by Antipater III.

Meanwhile Antipater, over seven months at Rome had no clue of his unfolding destiny in Judaea, nor did anyone who knew on going to Rome told him. He wrote to his father of his successes there and that he soon would be home. He received the news at Tarentum of Pheroras' death, and at Cilicia received a noncommittal letter from Herod that "some little complaint" about Doris was being laid aside until Antipater's arrival. It was at Celenderis (/Kelenderis, on Turkey's Mediterranean coast; now Aydinik) that he began to suspect his mother's troubles might involve him. Various counsel by friends that he should tarry or go home and correct matters, he sailed on, only to find no welcomers at Sebastus; but there was now no turning back. Porters at the palace denied admission to companions with him. Nonetheless, clothed in purple, he entered with bold countenance where Herod said with Publius Quintilius Varus, successor president of Syria. Herod repulsed Antipater III as a murderer of

brethren and plotter of parricide, announced that Varus was to be his judge, and gave Antipater 'til the morrow to prepare for a hearing.

The assembled court was composed of Herod relations, kinsmen and friends; Antipater's friends; such as had been tortured; and some slaves of Doris from whom had been intercepted a note warning note from Doris to Antipater not to return unless he first got assistance from Caesar. Antipater begged at Herod's feet to be able to make his case first to Herod personally, but Herod was adamant. Nicolaus of Damascus prosecuted Herod's case, summing collected evidence that was strengthened by a large number of [unnamed] men who came forward with voluntary corroborations. All Antipater said when Varus asked for his defense was, "God is my witness that I am entirely innocent." Varus asked that the alleged potion be produced and given to another condemned prisoner, "who died upon the spot"/"who died presently," Varus returned to Antioch; it generally supposed that whatsoever Herod did afterward would be with Varus' approbation. Herod had Antipater III placed in bonds and wrote to Caesar Augustus about Antipater's actions.

At some point in this timeframe²⁴² Herod fell into a severe distemper. Subsequently, a letter to Antipater was seized, from the man involved with securing the poison, in which Antipater was wished success and reference was made to a letter from one Acme, a Hebrew by birth, maid-servant of Julia Augustus, wife of Augustus. The letter, found sewn in a seam of the delivering servant's coat, revealed Acme as complicit in an Antipater III scheme to falsely implicate Salome I in a plot against Herod. Herod thought first to send Antipater to account before Augustus, then instead kept him bound and sent ambassadors and letters with both the accusations against Antipater and an account of Acme's participation.

Herod again altered his Last Will, making his youngest son, Antipas (a second son by him of Malthace) his successor (with bequests also to Augustus, Augustus' wife, Salome I and others). Herod, now age 70, reportedly had resolved to put Antipater III to death, but not until he himself was fully well again. His illness, however, became more severe.

c. 6 or 5?--year of betrothal of Mary and Joseph if Jesus' birth is placed between 6 and 4 b.c.

Herod now was faced with a popular sedition led by two eloquent Hebrew men (Sepphoris/Saripheus-) Judas and (Margalus/Margalothus-) Matthias, skilful in laws esteemed "over the nation" and who, knowing the king was at death's door, attracted a near army of young men at the temple. On another report, untrue, that Herod was dead, youths lowered from the temple top and cut down with axes a gold eagle Herod had caused to be erected over the main gate. Caught by Herod soldiers, some 40 were sent bound to Jericho where Herod, unable to stand and lying on a couch, accused them before principal "Jews"²⁴³ he called to an assembly, which (the people fearing even more would be found guilty) sanctioned punishment. Herod had those who had removed the eagle and their "Rabbins," burned alive, the rest put to death by officers, and replaced High Priest (Theophilus-) Matthias with Joazar [another son of Boethus].

[Between 6 and 4 b.c.e. = primary estimate of the birth of Jesus.]

4, there was an eclipse of the moon" (c. March 12/13 of the year).²⁴⁴

Commencement of the "Quirinius" census?—dating of it being connected to the uncertainties of dating the birth of Jesus, etc.).

Herod the Great's condition worsened despite treatments near the Dead Sea, after which he was returned to Jericho where he was, "so choleric, in all things like a madman." Knowing his death was so desirable to the Hebrews, "in a wild rage" he summoned "the most illustrious--all the principal men

²⁴² Sequencing of *Josephus* does not yield precision on the relative development of this and following events.

²⁴³ It is impossible to distinguish in the texts whether the term "Jew[s]" designates (a) Hebrew population in general; (b) only elders, rulers, and/or priests in Jerusalem; (c) residents of the territory once designated *Judah*, or (d) combinations of some or all.

²⁴⁴ A moon eclipse is pivotal in determining the actual year of Herod's death *vis-a-vis* the actual year of the birth of Jesus. Two other moon eclipses, in January and December of 1 b.c.e., prompt differing theories-- *refer to History of the Daughters*.

of the entire Jewish [/Hebrew] nation wheresoever they lived, a great number out of every village,” and had them shut up in the hippodrome, extracting Salome’s promise she and husband Alexas immediately would kill them after he died and before news of his death was released.

[Herod learned of the existence of other living, prospective ‘legal’ heirs according to The Law (i.e. Davidic and Aaronic descendants)?]

Herod had high priest Zechariah questioned concerning the whereabouts of his son John (“the baptizer”) Zechariah, refusing, “was murdered in the entrance of the temple and altar, and about the partition,” by Herod’s “servants. Herod issued an order that all infants under two years old in the Bethlehem region be slain. Joseph (Jesus’ adoptive father) took his family into Egypt for refuge.

Herod’s ambassadors to Rome returned; Caesar Augustus had had Acme put to death; as to Antipater, he left it to Herod to either banish or kill him. Herod, “overbourned by pain,” threatened suicide and was prevented by a cousin (Achiabus); but tumult in the palace environs made Antipater III think his father was dead and he attempted to bribe his jailers to release him. Herod, informed, commanded some of his guards to kill Antipater without further delay.

Herod again altered his Last Will and Testament, which: designated Antipas as Tetrarch of Galilee and Peraea; Philip, Tetrarch of Gaulonitis, Trachonitis and Paneas; Archelaus over the rest of the kingdom; Salome I, to receive Jamnia, Ashdod, and Phasaelus/Phasaelis,²⁴⁵ plus 500,000 coined silver; 10,000,000 coined money and precious vessels to Caesar Augustus; and costly garments Augustus’ wife. Further provisions would leave the rest of Herod’s surviving descendants wealthy

c. 4 b.c.(?) Herod the Great died, having survived Antipater III’s death by “five days.”

Before releasing the news, Salome I and Alexas instead freed the persons Herod had imprisoned, crediting it to a pre-death dispensation of Herod himself. Herod’s signet ring had been entrusted to one “Ptolemy” [undesignated], who (at an assembly gathered by Salome and Alexas in the Jericho amphitheater) first read an epistle providing payments to the military, then Herod’s testament. It remained Ptolemy’s duty to take Herod’s ring to Caesar for confirmation of the testamentary settlements. Archelaus apparently was expecting confirmation as King.

[Alternate conjectured dates:

3 b.c., year of betrothal of Mary and Joseph?--if Jesus’ birth is placed c. 2 b.c.

Quirinius census?

c. 2 b.c, year of birth of Jesus?--followed by Herod order and escape to Egypt.

1 b.c. or 1 c.e., year of Herod’s death?-- if based on an alternate eclipse.]

FIRST MILLENNIUM (a.d.) c.e.

Transition from Roman Republic to Roman Empire.

Roman Emperor Octavian/Augustus, 31 b.c. – 14 c.e.

The title “Emperor” denotes those who wielded power after the end of the Republic, with power concentrated in one person rather than the “Senate and People of Rome.” Although Augustus held pre-existing powers of magistrates in his own hands, he maintained the facade of republican rule, simply using the honorific title ‘Princeps Senatus’ (first man of the Senate). Modernly, “emperor” derived from the title ‘Imperator’ that was granted by an army to a successful commanding general which during initial phase still had to be earned by the ‘Princeps’, whose support depended on the military.²⁴⁶

²⁴⁵ *Jamnia* = uncertain; possibly Mediterranean coast; Ashdod = on Mediterranean coast some 20 miles S of Tel Aviv; Phasaelis/al-Fasayil/al-Fasa’il = in present west bank some 5 miles NW of Jericho (name derived from a tower built in Jordan Valley, dedicated to his elder brother. (Hegemon rights over towns/areas included receiving their ‘rents.’

²⁴⁶ The series of Emperors (Roman Empire and later Western and Eastern Roman Empires) constitutes a library of study in itself, complicated by involvements of co-emperors/“caesars” (the latter designatable “junior” or “senior”) and usurpers: from Augustus to Diocletian, 100; from Augustus to Constantine I, 118; from Augustus to split of empire (395 a.d.), 139; of the Western empire (to 476), 23; of the Eastern Empire (to 1453), 97.

c. 3 c.e.²⁴⁷ Archelaus had been married to a “Miriamne” (“IV,” who appears to have been a daughter of Bernice, wife of Aristobulus IV), whom he divorced to marry Glaphyra, Alexander III’s widow (who in the interim had been widowed a second time, after a marriage to Juba, King of Lybia). Shortly after her arrival in Judaea (and after relating a dream she had had about Alexander III), she “departed life” (it not said from what cause).

6 and 8 c.e. Jesus was 12 years old (if his birth is placed between 6 and 4 b.c.)²⁴⁸

6, Moesia (later part of Romania) became a Roman province.

c. 6ff., Archelaus’ “brethren” and principal men of Judaea and Samaria accused him of immoderate rule before Caesar Augustus, who summoned him to Rome, and upon hearing took away his money, banished him to Vienna, and laid his territory to the province of Syria. Caesar sent one Coponius as Procurator [prefect?] of Judaea (to c. 9 c.e.; with the power of death) to take account of its substance and dispose of its monies, and one Cyrenius/Quirinius as “judge” of the province of Syria.

It appears that, afterward, the people restored Joazar as High Priest; and, although they took heinously to Coponius’ taxations, the High Priest persuaded them to leave off further opposition, and they gave accounts of their estates. But a “certain” Galilean, one Judas, together with one Sadduc/Zadok, a Pharisee, prevailed upon their countrymen to revolt. Judas and Sadduc excited a “fourth philosophic sect”²⁴⁹ which had a great many followers, spread among the youth, and became responsible for tumults in the civil government. Judas called his countrymen “cowards if they would endure to pay a tax to the Romans and submit to mortal men as their lords.”²⁵⁰

At conclusion of the taxings, Cyrenius/Quirinius deposed high priest Joazar and appointed Ananus (son of Seth) High Priest. During an ensuing Passover, “some” Samaritans defiled the temple, throwing dead bodies into the cloisters, after which Samaritans were excluded from the temple, contrary as to previous festival practice.

9, Rhine²⁵¹ established as boundary between Rome and Germanic²⁵² territory. Rome had Africa province.

After an Archelaus-arranged distinguished funeral and seven-day mourning period, Archelaus held an assembly at the temple. He solicited the people’s good will and stated that: although “the army would have put the diadem on him at Jericho,” he would not accept until the “superior lords” (Rome) gave him complete title; listened and made no contradictions to clamours for release of prisoners and tax reforms; and proposed to go to Rome immediately to look after Caesar’s determination for him. Toward evening, however, crowds gathered, lamenting the murders of Judas, Matthais, etc. and demanding punishments, demanding first that Archelaus replace the high priest with one of greater purity according to the law. A general sent by Archelaus to negotiate temporary suspension of other

Ethnicities/birthplaces appear to have ranged from Rome and other Italy cities to include Gaul, Iberia, Moesia, Africa, Mauretania, Phrygia, Syria, Serbia, Africa and Judaea.

²⁴⁷ Dependent on the year taken for Herod’s death.

²⁴⁸ When Jesus was 12, his parents took him to Jerusalem “according to the custom.”

²⁴⁹ Per *Josephus*, this fourth sect was that of “Zealots,” and Judas’ fate is not recounted. *Josephus* further stated that, “the fourth sect of Jewish philosophy [of which] Judas the Galilean was the author...agree[d] in all...things with the Pharisaic notions but...ha[d] an inviolable attachment to liberty and sa[id] that [*Tet.*] is to be their only Ruler and Lord.” (“Nor am I afraid,” *Josephus* relates, “that anything I have said of them should be disbelieved, but rather that what I have said is beneath the resolution they show when they undergo pain.”) (Also per *Josephus*, It would be in procurator Gessius Florus’s time, c. 64-66 c.e., “that the nation [would be] grow[n] mad with this distemper...to make them revolt [totally] from the Romans.”) *Tet* = term given to the four joined Hebrew letters that appear in the *Old Testament* some 6,000 times, as the ‘name for the name’ of God.

²⁵⁰ The taxings were made in the “37th year of Octavian’s/Augustus’ victory at Actium.”

²⁵¹ The Rhine from first century was border between tribal Germania and Roman Gaul territories.

²⁵² The word *Teuton* (which originally referred to peoples of the region now roughly Denmark, who invaded Roman Gaul in the first century c.e.) historically often is found used for all Germanic peoples.

matters was stoned and driven away from the temple, and other intermediaries subsequently sent were treated similarly.

The year's Passover was at hand. Of the many people that came to Jerusalem, while some in tents without the temple begged funds to support a sedition, others inside bewailed the murdered Rabbins. When a cohort sent by Archelaus was assaulted, the tribune and some soldiers wounded by the rebels, Archelaus sent out his whole army to prevent those sojourning in tents from assisting those inside. Archelaus' forces slew 3,000 men. The remainder dispersed, chased by heralds commanded they leave. Archelaus then left Philip to govern and went sea-side to depart for Rome, accompanied by his mother and friends (Poplas and Ptolemy [undesigned²⁵³], Nicolaus, and Salome I with her children and many of her kin, she for the time being behaving as if she supported Archelaus).²⁵⁴ At Caesarea, Archelaus met up with Caesar Augustus' procurator [prefect?] of Syrian affairs, Sabinus, on his way to Judaea to preserve Herod's effects. Archelaus summoned Syrian president Varus, who elicited Sabinus' promise he would not seize any castles and treasures in them.²⁵⁵

Antipas, Archelaus' brother, also set sail for Rome, set upon obtaining the government himself, on the basis Herod's penultimate Testament was the valid one, which in fact had the support of Salome I and others. Elsewhere reportedly, Malthace accompanied Antipas, as well as Ptolemy, "the brother of Nicolaus, now zealous for Antipas.

At Rome, Archelaus provided Caesar Augustus with Herod's ring and Testament, a monetary accounting, and a written basis for his claim to the throne. Augustus noted the complexities of settling the kingdom, since letters of Antipas also laid claim. Relatives of Archelaus, who testified they would rather live by their own laws under a Roman governor, secondly said that if forced to accept a monarchy they preferred Antipas; and Salome and those with her delivered their case against Archelaus to Augustus.

Augustus summoned principal persons among the Romans: in the "first seat," Caius (son of Marcus Agrippa Vipsanius and of Julia, Scribonia's daughter by Augustus). Salome's son, Antipater IV, spoke for the Antipas faction, Nicholaus, for Archelaus'. Main issues were (a) "the slaughter in the temple" (Nicholaus said it could not have been avoided; that the slain also were enemies of Caesar); and (b) whether Herod's last testament could or could not be relied upon. Ultimately, Caesar ruled in Archelaus' favor as overall King.²⁵⁶

Caesar then received letters from Varus about a serious revolt after Archelaus had left for Rome. Varus had suppressed it and left a legion of soldiers at Jerusalem; but Sabinus, who stayed behind used them to repress the people and searched after the kingdom's money. On the approach of Pentecost²⁵⁷ "tens of thousands of men got together"--Galileans, Idumeans, many from Jericho, and others from east of the Jordan River; the greatest number being those of the district of Judaea--all after Sabinus. One group seized the hippodrome; one pitched from the north to the south parts of the temple on the east quarter; and a third held the west part of the city where the palace was, to surround and besiege the Roman soldiers.

In a fierce battle and slaughter at Phasaelus tower the Romans gained entry and seized the treasure there deposited, but the people's party kept the palace surrounded, as various factions formed with upheavals in many places of the country and desertions from the monarchy party--three thousand men and their captains in Sebaste deserted, and 2000 of Herod's disbanded veterans (led by Herod's cousin Achiabus) also fought the monarchists. One (Ezekiel-) Judas (ambitious for the crown) led a

²⁵³ It is unclear but appears that this Ptolemy, who went with Archelaus as far as the sea-side, is the same Ptolemy, "brother of Nicolaus," who instead went to Rome with Antipas--below.

²⁵⁴ Yet it appears Malthace did not sail with Archelaus? She later is said to have accompanied brother, Antipas.

²⁵⁵ Sabinus instead proceeded to Jerusalem, seized the palace, occupied citadels and publicly called for inventories and accountings from their keepers and stewards who had charge of Herod's effects. Their governors, however, continued to guard them, saying custody belonged more properly to Caesar than Archelaus.

²⁵⁶ Before Caesar declared his decision, Malthace "fell into a distemper and died of it."

²⁵⁷ Fiftieth day after Passover.

“multitude” from about Sepphoris in the Galilee on a break-in of the royal armory; in Peraea, one Simon (former “slave” of Herod) burned and plundered the Jericho palace, was declared king by then number standing by him, but lost his force (and his head—literally—along with a large part of the Peraeans) battling Captain Gratus of the king’s party. One “Athronges (some unknown shepherd) managed to command four sizable bands aimed at putting the crown on him.

Varus had assembled a major expedition, ordered to be met by auxiliary forces afforded by others. Aretas IV brought a great horse and foot army, and 1500 auxiliaries were collected at Berytus as Varus passed through. He divided the forces into companies (one in the Galilee took Sepphoris). Varus proceeded to Jerusalem via Samaria; “all places were full of fire and slaughter.” When Varus arrived at Jerusalem and restored order, the people claimed that the warring had resulted from the conflux of strangers and without their approbation, in that they were on the Roman side. Varus searched for and caught a large number of supposed rebels, dismissed some but crucified about 2000. Some 10,000 still in arms in Idumaea yielded themselves on Achiabus’ advice before matters came to a battle.

Varus left the former legion as a garrison at Jerusalem, returned to Antioch, and sent “several” captured commanders to Augustus, who gave orders that certain of Herod’s relations among them be put to death. Meanwhile, Varus had allowed “the nation” to send an embassy of 50 Hebrews to Rome, to petition for being governed by their own laws. Archelaus, still at Rome, had a new source of trouble, in that the embassy was joined by more than 8,000 Hebrews already at Rome.

Caesar Augustus held council, whereat the crowd of Hebrews stood with the ambassadors opposite Archelaus with but some of his friends—his kin stood on neither side. Meanwhile, Varus had persuaded Archelaus’ half-brother Philip to get to Rome, not necessarily to undermine Archelaus but protect any share of his own in the outcome.

The ambassadors based their plea for dissolution of the monarchy on Herod’s prior viciousness and injustices and on evidence of Archelaus’ expressed similarity even before he was established; that they desired their territory be added to Syria under the authority of such presidents/commanders Rome should designate. Nicolaus, for Archelaus, claimed it was willful lawlessness that had precipitated the Temple incident and lame to Herod’s reputation against him.

A few days later Caesar Augustus ruled as follows: (a) Archelaus was not confirmed as King, instead made “Ethnarch” of the one half of the country in Herod’s domain, with the proviso that if he proved a good governor he would be granted full royal dignity. Meanwhile, Archelaus would receive the annual tributes of Idumaea, Judaea, and Samaria (although Samaria was relieved of one-fourth its tribute for having not joined in revolts.) The cities of Strato’s Tower, Sebaste, Joppa, and Jerusalem also were made subject (including their tribute) to Archelaus; his annual revenues would total 600 talents. (b) Caesar removed the “Grecian” cities of Gaza, Gadara, and Hippos to the province of Syria. (c) The other half of Herod’s former kingdom was divided between Antipas and Philip as Tetrarchs: Antipas received Peraea and Galilee (revenues of 200 talents); Philip, Batanea, Trachonitis, Auranitis, and certain parts of what was called “the House of Zenodorus” (revenues of 100 talents). (d) Salome I received Jamnia, Ashdod, and Phasaelis (annual revenues of 60 talents), a royal residence at Askelon/Ascalon (which, however, remained in Archelaus’ ethnarchy), and 500,000 coined silver. (e) Augustus married “Herod’s two virgin daughters” (taken to be Roxana and Salome III, borne, respectively, by “Phaedra” and “Elpis”) to Pheroras’s sons.

At some point, Archelaus, accusing High Priest Joazar of aiding the seditious, replaced him with Eleazar, another son of Boethus,²⁵⁸ who in turn did not last long. Jesus (son of “Sie”) was put in his place, **9 c.e.** (to 12 c.e.), Marcus Ambibulus/Ambivius replaced Coponius as Procurator [prefect?].

Salome I died and left her toparchies²⁵⁹ to Julia Augustus.

c. 10 c.e. Jesus was 12 years old, if his birth is placed c. 2 b.c.

²⁵⁸ It is impossible without data to know what the lineage(s) were of Boethus’ wives, mothers of the various sons. (This high priest replacement may have occurred later in time.)

²⁵⁹ *Toparchies* = petty districts or small ‘states’.

c. 12, one Annius Rufus became procurator [prefect?] in place of Marcus Ambivius.

Marcus Vipsanius Agrippa died. As soon as the mourning period ended, Tiberius Claudius Drusus Nero (/Tiberius Julius Caesar Augustus of Claudian lineage—Livia *Drusilla*'s son from her first marriage to Tiberius Claudius Nero and adopted son of Augustus²⁶⁰) was ordered to repudiate his wife Vipsania (daughter of one Pomponia by Marcus Vipsanius Agrippa) and marry Agrippa's widow, a Julia (Scribonia's daughter by Augustus; Augustus' only natural child).

14, Caesar Octavian/Augustus died. He was succeeded by Tiberius. Antipas Herod and Philip continued in their tetrarchies.

14 (to 37), Roman Emperor, Tiberius.

15, Tiberius sent one Valerius Gratus as Procurator [prefect?] of Judea succeeding Annius Rufus. Gratus replaced Ananus with Ismael (son of "Phabi") as High Priest. Gratus "deprived Ananus/Hananiah/Annas of the high priesthood and appointed Ismael, son of "Phabi." Shortly thereafter, Gratus replaced Ismael with Eleazar (son of prior High Priest Ananus/Annas) as High Priest. Eleazar held office but one year, when Gratus replaced him with Simon (son of "Camithus"), who also held office only a year, when Joseph Caiaphas was made High Priest; Caiaphas married a daughter of Annas.

Antipas Herod found great favor with Tiberius, building a city by that name at the northern Lake Gennesareth/"Sea of" Galilee, which became residence for both somewhat affluent and also some poor Galileans, building homes for some; but in the process many sepulchres were needed to be taken away, transgressing ancient laws.

18, Germanicus (son of Antonia/Annatonina [daughter of Octavia and Mark Antony], and of Germanicus Nero Claudius [son of Livia *Drusilla* by her first marriage to Tiberius Claudius Nero], already noted for victories in Germania, defeated for Rome the kingdoms of Cappadocia and Commagene, which became Roman provinces.

At Rome, Agrippa I²⁶¹ at some point became tutor of Augustus' grandnephew, [Caius] Caligula.

20, Meroites thwart Roman conquest.²⁶²

c. 25/26ff., King Phraates of the Parthians died;²⁶³ and about this time the King of Commagene (an Antiochus) also died.²⁶⁴ Rome's Senate sent Germanicus to settle affairs in the East.

c. 26, after 11 years as Procurator [prefect?], Gratus returned to Rome and was replaced by Pontius Pilate.²⁶⁵

When Pilate removed the Roman army from Caesarea to winter quarters at Jerusalem, there was conveyed into the city by night ensign images of Caesar, which former procurators/prefects refrained from displaying in that the people's (Temple's) laws forbade images. A large number of people went to Pilate and plagued him several days to have the ensigns removed. On the sixth day, Pilate denied removal and threatened "immediate death" unless they left off. But when the people prostrated themselves willingly to be slain, Pilate, "deeply affected by their firm resolution" as to "their prodigious superstition," had the images taken to Caesarea.

²⁶⁰ Augustus adopted him in 4 c.e. on condition Tiberius adopt nephew Germanicus (son of Tiberius' natural brother, Drusus Germanicus Nero Claudius, which continued the tradition of holding at least two generations of heirs).

²⁶¹ Agrippa I commonly is reported as son of Bernice by Aristobulus IV, but quotations appear to make him the son of only one of them.

²⁶² *Meroe* = ancient city on E bank of the Nile.

²⁶³ Ensuing Parthian dynastic events involved Roman intervention by a general Vornes, defeated by Artabanus (of the race of Arsaces; referred to as King of "Media"). Artabanus eventually took Armenia and gave it to a son (Orodes).

²⁶⁴ Ambassadors from Commagene included persons from both the commonweal and the nobility, the former wanting to continue to be governed by kings, the latter (men of power) wanting change to a province.

²⁶⁵ *Note:* In what follows, no claim is made to the sequence of travels and locations of Jesus, son of Mary and Joseph, which are reported disparately in the first four books of the *New Testament*. Events tentatively are placed where they appear to coincide with major political figures or circumstances

During this general timeframe, Antipas Herod, at Rome, stayed with [another] “Herod,” his half-brother, son of Miriamne II by Herod the Great. This other Herod was married to Herodias, daughter of Bernice, who is referred to as “sister” of Agrippa I.²⁶⁶ (That Herod and Herodias had a daughter, Salome II.) Antipas Herod had long been married to an (unnamed) daughter of King Aretas; and it appears that Macherus, in the dominion of King Aretas, was at Antipas’ disposal.

Meanwhile, Pilate’s prefecture was experiencing problems, one incident connected with use of *corbin* (sacred Temple treasure) to build aqueducts. Pilate (who then resided at Caesarea) held a tribunal at Jerusalem, at which “many ten thousands” of the people assembled. Soldiers that Pilate had placed among them used methods of crowd control greater than Pilate had instructed, causing many deaths, which calamity put an end to that sedition.

Roman general Vitellius by hefty bribes contrived to have the kings of Iberia and Albania allow Scythians passage through their territories to fight the Parthians. Parthia was filled with war; its principal men slain; Armenia was wrested temporarily from the Parthians; Artabanus escaped assassination, escaped to upper provinces, raised an army and retook his principality. Tiberius, on being informed, initiated successful negotiations for a league of friendship with Artabanus.²⁶⁷ Tetrarch Antipas Herod, who had assisted Vitellius, A report by Vitellius’ to Tiberius was precipitated by a full report of Antipas’ own, causing vengeful secret anger in Vitellius (which he would satisfy in the future).

Fulvia,²⁶⁸ wife of one Saturninus, gave riches for the Jerusalem temple to certain men at Rome, who instead kept the booty for themselves. Her husband secured an inquiry by Tiberius, following which he ordered all Hebrews banished from Rome. Four thousand men were sent to Sardinia, punishing another large number who refused to become soldiers.

Meanwhile at Rome, Herodias had accepted a marriage proposition with Antipas Herod, the plan being that she would divorce her current husband and he would divorce King Aretas’ daughter. (At some point, Herodias influenced Antipas to support her [half-?] brother, Agrippa I, who had fallen on hard times. Antipas made him a magistrate of the city of Tiberias.²⁶⁹)

29, in this, Tiberius’ 15th year, one “John” (/Yehohanon; son of into “all the country around the Jordan” one John (/Yehohanon/“the baptizer”/Baptist;” son of one Elizabeth, a relative of Jesus’ mother Mary,²⁷⁰ by Zechariah of the priestly division of Abijah)—went preaching “into all country around of the Jordan.”

Subsequent to the agreement of Antipas Herod and Herodias, King Aretas’ daughter secretly learned of their plan, asked and obtained Antipas’ permission to visit her father, told all to him, and war between Aretas’ and Antipas’ armies ensued. Herod’s army was completely destroyed (reportedly, with aid from men from Tetrarch Philip who joined Aretas’ army). Herod notified Tiberius, who commissioned Syria’s governor (Lucius Vitellius) to make war on Aretas and destroy him. It appears that Aretas had retreated to his impenetrable capital of Petra, and that Antipas Herod then held possession of Macherus.

In this timeframe,²⁷¹ Jesus (son of Mary, adopted son of Joseph) began traveling and teaching in regional synagogues, drawing to him many of both Hebrews and “gentiles.”²⁷²

²⁶⁶ Bernice being Aristobulus IV’s widow; but both Herodias and Agrippa I may not have been Aristobulus IV’s children but Bernice’s by a prior marriage.

²⁶⁷ Artabanus gave one of his sons (Darius) as hostage, along with “many” presents (one, a Hebrew “by birth [named] Eleazar,” who was over “seven cubits” tall and called a giant.)

²⁶⁸ This Fulvia is not to be confused with Antony’s wife; this Fulvia was converted to the Hebrew faith via a refugee in Rome.

²⁶⁹ *Tiberias* = on the W shore of the Sea of Galilee (in “lower” Galilee), it was the largest Hebrew city in the Galilee.

²⁷⁰ Disparate references would make Jesus a second cousin of John.

²⁷¹ Precise dates and sequencing of Jesus-related events are not available from the record; what follows is a general synthesis.

²⁷² “*Gentile...n* [ME, fr. LL, *gentiles*; fr. L *gent-, gens* nation]...a person of non-Jewish[Hebrew] nation or of non-Jewish[Hebrew] faith....” *Adj...* “of or relating to the nations at large as distinguished from the Jews[Hebrews]....” Webster.

c. 30ff., Jesus, in Jerusalem at the Passover celebration, caused uproar at the Temple by confronting merchants for their profiting from pilgrims both in selling items for offerings and changing coinage for the making of sacrificial Temple contributions required under Temple law.

At some point Nicodemus, an apparently sympathetic Sanhedrin member, had a secret meeting with Jesus.

Meanwhile Antipas Herod had managed to get a hold of John imprisoned him at Macherus. Jesus, on hearing it--aware both that opponents among the Pharisees²⁷³ knew he was gathering even more disciples than John, and that the people were wanting to make him king--retired into the Galilee²⁷⁴ to reside in the village of Capernaum.²⁷⁵ On the way he traversed Samaria, where many of that region also had affinity for him. He proceeded to tour the Galilee and the country of the Gadarenes.

At some point Procurator Pilate had to deal with trouble in Samaria, where an unnamed man was leading a group of insurgents near Mount Gerizzim (at a village, Tirathaba). There Pilate's troops fell on them, many killed there and others after being captured.

c. 31f-32, Jesus' supporting band²⁷⁶ had been "preaching" in different areas, and Jesus received communication from imprisoned John, whose followers had joined or were joining Jesus. It appears Jesus also made tours to Tyre, Sidon, a second one (apparently) of the Galilee. Then, as certain [unnamed] "chief priests"²⁷⁷ and some Pharisee subordinates sought his arrest, he escaped to east of the Jordan.²⁷⁸ On his return, in Nazareth, "many" regional tax collectors came to see him and some dined with him.²⁷⁹ In this timeframe, two huge assemblies to hear him speak are reported—one on the northeast side of the Galilee and one in the Decapolis.

32, during the Festival of the Tabernacles²⁸⁰ at Jerusalem, Jesus discoursed with crowds at the Temple. It appears he also attended and did likewise at the Festival of the Tabernacles.²⁸¹ In his discourses, Jesus (raised in the Hebrew faith) did not contradict Temple law; his words, instead, forced leaders of both Pharisaic and Saddusaic factions (a) to examine their accusations against Temple law history, and (b) together with (like his cousin, John) condemning foul acts of Herod the Great and Antipas Herod.

Examples are: (a) when Jesus with his followers was accused of doing "work" on the Sabbath by gleaning dropped food in the fields (gleaning generally acceptable otherwise by widows and poor), he pointed out how King David, while fighting for his elevation, had with his men entered, taken and eaten synagogue priestly showbread in order to survive; (b) Herod the Great's murder of John's father, priest Zachariah, of the priestly division of Abijah, who was serving at Temple both during the assumption of Mary by Joseph and when he refused to divulge infants John's and Jesus' location to Herod the Great officers, and consequently killed.²⁸²

²⁷³ It is apparent that there also were sympathizers amongst the Pharisees, since "Pharisees" are on record as also warning Jesus of Antipas Herod's desire to kill him.

²⁷⁴ Referred to as "districts of Zebulun and Naphtali."

²⁷⁵ A fishing village on the NW shore of the Sea of Galilee.

²⁷⁶ Called "apostles" (from the Greek "apostolos"--messenger, ambassador), Jesus' main associates were (alphabetically): Andrew (brother of [Simon/] Peter); Bartholomew (aka Nathaniel); James "Boanerges" (son of "Zebedee"); James the "lesser" (son of "Alphaeus"); John "Boanerges" (son of "Zebedee"); Judas (found referred to as "son of James" but possibly identical with "Thaddeus"); Judah/Judas Iscariot; Matthew; Matthias (who after Jesus' death replaced Judah/Judas Iscariot); Philip; Simon Peter (referred to as "son of John"); Simon "the Cananaean/Zealot"; and Thomas.

²⁷⁷ The makeup of the Sanhedrin (*i.e.* who might have been of the pro-Roman faction) is not reported in the record.

²⁷⁸ Nicodemus cautioned the plotters that their law did not judge a man before first hearing from him.

²⁷⁹ One "great reception feast" for him was made by "Levi, son of Alphaeus." It is not reported whether the tax collector, Matthew, who per the *New Testament* joined Jesus' rebel group, was one of them.

²⁸⁰ Festival of the Tabernacles/Feast of Booths/*Sukkot* = a holy week of pilgrimage and celebration in the Fall.

²⁸¹ Feast of Dedication/Feast of the Maccabees = eight-day celebratory festival held in late December.

²⁸² It is curious how his *New Testament* reference to Zechariah's murder has been taken to have been a reference by him to a long-past murder of Zechariah, son of High Priest Jehoiada, killed c. 826 b.c. on command of southern King Joash for publicly denouncing Joash's acts.

In this timeframe, John at Macherus was killed (beheaded) on command of Antipas Herod.²⁸³

33, Jesus arrived at Bethany²⁸⁴ six or two days (depending on which account) before Passover. While there, unnamed Greeks among those going to Jerusalem for the Passover approached Jesus' associate, "Philip"²⁸⁵ and asked for a meeting with Jesus (there being no report as to the meeting itself).

With the nearing of Passover wonder whether Jesus would appear was ramp among the people, where commands had been given by undesignated priests and Pharisees to disclose it if he was seen. On an unspecified day after arrival at Bethany, Jesus made a dramatic entry into Jerusalem.²⁸⁶ He was "teaching" at the Temple.

[*Note: Gospel accounts vary here in sequencing, some putting the Nicodemus night visit and disruption of merchants and money changers at this point rather than earlier as given above.*]

While Jesus was teaching at the Temple, and his draw upon the people steadily increasing, aims to seize him intensified. When attempts failed to entice Jesus into some self-betrayal through words (*e.g.* in response to questions regarding payment of Roman taxes), undesignated members of the Sanhedrin and other leaders counseled with Chief Priest Caiaphas, where it was agreed that, should they not dispose of him, the result well could be a rebellion that would bring the Romans down on their heads.

Jesus had gone with his band to camp the night (according to their previous custom) in a garden spot (Gethsemane) at the foot of the Mount of Olives in east Jerusalem, where one Judas (son of Iscariot and keeper of the group's common treasury) brought a "crowd with swords and woods" (its composition described variously accounts--unnamed "chief priests," "captains of the temple," "older men," "Pharisee subordinates," "scribes"). Jesus was arrested and led off, bound; was led "into the Sanhedrin and questioned;"²⁸⁷ and found guilty of blasphemy.²⁸⁸ Under Roman hegemony, the Sanhedrin was forbidden from the carrying out death penalties imposed by it without the Roman governor's approval.²⁸⁹

Pilate, ascertaining that Jesus was a Galilean and could be said as under authority of Antipas Herod, sent him to Antipas, who also was in Jerusalem at the time. Antipas and his troops ridiculed Jesus and sent him back to Pilate, with demand for his impalement. Pilate, after questioning Jesus again two times privately, had him scourged, and attempted to give him back to the accusers. He alleged he found no cause for the judgment, but they could carry it out.²⁹⁰ Pilate's change in determination,

²⁸³ *Matthew* and *Mark* gospels relate that Herod Antipas (on his birthday) made a feast for "chiliarchs" (*Greek*, commander of 1,000, having both martial and civil duties) and leaders of the Galilee, at which a (in those accounts, unnamed) daughter of Herodias was prompted by her mother to ask for John's beheading in return for dancing for Antipas. That daughter has been taken to be Salome II.

²⁸⁴ *Bethany* = believed to have been in the vicinity of "Anathoth" (some 3 miles N/NE of Jerusalem), "Bethany" considered from *beth-Anani* (House of Anani/Ananiah) and, further, "Hananiah" a non-contracted form of Ananiah.

²⁸⁵ With what is known of Tetrarch Philip's earlier politics, combined with his having been either betrothed or married to Salome II, it cannot be ruled out that the "Philip" associated with Jesus (about which Philip there is no *New Testament* detail) and Tetrarch Philip were one and the same.

²⁸⁶ Jesus rode a mule, the significance of which would not have been lost on the people: mules (hybrids of mares and he-asses—more enduring and surefooted) were rare and usually only owned by persons of prominence. Solomon, for example, rode King David's personal mule to his own royal anointing ceremony.

²⁸⁷ It appears that due process under Temple law was not observed, *i.e.* that a tribe, false prophet or high priest were not to be judged save by a full court of 71; that a verdict was not to issue until the day following trial; and that a capital trial was proscribed on the eve of a Sabbath (and this Passover was a double, a "Great Sabbath" (when two legal Sabbaths fell on the same day, there being a number of days observed by 24-hour "sabbaths").

²⁸⁸ Possible charges would have been: (a) False prophesying; *Dueteronomy* 13:1-5 called for the death penalty if the purported transgressor had performed signs enticing people to other gods. (b) Desecration of the Sabbath; *Exodus* 20:8 called for sanctification of the Sabbath and *Numbers* 15:32 recounted a man stoned to death for gathering sticks on a Sabbath; (c) Blasphemy; but *Leviticus* 24:16 only said such a person should be "cut off."

²⁸⁹ As the emperor's representative, the procurator/governor exercised full control of a province, and his ratification had to be obtained by a local court for its sentence to be validated.

²⁹⁰ "Was but preparation of the passover, hour was as sixth."

however, seemingly was influenced by the accusers' implications that by his action he was being disloyal to the imperial power of Caesar Tiberius, in that Pilate had taunted them with calling Jesus their "king." In any event, Pilate "washed his hands"²⁹¹ of the matter and turned Jesus over for execution, which was accomplished later that day.

c. 34ff. At Rome, Caesar Tiberius imprisoned Agrippa I.²⁹²

Vitellius, entering Jerusalem at (perhaps the next) Passover time, was honorably received and entertained by many [undesigned] persons. He remitted taxes on buying and selling fruits and after the festival left high priest's vestments and ornaments in the custody of temple priests, instead of their being returned to the Roman captain of the guard, as before. While there, the Samaritan senate sent an embassy to him accusing Pilate of murder, claiming that the people at Tirathaba had gone there not to revolt but to escape the violence of Pilate's rule. Vitellius removed Joseph Caiaphas from the high priesthood and replaced him with Jonathan (son of the formerly deposed Ananus/Annas). Vitellius ordered Pilate to Rome to answer the Samaritan senate's accusations before Tiberius.

37, Vitellius, en route with two legions to war on King Aretas, made a three-day stop at Jerusalem, deposed Jonathan, and gave high priesthood to Jonathan's brother, (Annas-) Theophilus.

On the fourth day, Vitellius was informed by letter of the death of Caesar Tiberius.

Tiberius, a few days before his death, had appointed "Caligula" (son of Agrippina [daughter of (Scibonia + Octavian Augustus -) and Germanicus) to be his successor (37-41), which appointment was confirmed by the Roman Senate. Vitellius sent his legions to winter quarters at Rome, in that with the succession he no longer had the authority to war, and he himself retired to Antioch.

37 (to 41), Roman Emperor Gaius Caesar Augustus Germanicus *Caligula*.

"About this time," Tetrarch Philip (Antipas' half-brother) "departed this life" (the manner of his death not being reported). In that Philip "left no sons behind him," Tiberius added Philip's principality to the province of Syria.²⁹³

Subsequent to his confirmation as emperor, Caligula sent one Marcellus as Procurator [Prefect?] of Judea. He also released Agrippa I from custody, and very shortly thereafter appointed him to the former Tetrarchy of Philip (promising him also "the kingdom of Lysanias"²⁹⁴).

A short time thereafter Caligula made Agrippa I (Agrippa "the Elder," eventually to be called Agrippa "the Great") made him of ostensible King of Philip's tetrarchy and also promised him that of Lysanias. In Caligula's second year he gave Agrippa I leave to sail "home" and settle the affairs of government. Antipas sent gifts and a letter to Caligula, in that since Caligula had elevated a "private" person, Antipas anticipated he would be made king in his tetrarchy; and he and Herodias sailed to Rome. Agrippa sent letters against Antipas, with gifts; he himself followed. Antipas was with Caligula when a letter arrived from Agrippa I accusing Antipas of having been part of an anti-Tiberius confederacy, that he had a 70,00-man army, and now was a confederate of Parthian king Artabanus in opposition to Caligula. Caligula took the fact of Antipas' well known military strength as sufficient proof

²⁹¹ Literally, in the Roman tradition.

²⁹² Agrippa I's accumulated indebtednesses and involvements with various Roman personages led Tiberius first keeping Agrippa under a type of house arrest and then, finally bound, in prison for the last six months of Tiberius' life (below).

²⁹³ There is some uncertainty as to the dating of Philip's death and the accession of Agrippa I to his tetrarchy (below), e.g. an editorial remark in *Josephus*: "[S]ince Herod [the Great] died about September, in the fourth year before the Christian era, and Tiberius began, as is well known, Aug. 19, A.D. 14, it is evident that the thirty-seventh year of Philip, reckoned from his father's death, was the twentieth of Tiberius, or near the end of A.D. 33...or...in the beginning of the next year, A.D. 34." (Philip died at "Julias;" which "Julias" is not specified; however, Philip as Tetrarch had developed Bethsaida into a large city and renamed it "Julias.")

²⁹⁴ A small kingdom on the west slopes of Mount Hermon. (Mount Hermon = in the "anti-Lebanon range," its summit on the border of Lebanon and Syria (part of its S slopes being within the Golan Heights area).)

of an intent to revolt from Rome; took Antipas' tetrarchy and treasury from him and added it to Agrippa's kingdom; and banished Antipas to Lyons in Gaul.²⁹⁵

A "tumult" between Hebrew and Greek inhabitants at Alexandria, Egypt caused Caligula to send three ambassadors (one of each party, Hebrew, Greek and Roman). The Alexandrian people's faction was led by one Apion. The principal Hebrew ambassador was one Philo (brother of Alexander the "alabarch"²⁹⁶ at Alexandria) whose defense at a return hearing Caligula ("in a rage") refused to hear.

Subsequently, Caligula sent one Petronius to replace Vitellius as President of Syria; Petronius was given orders to invade Judaea and, if unable to enforce proposed erection of an imperial statue in the temple, to effect it by war. Large assemblies headed by principal men of the region sought Caligula's reconsideration, and Petronius finally gave way under their insistence and wrote to Caligula. Before his letter arrived, dispensation was received wherein Caligula ordered abandonment of attempts to erect the statue, which he "granted as a favor to Agrippa."

Marcellus had lasted scarcely a year as Prefect and had been replaced with one Marullus.

40, Britain ruled by King Cymbeline.

41ff. When Petronius' epistle arrived, stating that the Hebrews were ready to revolt if their Temple law was violated, Caligula wrote back commanding him to kill himself for not following orders. However, by the time Petronius received that letter, Caligula had been assassinated by certain officers of the Praetorian Guard.²⁹⁷

The army spirited away Claudius (*Tiberius Claudius Nero Drusus*; son of Drusus *Germanicus Nero Claudius* [son of Julia Augustus and Tiberius *Claudius Nero*] and of Antonia [/Annatonia; daughter of Octavia and Mark Antony]), to place him over the government, while the Senate was flooded by members resolved to oppose Claudius by force, and either return to under the old aristocratic form or at least to choose a new emperor by vote. Civil war threatened: soldiers who had been on the Senate side walked out and Claudius' combined forces barely were restraining themselves.

Agrippa I (Claudius' ambassadorial liaison to the Senate) was instrumental in the Senate's ultimate acquiescence and reception into Claudius camp without incident, where Claudius treated them obligingly and joined them in "thank offerings" proper on a first coming to the empire.

41 (to 54), Roman Emperor Claudius.

Claudius immediately reconferred Agrippa's kingdom on him, including Caesarea, Samaria and Judaea besides those regions already held, and along with that, the "kingdom of Lysanias" (which decree, engraved on brass tables, was set at the capitol). Claudius also bestowed the kingdom of Chalcis²⁹⁸ on Agrippa I's [half?-] brother, Herod (designated "V", son of Bernice and Aristobulus IV). This Herod was Agrippa I's son-in-law (married to Agrippa I's daughter [another] Bernice, by Cypros III (daughter of Salampsio [daughter of Miriam I and Herod the Great])). Agrippa I removed (Annas-) Theophilus from high priesthood, and installed (another?--Boethus-) Simon Cantheras.²⁹⁹ After settling the high priesthood, Agrippa I released inhabitants of Jerusalem from "tax upon houses."

It was "not long" before Petronius was succeeded as Syria's president by one Marcus, and Agrippa I took the priesthood away from Simon Cantheras and again selected Jonathan, who declined, claiming his brother more worthy.

c. 43, High Priesthood then was bestowed on one (Annas-) Matthias.

²⁹⁵ Caligula, offered leniency to Herodias in that she was related to Agrippa; but she declined out of loyalty to Antipas and was banished along with him.

²⁹⁶ *Alabarch* = head of the Hebrew population, appearing as a chief magistrate whose duties chiefly consisted of raising and paying taxes.

²⁹⁷ *Praetorian Guard* = Roman emperor's bodyguards, the name also used during the Republic for guards of Roman generals. It would be dissolved by Emperor Constantine I in the 4th century.

²⁹⁸ *Chalcis* = in vicinity of W Syria/E Lebanon.

²⁹⁹ Per *Josephus*, this "Simon, therefore, had the priesthood with his brethren, and with his father, in the like manner as the sons of Simon, the son of Onias, *who were three*, had it formerly under the government of the Macedonians. [italics supplied]."

Reportedly, Agrippa I by nature was beneficent, loved to live continually at Jerusalem, and “kept himself entirely pure.” He repaired city walls and took to widen them extensively, but was stopped by Emperor Claudius, who felt some intimidation.³⁰⁰

At some point, at Tiberious, Agrippa I, at Tiberias in the Galilee, met with the Herod V of Chalcis, the then-King Antiochus of Commagena, King Emessa of “Sampsigeramus,” King Cotys of Lesser Armenia, and King Polemo of Pontus. President Marcus on arrival was taken aback by the sight of Agrippa I in his chariot with all the visiting kings, and he ordered his subordinates to induce the visitors to head for home without delay. Marcus’ act made Agrippa an enemy. Agrippa I deposed Matthias as High Priest and replaced him with (Cantheras-) Elioneus.

43, Claudius annexed the southern half of Britain.

c. 44, Agrippa I died.³⁰¹ Emperor Claudius was disposed to send, as successor, Agrippa’s son *Marcus Julius Agrippa II* (mother, Cypros III³⁰²), who had been raised by Claudius; but Claudius was dissuaded by [unspecified] counsel. Instead, he effected an exchange with Agrippa II of Agrippa I’s kingdom for some other provinces³⁰³ and resumed Judaea as a procuratorial province, sending one Cuspius Fadus as Procurator (to 46 c.e.)

44, Fadus’ first task involved an uprising in Peraea, where a border dispute had provoked Hebrew dwellers to take up arms against the people of Philadelphia. One Theudas, a self-claimed prophet, persuaded many people to follow him to the Jordan (precisely where, not specified but where he claimed he would miraculously afford them easy passage over). Fadus sent out a troop of horsemen who killed many and took many others captive, including Theudas (whose head was cut off and carried to Jerusalem). After disposing of the perpetrators,³⁰⁴ Fadus confiscated Temple sacred vestments to Roman control. Priests and leaders asked and were given leave to send ambassadors to petition Emperor Claudius at Rome that the vestments (with “the crown belonging to them) be returned to their control, which request was granted on counsel of Agrippa II. But subsequently Herod V petitioned Claudius for authority over the Temple, its money, sacred treasures, and choice of high priests, and obtained all that he petitioned for.

Herod V installed as High Priest one Joseph, son of Camus/Camydus (to 46).

c.46, “next came” one Tiberius Julius Alexander (a son of Alexander, Alexandria’s alabarch) as successor Procurator to Fadus (to 48). (In the time of both Fadus and Alexander, Judaea experienced a great famine.³⁰⁵)

Herod V removed Joseph from high priesthood and made one Ananias, son of “Nebedus,” High Priest (to 52). Ananias brought James, “the brother of Jesus, and some others” for trial before the Sanhedrin, accused as breakers of the law; and they were delivered to be stoned. (Procurator Alexander “commanded crucifixion of two sons, James and Simon, of the Galilean Judas,” who had caused the revolt during Cyrenius’ census [there being no details of their apprehension, etc.]).³⁰⁶ Herod V took other dire actions against congregations that had emanated from Jesus; “Peter” was put in prison. “

Herod V “departed this life.”

³⁰⁰ Agrippa built also in many other places, particularly at Berytus, building a theater where he “exhibited several antagonists—malefactors (no fewer than 700 men to fight with 700 other men)—“that both the malefactors might receive their punishment, and that this operation of war might be a recreation in peace.”

³⁰¹ Before the people were informed Herod V and his master of horse (Helcias) killed Agrippa’s general, Silas, a potential enemy of Herod V.

³⁰² Daughter of Salampsio (daughter of Miriam I and Herod the Great) and of Phaselus/Phaesel II (son of Herod the Great’s brother, Phaeselus I and an unidentified mother).

³⁰³ Some of Agrippa I’s former territories not here bestowed on Agrippa II appear later to be; *see at year 52ff.*

³⁰⁴ (Cero-) Cornelius, (Theudio-) Trypho, (Nathaniel-) Dorotheus, and (John-) John.

³⁰⁵ Queen Helena of “Adiabene” (province of Assyria now *Kurdistan*)--whose son, King Izates, was an avid follower of The Law--bought corn in Egypt at great expense and distributed it to those in need.

³⁰⁶ An alternate reading is, “James the brother of *John*” was put to the sword.

47, London was founded.

48, one Ventidius Cumanus replaced Tiberius Alexander as Procurator. Gaius Ummidius Durmius Quadratus was serving as President/Governor of Syria (it being unclear when he took office).

48 (to 52): During a Passover, a soldier of the Roman regiment guarding the cloisters insultingly dropped his pants in front of the crowd; in the ensuing tumult “20,000” persons were “pressed to death.” Shortly thereafter, an imperial servant was plundered on a public road. Cumanus soldiers wrought a retributory plunder of a neighboring village, seizing and destroying a copy of “the laws of Moses.” Cumanus (then at Cesarea) was besought by affronted Hebrews “in great numbers” and, to abort possibility of an outright sedition, had one offending officer beheaded.

Further, at a festival time, Galileans enroute to Jerusalem were assaulted while traveling through the Samaria region, and subsequently Cumanus was accused of being bribed by Samaritans against taking any punitive action. Hebrews throughout the region, “encouraged by Galileans,” took up arms despite efforts of their “principal men” to cause them to desist. Many Samaritan villages were plundered. Provoked, Cumanus marched out, killed and captured many.

Principal Samaritans and Galileans brought accusations before Quadratus at Tyre, Galileans alleging the Samaritans had been instigators and the Samaritans, that Cumanus had been corrupted by gifts. Quadratus went to Samaria, supposing the Samaritans had authored the disturbance, but there was informed that certain Hebrews were “making innovations;” and he ordered crucified all the captives Cumanus had taken. After a renewed hearing at Lydda, Quadratus ordered that one Dortus and four “innovators” be put to death on charges they had persuaded the “multitude” to a revolt from the Romans. Nonetheless, he deposed Ananias and sent him with the temple commander to Rome in bonds, to give account to Emperor Claudius, together with principal men of Samaritans and Hebrews, Cumanus, and “Celer” the tribune. Quadratus then visited Jerusalem, found the city peaceably celebrating one of their usual festivals and, finding no reason to expect trouble, returned to Antioch.

At Rome, Claudius’ “freed-men” and friends were very zealous on behalf of Cumanus and the Samaritans; but, reportedly through the “earnest entreaties” of Agrippa II via Claudius’ wife, Agrippina *Julia* (daughter of Germanicus and [Scribonia + Octavian – Julia + Marcus Agrippa Vipsanius]), Claudius judged the Samaritans had been the ringleaders and ordered that Cumanus be banished and those who came with him be slain.

Claudius sent Marcus Antonius Felix (brother of “Pallans/Pallas”) to be Procurator. (“Felix M. Antonius, a freed man of Claudius Caesar, made governor of Judaea, Samaria and Palestine.”³⁰⁷)

52, One Jonathan appears next as High Priest (to c. 56).³⁰⁸

At the end of Claudius’ 12th regnal year he bestowed on Agrippa II the Tetrarchy of Philip, Batanea, Trachonitis (with ‘Abila,” last part of the tetrarchy of Lysanias), but he took from Agrippa II Chalcis, which he had governed four years.

53, Emperor Claudius Caesar died (purportedly poisoned by wife, Agrippina). He was succeeded by Lucius Domitius Ahenobarbus *Nero* (son of Agrippina *Julia* by her first husband, Gnaeus/Caius Domitius Ahenobarbus, who was son of Antonia (daughter of Mark Antony and Octavia) and Lucius Domitius Ahenobarbus).

54 (to 68), Roman Emperor Nero.

54, Nero bestowed on Agrippa II Julias (/Bethsaida)--a city of Perea with 14 villages lying about it--and a certain part of the Galilee, including Tiberias, and ordered subjects to submit to his jurisdiction.

Agrippa II appointed one (Fabi-) Ishmael High Priest (restored?; to 62).³⁰⁹

³⁰⁷ “He is called by Suetonius the husband of three queens, as he married the two Drusillae—one granddaughter of Antony and Cleopatra, and the other a princess sister of Agrippa; the name of the third is unknown.”

³⁰⁸ It is not stated directly that (Nebedus-) Ananias was among those banished or slain; “Jonathan” as High Priest is found in later report of his assassination.

³⁰⁹ “Fabi” resembles earlier *Phabi*—Ismael and *Phabet*-Jesus.

[58, Roman province of Alpes Cottiae was founded--one of three, straddling Alps between France and Italy/area of local Ligurian tribes.]

60ff., Porcius Festus was Procurator at Judaea (to 62).

Agrippa II replaced Ishmael with one Joseph Cabi (son of one Simon, formerly High Priest).

Porcius Festus died.

Before Festus' successor arrived, Agrippa II replaced Cabi with (Ananus/Annas-) Ananus as High Priest.

61, Romans were routed in Britain.

62 (to 64), Lucceius Albinus was Procurator at Judaea.

Agrippa II replaced Ananus (who lasted only three months) with one Jesus (son of Damneus) as High Priest.

Agrippa II replaced (Damneus-) Jesus with Jesus/Joshua (son of Gamaliel) as High Priest (to 64).

64 (to 66), Gessius Florus was Procurator.

A great fire ravaged Rome.

Buddhism spread to China.

65 ff., Mattathais (son of Theophilus) was Agrippa II's last appointment of a High Priest.

At Caesarea, Greeks sacrificed birds in front of a synagogue, setting fire to smoldering religious tensions, which intensified when "Kohen Gadol" (taken to have been son of a [divisional?] priest³¹⁰ "Eliezar ben Hanania"/son of Hananiah) ceased prayers and sacrifices for Rome's emperor at Jerusalem's temple. The religious tensions expanded swiftly into taxation protests, attacks on Roman citizens, and rumors of "traitors" of Romans at Jerusalem, as an irreversible revolt against Roman hegemony spread.

66, one Marcus Antonius Juianus is found as Procurator (dates uncertain).

The last "High Priest" referred to of record was one Phannias (son of Samuel).³¹¹

66, Commencement of "The Great Revolt." Agrippa II and his sister Berenice fled Jerusalem to Galilee, while the Syrian legate³¹² Cestius Gallus brought a legion, with auxiliary troops as reinforcements, to restore order. They were defeated in an ambush (battle of Beth-horon) which shocked Roman leadership. Emperor Nero appointed General Titus Flavius Vespasianus/*Vespasian* in Gallus' place, to crush the rebellion.

67, Vespasian and his legions landed at Ptolemais, where he was joined by son Titus (out of Alexandria), with a combined force of his legion and armies of various local armies, including that of King Agrippa II (yielding for Vespasian more than 60,000 soldiers). Vespasian first subjugated the Galilee--some towns surrendering without a fight, others taken by force (notable sieges being those of "Yodfat" and "Gamla").

68, Hebrew resistance in the north had been crushed; John (of Gush Halav/Gischala/Giscala) and Simon "bar Giora," leaders of the collapsed north rebellion,³¹³ escaped to Jerusalem. Vespasian made Caesarea his headquarters and proceeded methodically to clear the coast. Hebrews driven from the Galilee rebuilt the walls at Joppa/Jaffa (earlier destroyed by Gallus) and from there, with light flotilla, pirated Syrian, Phoenician, and Egyptian commerce, including interruption of grain supplies from Alexandria to Rome.

Rome's Spanish legions were rent by insurrection.

Meanwhile at Rome, by mid-68 Emperor Nero's had lost all support due to highly erratic behaviors (managing the execution of rivals; usurping Senate authority, 'romantic' intrigues), with

³¹⁰ It should be noted again that the term "High" Priest frequently is used in the ancient texts to denote priests other than the Temple "chief" priest, the record not being clear as to whether there were "divisional" "high" priests continuing according to the Davidic system.

³¹¹ Phannias is referred to as "a mere rustic," installed by casting of lots by "one of the pontifical tribes, called Eniachim"/[Eliakim; possibly, Jakim?].

³¹² *Legate* = an officer drawn from the Senatorial class.

³¹³ Referred to as "Zealots," it also appears that initially the two were of opposed northern factions.

Rome's Senate, Praetorian Guard, and army commanders conspiring to remove him. Ultimately, the Senate declared him an enemy of the people. Nero fled Rome and committed suicide.

68 (to 69), Servius Galba Imperator Caesar Augustus *Galba* was Roman Emperor. ³¹⁴

68-69, Galba had refused to make a bid for office when Caligula died, and although unconnected to any of the six preceding emperors his wife was related via marriages to some Julii-Claudii; further, Galba had earned a reputation in the provinces of Gaul, Germania, Africa and Hispania. Galba held his position only seven months, when he was murdered by rival Nymphidius Sabinus, triggering a Roman civil war.

Jan.-April 69, Marcus Otho Caesar Augustus; committed suicide after losing battle (of "Bedriacum") to Aulus Vitellius.

April-Dec. 69, Aulus Vitellius; executed by Vespasian soldiers.

69 (to 79), Roman Emperor, Vespasian, elevated by the legions in the east; commencement of the "Flavian" dynasty--69 being referred to as the "Year of the Four Emperors."

70, siege of Jerusalem: Although it began early in the warring, it became stalemated. Roman armies, permanently camped outside the city, dug a trench around its walls and built another wall as high as they. Persons caught attempting to flee were captured, crucified, and placed on top of the second wall facing the city. Simon Bar Giora joined forces to defend it. Meanwhile, Vespasian, having been hailed emperor by his legions, had decided to return to Rome to claim the throne from usurper Vitellius. He left his son, Titus Flavius, to finish the war.

At Jerusalem Titus led the decisive assault, and by summer the city walls had been breached. By July's end the Temple (the "Second;" that renovated by Herod the Great) was destroyed, and ultimately all of three city walls, followed by mayhem and ransacking and the carrying to Rome of Jerusalem's treasuries. John of Gischala surrendered and was sentenced to life imprisonment.

Construction of Roman "limes" (modern term for Rome's border defensive installations).

71, Spring, Lucilius Bassus was appointed military governor in Judaea for "mopping up" operations, and Titus set sail for Rome. Bassus besieged and captured a few remaining fortresses of resistance. He took Herodium³¹⁵ and Machaerus, but illness aborted completion of his mission. Bassus was replaced by Lucius Flavius Silva.

72, Autumn, Silva moved against Masada, the last stronghold, where several base camps were established around the fortress; and Silva demanded surrender, which was rejected.

73, the Roman forces broke through Masada's walls, where, reportedly, 960 of the remaining 967 defenders had committed suicide.

79 (to 81), Roman Emperor Titus Flavius Caesar Vespasianus Augustus *Titus*, successor of father Vespasian.

[79, Pompeii destroyed in eruption of Mount Vesuvius.]

81 (to 96), Roman Emperor Titus Flavius Caesar Domitianus Augustus *Domitian*, following his father's death from plague.³¹⁶

84, North Britain was annexed to the Roman Empire.

c. 94, Agrippa II died at Rome.

96 (to 98), Roman Emperor Marcus Cocceius Nerva Caesar Augustus *Nerva*, appointed by the Senate after Domitian's assassination by court officials.

98 (to 117), Roman Emperor Caesar Marcus Ulpius Nerva Traianus Augustus *Trajan* (adopted son of Nerva) after Nerva's natural death.

Rome annexed Armenia, Assyria and Mesopotamia. Trajan's rule marked persecutions of Christians.

³¹⁴ C. Julius Vindex and L. Claudius Macer apparently served briefly before Galba and C. Nymphidius Sabinus, before Otho, next. The occasional individuals historically found interposed with major emperors (such as noted here) are not included unless specifically involved with events.

³¹⁵ Placed some 7 miles S of Jerusalem near Bethlehem, where Herod the Great had built a fortress and palace.

³¹⁶ L. Antonius Saturninus apparently served also in 89.

106, Roman province of Dacia founded (branch of N Thracian tribes Dacians and Getae); bounded roughly by Danube; at greatest extent, Balkan Mountains to south; to east Black Sea and Dniester River; Carpathian Mountains located in middle.

115-117, Quietus'/Kito's War: Major rebellions of diasporic Hebrews that erupted in Cyrene, Cyprus, Mesopotamia and Egypt, with numerous killings of Roman citizens, were crushed by Roman legion forces led by general Lusius Quietus.

117 (to 13), Roman Emperor, Caesar Publius Aelius Traianus Hadrianus Augustus *Hadrian*, after Trajan's natural death.

"Hadrian's wall" built across Britain.

131, the Roman Empire was at its greatest extent.

131/132, Successive laws passed by Roman emperors in its mid-east province reached the limit when Hadrian proposed to build a Roman city (Aelia Capitolina) on the site of Jerusalem and prevent Hebrews from residence. A revolt, this time with a unified Hebrew force led by Simon ben Kosiba/bar Kozeba/Bar Kochba succeeded in establishing a three-year independence over which he ruled, titled "Nasi" (ruler). But the new 'state' had only one peaceful year, as the Romans committed at least 12 legions (a third of Rome's entire army) to reconquer it. After taking heavy casualties the Romans employed a "scorched earth" policy that ground their opponents down.

135, Kochba was captured at a fortress where he had taken refuge, and he and the remaining defenders were killed. Hadrian consolidated the political districts of Judaea, Galilee, and Samaria into a new province, "Syria Palaestina."

138 (to 161), Roman Emperor, Caesar Titus Aelius Hadrianus Antoninus Augustus, *Antonius Pius* after Hadrian died a natural death.

161 (to 169), Roman Co-Emperors, Caesar Lucius Aurelius Verus Augustus *Lucius Verus* and Caesar Marcus Aurelius Antoninus Augustus *Marcus Aurelius* (both adopted sons of Antoninus Pius).

[**164-180**, Rome's empire and all Asia were ravaged by a plague.]

166, siege of Aquileia (in now Italy at head of Adriatic about 10 mi. from sea on "Natisone River," a main archeological site of No. Italy); **168**, Marcus Aurelius made it principal fortress of empire against "barbarians"³¹⁷ of the N and E.

169 (to 177), Roman Emperor Marcus Aurelius.

175, Avidius Cassius, a usurper for the imperial throne, ruling in Egypt and Syria, was murdered by his army.

177 (to 180), Roman Co-Emperors Marcus Aurelius and Caesar Marcus Aurelius Commodus Antoninus Augustus *Commodus* (natural son of Marcus Aurelius).

180 (to 192), Roman Emperor, Commodus.

Beginning of Roman Empire disintegration.

193 Jan.-March, Roman Emperor, Caesar Publius Helvius Pertinax Augustus *Pertinax*, following Commodus' assassination.

193, March-June, Roman Emperor, Caesar Marcus Didius Severus Iulianus Augustus *Didius Julianus* was proclaimed by the Praetorian Guard after it murdered Pertinax, but Didius was executed on Senate order.³¹⁸

193 (to 198), Roman Co-Emperors Caesar Lucius Septimius Severus Pertinax Augustus *Septimius Severus* was proclaimed by Pannonian³¹⁹ troops and accepted by the Senate.

³¹⁷ The term as it originated in ancient Greek civilization simply meant anyone who was not Greek, often used to refer to other civilized people such as of the Persian Empire; subsequently it was used to denote uncivilized persons, often pejoratively, as a general reference to members of an *ethnos*, tribe or nation as perceived by an urban civilization.

³¹⁸ It appears Pescennius Niger (193-194) and Clodius Albinus (193-197) also may have served?

³¹⁹ *Pannonia* = Roman province bounded N and E by the Danube, co-terminous on W with upper Italy and S with Dalmatia and upper Moesia--territory of present W half of Hungary and parts of Austria, Croatia, Serbia, Slovenia, Slovakia, Bosnia, and Herzegovina.

193/194/195ff., Pescennius Niger, proclaimed Emperor by Syrian troops, was defeated by Severus; Clodius Albinus, proclaimed Emperor by British troops, was defeated by Severus.

198 (to 217), Roman Emperor Caesar Marcus Aurelius Severus Antoninus Pius Augustus *Caracalla*.

209-211, Roman Co-Emperor with Caracalla was Caesar Publius Septimus Geta Augustus *Geta*, assassinated on order of Caracalla.

Caracalla granted Roman citizenship to all freed men³²⁰ of the empire--reportedly to increase taxes--and devaluated Roman coinage to increase legionnaires pay; but he is best remembered for massacres and persecutions throughout the empire during his reign.

214, Hispania/Spain was divided into Gallaecia, Tarraconensis, Baetica, and Lusitania.

217-218, Roman Emperor, Marcus Opellius Severus Macrinus Augustus Pius Felix *Macrinus* (Praetorian Prefect to Caracalla) with son, Marcus Opellius Antoninus Diadumenianus *Diadumenian* as "junior emperor" (apparently after Caracalla was murdered in a conspiracy). Both Macrinus and Diadumenian were executed in favor [/"on order of"/] of next emperor.

218 (to 222), Roman Emperor Marcus Aurelius Antoninus Augustus *Elagabalus* (alleged illegitimate son of Caracalla) was proclaimed by Syrian legions.

222 (to 235), Roman Emperor Caesar Marcus Aurelius Severus Alexander Augustus *Alexander Severus* (grandson of Severus' sister-in-law; cousin and adoptive heir of Elagabalus), after Elagabalus was murdered by the Praetorian Guard [/"his own troops"/].

224 (to 651), Sassanid Empire/dynasty established, last pre-Islamic Persian Empire that succeeded the Parthian Empire and encompassed all of present Iran, Afghanistan, Iraq, Syria, the Caucasus (Armenia, Georgia, Azerbaijan and Dagestan), SW Central Asia, part of Turkey, certain coastal parts of Arabian peninsula, Persian Gulf area, and areas of SW Pakistan stretching even into India; recognized as main power alongside Roman empires; ultimately yielding to invasions from Islamic conquest by Arabian Caliphate(s), and adoption of Muslimism.³²¹

226, Ardashir I of Sassanid Dynasty seized power in Persia; revival of Zoroastrianism.

235 (to 238), Roman Emperor Caesar Gaius Julius Verus Maximinus Augustus *Maximinus Thrax* was proclaimed by the German Legions after Alexander Severus was murdered [/"by this own troops"/].

This third century, a number of large west Germanic tribes began to emerge and restored Rhine defenses (Alamanni [alliance of Germanic tribes around upper Rhine], Franks, Chatti, Saxons, Frisians, Sicambri, and Thuringii³²²). The years, roughly 235 to 284, are referred to as the "Crisis of 3rd Century"

³²⁰ Briefly, general descriptions of Roman societal class rights: *freedmen* = slaves freed by owners (by "manumission" by owner or by purchase) had a limited form of citizenship which passed to their children; *slaves* = considered property and essentially at mercy of owners; *client statespeople* (citizens of allied territories) might receive limited and varied second-class forms of Roman citizenship; *provincials* = free people but living in territories of which Rome was hegemon; *Roman women* = limited citizenship; no voting rights; no serving in public offices; subject to *paterfamilias* (parental enforced marriage and divorce and remarriage); Roman citizens = granted automatically to every male child born in a legal marriage of a Roman citizen (in some periods *both* parents needed to be Roman); this class was subdivided into two main classes ("Cives Romani" = full citizens of two classes: *non optimo jure* had rights of commerce, property and marriage; *optimo jure* had rights of the former and additionally rights to vote and hold office). There were other distinctions ("Latini," "Socii"); the interested reader is advised to research Roman citizenship classifications for a full descriptions.

³²¹ A "Muslim" is a follower of Islam as a "Catholic" is a follower of Christianity (race/ethnicity distinguished from religious adherence). Although the English spelling, "Moslem," was for a time used journalistically, the original English spelling, "Muslim," again has become common. Also, an effort has been made to clarify that Muslims are practitioners of Islam, whereas "Arabian"/"Arab" refers to an ethnic group with shared culture, history, and languages (e.g. "Arab" in fact is an incorrect reference to "Persian;," Iraqis primarily are Arabian; Afghanistan is not an Arabic state).

³²² *Franks* = West Germanic tribal confederation first found N and E of lower Rhine River; *Chatti/Chatthi/Catti* = Germanic tribe with homeland near the upper Weser River (NW Germany, flowing through lower Saxony and into North Sea); "Anglo-Saxons" = describes Germanic tribes S and E of Britain; *Frisians* = Germanic peoples in (present)

("Military Anarchy"/"Imperial Crisis)," over which the Roman Empire nearly would collapse under combined pressures of invasion, civil war, plague, and economic depression, beginning with the Emperor Alexander Severus' murder by his own troops, initiating a fifty-year period in which 20–25 men would claimed title "Emperor"—mostly, prominent Roman Army generals assuming imperial power over all or part of the Empire.

236, Franks on Lower Rhine; Alamanni occupied Alsace.

238 March-April, Roman (usurping) co-Emperors Caesar Marcus Antonius Gordianus Sempronianus Africanus Augustus *Gordian I* (proclaimed while Pro-consul in Africa during a revolt against Maximinus Thrax) and his son, Caesar Marcus Antonius Gordianus Sempronianus Romanus Africanus Augustus *Gordian II*.³²³ Gordian II was killed in April during a battle at Carthage against a pro-Maximinus army; Gordian I committed suicide on hearing of his son's death.

238 April-July, Roman co-Emperors Caesar Marcus Clodius Pupienus Maximus Augustus *Pupienus Maximus* (proclaimed by the Senate in opposition to Maximinus, after deaths of Gordians I and II), co-serving with Caesar Decimus Caelius Calvinus Balbinus Pius Augustus *Balbinus* and Caesar Marcus Antonius Gordianus Augustus *Gordian III*.

Both *Pupienus Maximus* and *Balbinus* were assassinated by the Praetorian Guard.

238 (to 244), Roman Emperor Gordian III. (240, Gordian III defeated usurper Sabinianus.)

242, Mani, founder, began teaching of Manichaeism.³²⁴

244 (to 247), Roman Emperor Caesar Marcus Julius Phillipus Augustus *Philip I "the Arab"*—born in Syria); Praetorian Prefect to Gordian III, he took power after Gordian III's death (cause unknown).

247 (to 249), Roman co-Emperors, Philip I and his son, Philip II.

248-249, self-proclaimed usurpers Pacatianus and Iotapianus in east were murdered by their troops (details being unknown about another possible usurper, Silbannacus).

Philip I was killed in battle against Decius (next emperor).

249 Sept./Oct. – 251 June, Roman co-Emperors, Caesar Gaius Messius Quintus Traianus Decius Augustus *Decius* (proclaimed by Danubian legions; defeated Philip II), and his son, Herennius Etruscus.

By the time of Decius the growing numbers of Christians became scapegoats for the general state of things; the imperial religious cult was made mandatory, and many Christians became martyrs rather than undertake any cult practices.³²⁵

249 (to 252), Priscus in the East self-proclaimed himself Emperor in opposition to Decius.

250, a rebellion was suppressed in Rome when one usurper Licianus proclaimed himself Emperor.

251, Both Decius and Etruscus were killed fighting Goths³²⁶ ("Battle of Abrittus;" Decius being the first emperor slain in battle against a foreign foe).

251 June ff., Roman Emperor Caesar Caius Valens Hostilianus Messius Quintus Augustus *Hostilian*, son of Decius, accepted by the Senate.

251 (to 253), Caesar Gaius Vibius Trebonianus Gallus Augustus *Gallus* was proclaimed Emperor by the Danubian legions in opposition to Hostilian; Volusianus was junior co-Emperor with Gallus.

Sept./Oct., Hostilian died of the plague.

253 Aug. – Oct., Roman Emperor Caesar Marcus Aemilius Aemilianus Augustus *Aemilianus* (governor of Moesia Superior) was proclaimed by Danubian legions after defeating Goths, and accepted by Rhine legions after defeating Trebonius Gallus in Italy. (It appears that Volusianus was murdered.)

coastal parts of the Netherlands, Denmark and Germany; *Sicambri* = Germanic people in (present) Netherlands; *Thuringii/Toringi* = Germanic tribe in region of Harz Mountains, central Germania.

³²³ The Gordians, technically usurpers, were 'legitimized' later by accession of Gordian III.

³²⁴ *Manichaeism* = aA system of beliefs originating in Sassanid Persia and "a major Iranian Gnostic religion."

³²⁵ As in Rome's fire under Nero, and the plague under Marcus Aurelius. Alexander Severus had commenced some persecutions, but he ruled neither far or long enough for dramatic impact; Philip I had been tolerant; but with Decius "the storm broke."

³²⁶ Heterogenous east Germanic tribes (perhaps originally from the region of Sweden) that had drifted and by the time of Caralla southward, as far as the Black Sea.

October, Aemilianus was assassinated by the troops, in favor of Valerian, next.

253 Oct. (to 260), Roman Emperor Caesar Publius Licinus Valerianus Augustus *Valerian* was accepted after death of Aemilianus, and he made his son, Caesar Publius Licinius Egnatius Gallienus Augustus *Gallienus* junior co-Emperor; and they tried to deal with the empire's crisis. Persia's King Shapur I of the Sassanid Dynasty (who had failed to advance against Gordian III the previous decade) invaded Syria and took Antioch. Although Valerian drove Shapur out of Antioch, with a weakened army he tried to parley with Shapur, instead was captured.³²⁷ Son Gallienus was left in little control.

The numerous aspirants to the imperial throne, over the years from this, has given rise to the term, "thirty tyrants."³²⁸

256, Franks had crossed the Rhine, raiding Gaul, penetrating into Spain and some contingents even reaching Africa. Empire cities, no longer guarded by an efficient govern

258-260, two regions broke from Rome into competing states, independent from the Italy-centered Roman territories: the Gallic "Empire"³²⁹ (to 274), forged 260 by one Posthumus (capital, Agrippina/Cologne), which included north and west territories of Germania,³³⁰ Gaul, Britannia, and Hispania.³³¹ Shortly after Posthumus' success, the second, the Palmyrene "Empire, under Queen Zenobia,"³³² broke away, which included Syria Palaestina (/Palestine), Egypt, and Arabia Petraea.

Rome now controlled Italy itself, Illyria, Greece, and Africa.

268, Posthumus was killed by disgruntled troops after a challenge by one of his commanders.³³³

Persia's Shapur I reoccupied Syria and raided deep in Asia Minor.

268, September, Gallienus (who for a brief time had son, Saloninus, as co-Emperor) was murdered (reportedly, by his troops).

268, Roman Emperor Caesar Marcus Aurelius Claudius Augustus *Claudius Gothicus/Claudius II* (to 270; an Illyrian of obscure birth), proclaimed by the army after Gallienus' death. (Claudius had served well under Decius, Valerian, and Gallienus.)

Rome embarked on a road of recovery. It would regain authority over, and realignment of some of its territories. Claudius drove Alemanni in north Italy back across the Alps. In 269 and 270, he achieved enormous victories over Goth incursions in Moesia. Before Claudius II died of illness, he nominated as his successor a fellow Illyrian, Lucius Domitius Aurelianus, commander of his cavalry.³³⁴

270, Roman Emperor Caesar Lucius Domitius Aurelianus Augustus *Aurelian* (to 275).

271, Zenobia (at Palmyra) declared herself Empress and her young son Emperor.

³²⁷ One report is that Valerian died in captivity or committed suicide; another, that Valerian was skinned and his skin used to make a war temple decoration.

³²⁸ Between 260 and Claudius Gothicus 268, usurpers included Ingenuus, Regalianus, Macrianus Major, Macrianus Minor, Quietus, Mussius Aemilianus, and Aureolus, all either murdered by troops or defeated in battles.

³²⁹ Calling them "empires" is a modern usage.

³³⁰ Germania = term used by earliest Romans to define territory roughly from Rhine to Ural Mountains (Julius Caesar adopted term from a Gallic term for peoples E of Rhine).

³³¹ The Gallic Empire had its own senate, two annually elected consuls, and its own praetorian guard. The "emperors" or pretenders during its existence were Posthumus, Laelianus, Marius, Victorinus, Tetricus I, Tetricus II, Faustinus.

³³² *Palmyra* = a wealthy central Syria city about 150 miles SE of Antioch. Queen mother Zenobia, supported by the territorial legions, was the moving force of the Palmyrene splinter 'state'. (The Roman Senate had made her husband, Odenathus (previously a Roman Senator) Prince of Palmyra. But when He and his son were assassinated, Zenobia took over.)

³³³ Between 268 and 274, other proclaimant/usurpers in the "Gallic Empire" were Laelianus (268; defeated and killed by Posthumus; Marius (269; proclaimed after Posthumus' death); Victorinus (269-271; proclaimed after Marius' death); Domitianus (270-271); Tetricus I (271-274; nominated heir to Victorinus).

³³⁴ It appears that one Caesar Marcus Aurelius Claudius Quintillus Augustus *Quintillus*, who opposed Aurelian (below) briefly took over after Claudius II died from plague; Quintillus' death is unclear. One Septimius, self-proclaimed in Dalmatia in 271, was murdered by his troops..

271-274, Aurelian had to re-defeat the Goths and Alemanni (at “Battle of Chalons” sounded the death knell for the Gallic “Empire”); and he secured north boundaries to some extent. (Aurelian’s commencement of construction of a fortified wall around Rome, for five centuries unwall’d, witnessed the empire’s decline.) He withdrew all Roman colonists from Dacia to south of the Danube, it being useless to defend the exposed province against Goths. He then went east to Asia Minor and reduced all resisting cities; invaded Syria; and defeated the Palmyrenes, taking Palmyra, which later (273) he leveled. Next moving west, the then aged Gallic “emperor” having troubles with other “barbarian” incursions, immediately surrendered to Aurelian; the west was reunited to Rome.

274, Aurelian returned in triumph to Rome.³³⁵ He now saw his mission as one of payback to the Persians and headed east.

275, Aurelian’s soldiers (perhaps not happy at the Persian prospect), murdered him in Thrace.

275, Nov./Dec. – July 276, Roman Emperor (aged) Caesar Marcus Claudius Tacitus Augustus *Tacitus* was elected by the Senate (reportedly against his will) to replace Aurelian. He attempted to restore power to the Senate with some reforms; but Goths again had invaded Asia Minor

Goths were defeated, but Tacitus died after but a half-year reign (“possibly assassinated”).

276, July-Sept., Caesar Marcus Annius Florianus Augustus *Florianus* (Tacitus’ brother), was proclaimed by the west army to replace Florianus. He was “assassinated by his troops in favor of Probus” (below).

276-281/282, Roman Emperor Caesar Marcus Aurelius Probus Augustus *Probus* (to 282) was proclaimed by Danubian/“east” legions in opposition to Florianus. He succeeded in clearing the Goths from Asia Minor, but then incurred the wrath of his soldiers when he commissioned them to clear out Egypt’s canals to secure the Empire’s grain supply.³³⁶

Probus was assassinated by his troops in favor of Carus (below).

282-284/285, Roman Emperor Caesar Marcus Aurelius Carus Augustus *Carus* (an Illyrian), eschewed obtaining Senate confirmation—a demonstration of loss of Senate prestige and near extinction of Principate conventions.

Carus left his sons (co-Emperors Caesar Marcus Aurelius Numerius Numerianus Augustus *Numerian* and Caesar Marcus Aurelius Carinus Augustus *Carinus*) in charge at Rome and led the army into Persia. Carus cleared Armenia and Mesopotamia; then, pressing toward Ctesiphon,³³⁷ his soldiers (supposedly not enamored of the campaign) killed him. (Numerian’s death is unclear; Carinus died 285.³³⁸)

284/285, Roman Emperor Caesar Gaius Aurelius Valerius Diocletianus Augustus *Diocles/Diocletian* (to 305; an Illyrian of humble birth); commander of the Imperial bodyguard, he was proclaimed by his men.³³⁹ The state of the Empire--albeit somewhat restored--fast was sliding into

³³⁵ Hailed as *Restitutor Orbis*” (Restorer of the World), the motto appeared on minted coins that year. (Zenobia was led in chains.)

³³⁶ Three usurpers in 280 were Julius Saturninus, proclaimed and then killed by troops; Proculus, self-proclaimed and executed by Probus; Bonosus, self-proclaimed, defeated by Probus, and committed suicide.

³³⁷ *Ctesiphon* = capital of the Sassanids; on the E bank of the Tigris; its remains some 14 miles S of present Baghdad (formerly imperial capital of Parthian Arsacids).

³³⁸ One example of how history can (and repeatedly *is*) skewed (recall the old “Gossip” game?) are these two statements, from different sources: Carinus’ death was “possibly in a battle with Diocletian,” and “Diocles held a court martial of the general supposed to have masterminded the killing of Carus and then executed him with his own hands.”

³³⁹ Diocletian made Nicomedia, Asia Minor his city of residence, in effect making it the Empire capital during his reign, which reflected that Italy no longer was ruling Empire province and also, in effect, no longer ruling city. But defense of the empire was surer against the Persian frontier on the SE and the Gothic hordes at the NW.

severe economic deterioration, needing an army in greater numbers to counter foreign aggressions, and a more and more apathetic general population, crushed by taxations and diminishing income.³⁴⁰

286, Diocletian took on as co-Emperor Caesar Gaius Aurelius Valerius Maximianus Augustus *Maximian*. Diocletian took for his jurisdiction the Empire's east half, with Maximian over the west, the north/south boundary between them through the strait between Italy's heel and northwest Greece—only an administrative division of the Empire, but after which history does refer to the (Latin-speaking) “West Roman Empire” and the (Greek-speaking) “East Roman Empire.”³⁴¹ Eastern Roman Empire capital was Nicomedia (in Anatolia³⁴²); the Western, Milan.

Positions of emperors, particularly in the west, depended entirely on their control of armed forces, and their survival amongst their very soldiers (as amply previously proved) very risky. Diocletian made himself more a *dominus* (“lord”) than a *first citizen* (“princeps”), withdrawing into a more royal and safer mode, introducing ceremonials of an Eastern monarchy. This period marked finality of the Principate, which decline notably had begun under Aurelian.

Maximian was burdened heavily, by revolting and rampaging peasants in Gaul province and trying to protect Britain against Germanic raids.

286, Maximian built a fleet to confront Germanic raids on Britain and made one Marcus Aurelius Mausaeus Valerius Carausius Rome's military commander/admiral. Carausius, a Belgic Gaul, usurped power and declared himself Emperor in Britain and north Gaul (the Roman region in this period found referred to as the “Britannic Empire”); and with the appropriation of the fleet established himself master along the Empire's Atlantic shores. Another fleet subsequently built by Maximian was lost in a storm.

Two rulers then accepted insufficient, Diocletian had himself and Maximian each take on a assistant/successor, putting complete end to the third century Crisis by dividing authority between four co-Emperors to better secure vast territory. The “one-headed” Principate government was replaced with a tetrarchy,³⁴³ commencing the *dominus* or “Dominate” period, a second Roman Empire transition phase in which remaining presence of old Republican forms was largely abandoned.

“The Tetrarchy:” Diocletian's nominee was Gaius Galerius Valerius Maximianus *Galerius*; Maximian's was Flavius Valerius Constantius *Chlorus*, an Illyrian governor—each with the title “Caesar” as opposed to the “Augusti.” Diocletian and Maximian both gave a daughter in marriage to their appointee. Chlorus' regions of command were Gaul, Britain and Spain; Maximian retained Italy and Africa.

293ff., Chlorus secured the Rhine frontier and then took on Britain. He defeated Carausius' Frank allies in Batavia. Carausius, isolated, was assassinated by his finance minister Allectus (“Carausian Revolt”) and usurped the Britannic seat to 296. Chlorus, having built a fleet and landed it on Britain, re-established the Empire's authority there, while Diocletian (leaving Galerius to deal with Persia) successfully suppressed a military revolt in Egypt.

295/296, King Narseh of Persia (after invading west Armenia to retake previously lost Persian territory) moved into Roman Mesopotamia, inflicting defeat on Galerius in the region between Carrhae/Harran (Turkey) and Callinicum/Ar-Raqqah (Syria). He then declared war on Rome.

298, Galerius led an offensive against Narseh, who on retreating to Armenia for a supposed advantage, found the terrain more favorable to Roman infantry than Sassanid cavalry. With local aid, Galerius

³⁴⁰ In 301 Diocletian would issue the “Edict of Diocletian”—a failed attempt failed to stabilize conditions by fixing maximum prices and maximum wages, to keep large landowners from profiteering in times of food shortages and labor, times of manpower shortages.

³⁴¹ Maximian did not make Rome his capital, remaining mostly in Mediolanum/Milan (better suited for guarding against Rhine and upper Danube incursions).

³⁴² *Anatolia* = from Greek, *small Asia*; denotes westernmost protrusion of Asia comprising majority of Republic of Turkey (region bounded by Black Sea at N, Georgia at NE, Armenian Highland at E, Mesopotamia at SE, Mediterranean Sea at S, and Aegean Sea at W).

³⁴³ Where power is shared by four individuals.

secured victories in two successive battles, then advanced for successive victories in Media and Adiabene.

299, “Peace of Nisibis (some 300 miles northeast of Antioch):” Roman and Persian negotiations, Diocletian and Galerius presiding, resulted in heavy conditions of Persia, which conceded territory including Armenia and allegiance of eastern/“Caucasian” Iberia/Iveria³⁴⁴ to Rome. The boundary between the two empires was fixed at the Tigris River. Rome would exercise control over five satrapies between the Tigris and Armenia, with which Rome with an advance station north of Ctesiphon could slow future Persian advances through the region.

The borders of the Roman Empire west and east were intact, and Diocletian internal reorganization was taking hold. The Empire’s more than 100 provinces now were grouped by four prefectures: European provinces northwest of Italy; European provinces east of Italy; Italy, and Africa west of Egypt; and Egypt and Asia; each under one of the Augusti or Caesars. The reorganization would hold the Empire together nearly two more centuries, but was cumbered by expensive needs for four imperial courts, officials, etc. Also, by this time some 10 percent of the Empire’s population now embraced Christianity, strengthened through the prior years’ disorders. Its growing organization as the Empire was losing its own could be a rock of security against societal decay and increasing hardships among the commonweal.

Christianity’s leaders created a viable church hierarchy that dealt with various miscellaneous “disputes” (e.g. as to conformity of rites and practices) between church groups. Regional churches and priesthoods were placed under an *episcopus* (Gr. “overseer”)/Bishop; periodically, Bishopric *synods* (Gr., “meetings”) were held to resolve differences and establish a single orthodoxy—one *catholic* (Gr., “universal”) religion/church. Up to Diocletian’s time, the Empire’s west half had only one important bishop—at Rome. Bishops in the several important cities (such as Antioch and Alexandria) in the Empire’s east half (where Christians were more numerous and powerful) often could be at odds. Despite the ‘imbalance’ in numbers, for many, Rome’s Bishop had the aura of supreme head, likely from Christianity’s belief that Rome’s first bishop had been Jesus’ prime associate, *Cephas*/Peter.

303, Diocletian (also likely due to Christianity’s challenge to his own authority) began (reportedly at the insistence of Galerius) to campaign intensely first against Christianity’s organizations—destroying churches and crosses, burning books held sacred—although at times mobs of Rome’s “pagan”³⁴⁵ believers committed murders. Harassment included purging Christians from Empire offices and the army.

On the other hand, the prefecture of Chlorus (who, himself, was not Christian), was free of persecutions.

305, Diocletian--soured in his rule at 60 (Emperor 20 years)--fell ill at Nicomedia and abdicated. He forced Maximian to abdicate, also. Since both Caesars, Galerius and Chlorus, moved up, two new nominees were necessary for the tetrarchy.

Galerius seized the reins and himself immediately named both successor Caesars without consulting Chlorus. He selected nephew, Maximin Daia for himself and one of his men, Flavius Valerius Severus, for Constantine, passing over Maximian’s son, Marcus Aurelius Valerius *Maxentius*. Maxentius self-proclaimed what he believed his hereditary right and had himself proclaimed Emperor at Rome, calling his father back to co-rule.

Meanwhile, no provision had been made for Chlorus’s son, but Chlorus was involved with campaigning against northern tribes in Britain, and died in the process (306). Before dying, Chlorus had nominated to his troops his son, Gaius Flavius Valerius Aurelius Claudius Constantinus *Constantine I*. Only 18 at the time, Constantine I was declared Emperor by the troops and became strengthened through alliances.

³⁴⁴ *Iberia/Iveria* = roughly correspondent to E and S parts of present-day Georgia; distinguished from the Iberian Peninsula (where present Spain and Portugal are located); and containing the Kingdom of Kartli.

³⁴⁵ *Pagan* = typically used to refer to polytheistic religious traditions.

307ff., Constantine I married a daughter of Maximian, who, then as Caesar, recognized Constantine I as co-Augusti (with Galerius). An army of Galerius (now facing the triple threat of Maximian, Maxentius and Constantine I) was driven out; Maxentius remained there in control.

308-310, Galerius called for help from retired Diocletian who returned and effected deposal of Maximian but recognized Constantine I as an *Augustus*/co-Emperor (to 337), and appointed Gaius Valerius Licinianus Licinus as the west Emperor. Maximian, who fought his deposal, was defeated by Constantine I.³⁴⁶

311, Galerius died and was succeeded in Asia Minor by his Caesar, Daia. Daia continued Galerius' persecutions of Christians, while trying to no avail to find agreement with Maxentius, still ruling in Italy. The lines then drawn were Maxentius in Italy with Daia in Asia Minor against Constantine I in Gaul and Licinius in Danubian provinces. The "Dominate" form of government was developing more and more on lines of an oriental absolute monarchy--subjects and even diplomatic allies could be termed *servus* or *doulos*/servant, slave relative to the imperial position.)

312, Constantine I (after two defeated attempts) invaded Italy a third time. This time, in the Po Valley, he initially defeated a Maxentius force, then marched on Rome (reportedly with Christian insignias on his soldier's shields), where he utterly defeated Maxentius' forces (battle of the Milvian Bridge of the Tiber River); Maxentius, himself, was killed.

Constantine I, now master of the west, was declared Emperor by the Senate. Constantine disbanded the Praetorian Guard and, apparently accepted that Christianity would be a determinant of the future.³⁴⁷ Meanwhile in the east, Licinius won the civil war with Daia.

313, "Edict of Milan:" Constantine I (ruler of the west) and Licinius (ruler of the east) held a summit, where they agreed on religious freedom (an end to persecutions) throughout the Empire. (Maximian went his own way; Diocletian died this same year.)

313ff., Relationship between Constantine I and Licinius deteriorated with the years (Licinius' fortunes concomitantly declining). They fought for a first time in 314, with Constantine supervening. While Constantine would pursue and complete Diocletian reforms, but his trend toward a monarchy grew also, particularly re-establishing imperial succession within a royal line. In 325 he assumed a crowning symbol, a narrow white linen headband that, as once worn by kings of Persia and subsequent Hellenistic kings in fallen Persia.³⁴⁸ "Barbarian" bands were allowed to settle depopulated Empire areas and welcomed into its army.

Many Constantine reforms were influenced by Christian teachings, on one hand prisoners and slaves were treated more humanely; on the other, moral (particularly sexual) offenders were treated more harshly; and Sunday was established as a legal rest day. Most significantly, Bishops now had a court of appeal whose decisions carried imperial weight. With the "Donatist heresy" (named for Donatus, Bishop of Carthage) becoming full-blown in Constantine's early years, he became directly involved in theological dispute.³⁴⁹ In Carthage, the Donatists were victorious

314-316, a synod of bishops declared against the Donatists; in 326 Constantine I personally heard debates and also declared against Donatism. The result was a stalemate--neither had 'pagan' emperors

³⁴⁶ And reportedly "had no compunction about having his father-in-law executed."

³⁴⁷ Although Constantine I, reportedly a pragmatist at heart, did not officially convert to Christianity until on his death bed. (Reportedly, also, "Christians of the Empire remained a minority to the end of his reign.)

³⁴⁸ Headpieces of succeeding emperors would grow more elaborate along with other symbols of royalty; before long, the diadem would be pearl-encrusted royal purple.

³⁴⁹ Fundamentally at issue was the worthiness of priests (specifically, whether priests who had renounced their faith to avoid martyrdom could atone for the sin and be priests again (the position of more moderate bishops, who maintained it was the holy Church's power could be effective even if through an imperfect man), or whether such a former priest should be denied (since a priest should be such so long as he did not offend against God; the position of the purist Donatists).

wiped out Christianity nor Christian emperors, 'heresy';³⁵⁰ but the principle of Constantine's direct church participation was firmly established.

317, Flavius Claudius Constantinus/*Constantine II* was appointed Caesar by his father.

320 (to 550), Gupta Empire existed, covering much of Indian subcontinent; period called "Golden Age of India" (advancements in many academic fields); declined largely due to invasions by central Asian hordes.

324, Licinius and Constantine I fought another civil war; again, Constantine supervened and this time Licinius was executed the next year on Constantine I's orders, removing the last obstacle to total rule. His next task in continuing efforts to unify theology of a legally formalized Christian Church was to deal with the "Arian heresy"—a doctrinal dispute between the religious philosophy of one Arius against that of one Athanasius,³⁵¹ which gave rise to opposing bishops and parties in other imperial regions besides Alexandria.

325, Constantine I called the (first "Ecumenical"³⁵²) Council of Nicaea (in Bithynia; not far from Nicomedia), all bishops traveling to and attending were to have imperial protection (unlike earlier synods when many could not make a voyage); yet, although there were bishops from Spain, the West was under-represented due to long distances). It repudiated "Arianism;" declared Christ was *homousios* with the Father, *i.e.* of the same substance); adopted the original Nicene Creed to which all Christians were to subscribe; recognized primacy of the *sees* (geographical jurisdictions) of Rome, Alexandria, and Antioch; and granted honorable position to the See of Jerusalem.

The Council decided in favor of Athanasius. Arius and his lead adherents were exiled (and Arius's writings, destroyed). Arius took refuge in Palestine. Constantine I, subsequently (always desiring pacification of the Arian/Trinitarian controversy), grew more lenient toward the exiles. He allowed Arius (who had muted his more objectionable ideas) and many of Arius' followers to return home. He ordered Bishop Alexander of Constantinople to receive Arius (despite Alexander's objections); Arius died suddenly, however, the day before he was to be formally readmitted to communion.³⁵³

Meanwhile, however, the East continued to hold an influentially large Arian minority, while the West remained firmly trinitinarian.

327, Bishop Alexander died and was succeeded by Anathasius.

For decades, emperors largely had remained in the East at Nicomedia, primarily for defensive purposes against the then vulnerable east frontiers, but Rome had been the perceived Empire capital. Now, however, Constantine I saw Byzantium as the most logically attractive site—surrounded on three sides by water, and strategically situate for land and sea defense and as a potential prosperous trade center, as once it had been.

Constantine I proceeded to expensively enlarge Byzantium with labor and architects from around the realm, confiscated statues and art works of older Empire cities, built his new capital,

³⁵⁰ Donatists, although reduced in number, would remain in north Africa (three centuries; until Arabian invasions), despite a number of edicts against them.

³⁵¹ Arius was a Christian presbyter/deacon in Alexandria, Egypt. His teachings of the nature of the 'Godhead' emphasized the 'Father's' divinity over the 'Son's' (*i.e.* there was a time before the 'son' when only the 'father' existed), a controversial opposition to the "Trinitarian" Christology of Athanasius (another Alexandrian deacon), that God and Jesus existed coeternally "of one essence"/"consubstantial." (Although Arius commonly is taken to have initiated "non-Trinitarianism," it had been discussed for decades and only was intensified church-wide by Arius. Another term used for one believing that the nature of Christ is not the same with, but only similar to that of the Father, is *homoiousian*.)

³⁵² *Ecumenical* = representative of the whole body of Christian churches of an existing "christianized" world.

³⁵³ The Council of Nicaea also attempted to create peace with the "Melitians" (followers of a sect [Church of Martyrs] founded by Melitius, Bishop of Lycopolis, Egypt, propounding refusal of readmittance into communion of Christians who had renounced their faith to save themselves during persecutions. Melitius was allowed by the council to remain bishop but denied ordaining bishops outside of his region (he had ordained 28 and was accused of ordaining in instances where he lacked authority). His followers sided with the Arians.

transferred from Nicomedia to it, and renamed it *Nova Roma*/"New Rome" and *Konstantinou polis*/"Constantine's city (Constantinople)--seen historically as a if not the, pivotal point in the eventual ultimate split of the Roman Empire.

Constantinople's bishop, always in the imperial neighborhood, would gain prominence among the other three bishoprics, Rome, Antioch, and Alexandria. The bishops/bishoprics of the other jurisdictions were to become distanced from and weakened in power to Constantinople's. For the time being, however—despite Constantinople's acquisition of many leading families, wealth, and power--behind the Bishop of Rome stood strict orthodox Catholicism and a nationalist force against the more nebulous east. (The term "Patriarch" would appear in the 5th century, later adapted in the west to "Pope"--below at 429ff.).

332, Constantine I served an ignominious defeat to renewed Goth incursion in the lower Danube. Some time afterward, in declining health, he retired to his old palace at Nicomedia.

333, "Ethiopia"/Aksumite/Axumite Empire was first major northeast Africa empire to convert to Christianity.³⁵⁴

335, At a "First Synod of Tyre," Athanasius was charged by Eusebius of Nicomedia and other Arianists of mistreating Arians who failed to adopt the "Nicene Creed." The disputants meeting afterward with Constantine I, Athanasius then was accused of being a threat by interference with grain supply from Egypt, and Constantine I exiled him to the Rhineland.

337, Constantine I died, survived by three sons, among whom his empire was divided. The West was divided between the older and younger: Constantine II received Britain, Gaul, and Spain; Flavius Julius Constans/*Constans I*, Italy, Illyria, and Africa; the "plum" of the empire, the East, was received by middle son, Flavius Julius Constantius *Constantius II*. (Constantius II's first act was to kill two cousins and some other family members that might have disputed his legacy.) Meanwhile, Constantine II claimed himself "Emperor-in-chief." Constans claimed equal status.

338, Constantius II re-ordered Athanasius' banishment. Athanasius went to Rome and protection of Constans I; Gregory of Cappadocia usurped Athanasius' position and became Patriarch of Alexandria (although Athanasius kept correspondingly in contact with his adherents and would constantly work on his writings).

340, Constantine II invaded Italy but was defeated and slain. For a while the two remaining brothers would rule, Constantius II in the East and Constans I in the West. Constans I energetically defended Rhine and British frontiers.

343, a gathering of prelates ("Council of Sardica") reconsidered the case of Athanasius (who had gained support of "saintly Hosius of Corduba," champion of orthodoxy), and Athanasius' innocence was reaffirmed. Constantius II ordered that if Athanasius attempted to re-enter his See, he should be put to death.

346, Patriarchate Gregory died. Constans influenced a return of Athanasius to Alexandria, where the majority of the people welcomed him as a hero.

350, British-born Magnentius (commander of imperial guard unit) was elevated by Constans' dissatisfied army, which proclaimed Magnentius emperor in all of Constans I's territories except Illyricum. Partly responsible for Magnentius' attracting loyalty of provinces of Britannia, Gaul, and Hispania partly was due to more tolerance to both Christians and "Pagans."

351, Constantius II quickly marched against and initially defeated Magnentius at Mursa, Syria.

351, Constantius II retrieved his cousin, Flavius Claudius Constantius *Gallus* (son of a half-brother of Constantine I), made him a Caesar, and sent him to Antioch to defend the East. (Gallus had been banished to house arrest when Constantius killed off other potential family contenders, while his then

³⁵⁴ Aksum = ancient capital in N Ethiopia; NE Africa important trading nation and major commercial player between Roman Empire and Ancient India; minted own currency; established hegemony over declining Kingdom of Kush; regularly entered politics of kingdoms on Arabian peninsula and eventually extended rule over the region with conquest of Himyarite Kingdom. Islamists seeking refuge from Quraysh persecution went to Aksum--known in Islamic history as "first Hijra;" allegedly home of Ark of Covenant and Queen of Sheba.

child-brother, Flavius Claudius Julianus/*Julian*, also as a prisoner, had been with and educated by [Arian] Bishop Eusebius of Nicomedia.) To seal the deal, Gallus married Constantius' sister, Constantia. Julian was freed.

353, Magnentius made a last stand ("battle of Mons Seleucus"), lost and reportedly committed suicide afterward. The Roman Empire once more was under single, unopposed rule. But Constantius II had broken off war with Persia to deal with Magnentius.

354, Caesar Gallus was not equal to his task (with many stories of his and Constantia's "frivolity and cruelties"). Finally, on rumors they were plotting against Constantius II, Gallus was arrested, charged, convicted and executed. Constantius also had Julian exiled and kept a prisoner. (Constantia, it is said, died a natural death.)

355, Constantius II, warring against western Germanic tribes and desperate for assistance, retrieved cousin Julian (last of the Constantinian line) and appointed him Caesar. He sent Julian to handle the west while he went to contend with the Persians. Julian (only 25) was as effective as his namesake, driving the tribes back and liberating regions in vigorous attacks. He maintained headquarters at "Lutetia Parisiorum" (later, Paris), and proceeded to gain great popularity.

359, Sapor II of Persia, having defeated Asiatic "barbarians"/nomads on Persia's north border, now turned hard against Rome's. Constantius II ordered part of Julian's army to the east, but Julian refused. When his army proclaimed he challenge for emperorship, he marched toward Constantinople. Before his and his cousin's armies met, however, Constantius II died of illness.

361, Julian (/Julian "the apostate") became Emperor over a united empire (to 363). Julian is reported to not be Catholic and, once accepted as Emperor, declared himself a pagan by nature, reportedly was inclined toward Mithraism,³⁵⁵ but proclaimed religious tolerance for all—"pagans," Hebrews, and Christians, besides for any charged heretics of Christian sects.

Julian summoned a great number of prelates to a council at Sardica, where Athanasius' innocence was reaffirmed. But Conciliar letters to clergy of Alexandria and bishops of Egypt and Libya provoked renewed persecutions against orthodox party members. Subsequently, Patriarch Athanasius convened a council at Alexandria and appealed for unity among the Christian faithful beyond differences of terminology.

362, reportedly, Emperor Julian ordered Athanasius out again (causes unclear; Athanasius would sojourn in Upper Egypt until Julian's death).

363, Julian, who had a strong army and a fleet on the Euphrates River, marched as far as Ctesiphon, successful against Persian incursions, but mistakenly decided to continue pursuit of the Persian beyond Ctesiphon, without besieging it. Shapur II kept his army intact, out of reach, while Julian reduced his force to exhaustion confronting Persian raids as he retreated. At age 32, he was killed by a spear (it unclear whether by a Persian thrust or by his own men), dying childless.³⁵⁶

363-364, General Flavius Claudius Jovianus *Jovian* (a Christian) of Julian's army, elevated by the military, was Roman Emperor. Jovian returned religious policy to that of Constantius II (but not with active persecution of pagans or the unorthodox).

By this time, the Persian Empire reached from the Euphrates River to modern-day Afghanistan. Jovian continued Julian's retreat from the Persians until, deep in Sassanid territory, sued for a peace treaty. He agreed to withdrawal from five Roman provinces that Galerius had conquered in 298 and surrendered fortresses (including Nisibis) and the Kingdom of Armenia (which pledged to stay neutral while surrendering part of it to Shapur II)--a treaty widely seen as a disgrace that lost Jovian his popularity.

³⁵⁵ Monotheistic, but centered on god Mithras, little known about the persuasion but that it involved initiation of seven grades and ritual meals.

³⁵⁶ Julian was the last of emperors publically or privately inclined to religious paganism, which gradually would die out in Roman dominions (although pagan philosophers in Athens would continue to teach for another century and more.

364, Jovian died halfway on his return back from Persia, the death attributed either to poisonous mushrooms or carbon monoxide from a charcoal fire. His soldiers chose Flavius Valentinianus (I) *Valentinian* as Emperor, sharing rule with his brother Flavius *Valens*.

Valentinian was religiously tolerant, while Valens, co-Emperor in the East, was a fervent Arian. Now Valens exiled Athanasius, who nevertheless stayed near until within a few weeks Valens retracted the order. Valentinian (with a capital at Milan) again drove back Germanic tribes in the Rhine region.

In Gaul, Valens dealt with constant ‘barbarian’ pressure on frontiers, defeating Alemanni, and had equal success at the upper Danube, while general Theodosius cleared tribal incursions out of Rome’s portion of Britain. (In 365/366 Valens defeated and killed a potential usurper, Procopius.)

370, Huns began invading eastern Europe (nomad migrations into Europe from E of Volga).

372-374, “Gothic Wars:”³⁵⁷ Ostrogoths, who over time had occupied territory north of the Black Sea (Ukraine region), were invaded beginning *circa* 370 by nomadic “Huns” (from east of the Volga River). After lack of successes against Chinese defenses, they had turned westward). The Ostrogoths were forced to submit. Huns then moved on to attack Visigoths north of the Danube. The Visigoths petitioned their old Roman foe to afford haven. Huns advanced, as perhaps some hundred of thousand Visigoths flooded into Roman Empire territory.³⁵⁸

Some Goths joined up with Huns while refugees, being exploited in Roman territories, somehow found arms and began to pillage.

374, The Bishop of Milan, a defender of Catholicism against Arianism, died and was succeeded by another staunch Trinitarian, Ambrosius/Ambrose.

375, Valentinian I died of a stroke. (General Theodosius was executed the same year, reportedly by officials whose corruption he was exposing). Valentinian I was succeeded by his eldest son, Flavius Gratianus *Gratian* (to 383), associated with half-brother, Flavius Valentinianus *Valentinian II*, then only four.

378, Valens marched west to deal with the Huns.

Battle of Adrianople/Hadrianopolis),³⁵⁹ between Valens’ forces and the Hun-rebel Goth flying cavalries, resulting in Valen’s overwhelming defeat and his death. The same year, Roman forces won a decisive victory against the Alemanni (“Battle of Argentovaria,” Colmar, France).

378/9, Gratian, being only 20 and sole ruler of the Empire, chose to share his rule Theodosius I (son of the earlier executed general of the same name; here referred to as the first, reflecting the Theodosian line’s future³⁶⁰).

381, the First [Ecumenical] Council of Constantinople repudiated Macedonianism (holding beliefs similar to Arianism) as well as Arianism (declaring that Christ was “born of the Father before all Time.”

382, the East’s Theodosius I (who had proceeded to deal adroitly with the Goths quartered in the Balkans), through shrewd diplomacy achieved a treaty (*foedus*): Goths were allowed to settle south of the Danube as allies of Rome, but under their own ruler and laws; and many were induced to join the Roman army.

Temporarily, borders were sealed and provinces quiet. The time of reliance solely on foot soldiers, however, had passed; the need for development of cavalry saw the Roman army come to depend more and more on “barbarian” horsemen, while the majority of top military offices also were filled by natives from provincial territories.

³⁵⁷ About mid-4th century the Goths, a heterogeneous East Germanic tribe that repeatedly had attacked Roman Empire, divided into east Goths/Ostrogoths and west Goths/Visigoths.

³⁵⁸ Conditions for haven were harsh: the Goths were to enter unarmed, while women were transported to Asia as hostages.

³⁵⁹ *Adrianople* = in Roman province of Thracia; fought north of Adrianople (modern Edirne in Turkey, near borders of Greece and Bulgaria). The battle of Adrianople often is seen as start of the West Roman Empire’s ultimate collapse, as Gothic invasions were ended in the East, which was to develop into the “Byzantine” Roman Empire.

³⁶⁰ Historically, Theodosius I commonly is referred to as Theodosius “the Great.”

Theodosius I was ardently an anti-Arian Catholic. Concomitantly, Catholic Christianity was increasing exponentially—Greco-Roman culture and paganism were approaching death throes. Meanwhile, Bishop Ambrose influenced Gratian from his original tolerant policies.

382, Emperor Gratian shed the title *Pontifex Maximus*, which had reflected an Emperor's 'High Priest' position to the Empire's pagan population, removed the "Altar of Victory" from the Senate, forbade property to and extinguished the "eternal flame" of the vestal virgins.³⁶¹ Reportedly, Gratian turned more to pleasure than rule, vulnerable to usurpation.

383, Britain's Roman legions proclaimed Magnus Maximus as Emperor, who crossed over to and seized Gaul; Gratian was assassinated. Theodosius I, still involved pacifying Goths in the East, initially recognized Magnus Maximus (who was accepted by Britain, Gaul, and Spain), on condition that Valentinian II (Gratian's half-brother) be recognized in control of Italy.

384, Magnus Maximus appointed his son, Flavius Victor, a Caesar.

387, Aurelius Augustinus *Augustine* (later Saint Augustine), who had gone to Milan in 384 and converted to Catholicism, was baptized by Bishop Ambrose.³⁶²

c. 388, a force of Magnus Maximus invaded Italy. Theodosius I (after accepting another disadvantageous peace with Persia) arrived in north Italy, defeated Maximus and had him and his son killed. He granted young Valentinian II nominal rule over Gaul under a guardian, Arbogast, a Germanic Frank who had cleared Maximus adherents out of Gaul.

392, Arbogast revolted, Valentinian II was murdered, and Arbogast and the military elevated one Flavius Eugenius (a Roman general recognized in Spain and Africa) as Emperor in the West. Eugenius sent ambassadors asking Theodosius I for recognition of his election. They were received, but Theodosius apparently had other plans.

393, Theodosius I promoted his small sons, Flavius *Arcadius* and Flavius *Honorius* as junior Augustii for East and West, respectively, and then marched against Arbogast.

394, The battle of Frigidus (modern Italy-Slovenia border), two days of slaughter from which Theodosius I emerged victor. (Arbogast immediately committed suicide; Eugenius, held for execution as a criminal, afterward was beheaded.)

Although in this preceding period the Roman Empire had given up territories of Armenia, Dacia and Mesopotamia, it still was holding the line. Again it was united under one rule. The military, however, upon which the ruler's life always depended, for the most part now was commanded by German generals; and it slowly was being eaten away within by gradual declines of population and language arts, impoverishment of cities, corruption, and ineffectiveness.

395, Theodosius I died. Roman Empire rule was inherited by his two young sons, Arcadius, 17, East at Constantinople; Honorius, 11, West at Rome—both under military protectors. Arcadius' general was Gallic Rufinus; Honorius', (Vandal-descended) Flavius Stilicho, an earlier staunchly trusted officer of Theodosius and eventual father-in-law of Honorius. The protectors from the first were at bitter odds (Rufinus had seized eastern Illyria and Stilicho was aimed to get it back).³⁶³

³⁶¹ A Vestal, committed before puberty, swore to 30-year celibacy and served in three periods of 10 years each as student, service, and teacher. Her tasks, besides maintaining the Temple's sacred fire to Vesta (goddess of hearth and home), had been collection of water from a sacred spring, preparing food used in rituals, and caring for all sacred sanctuary objects.

³⁶² Africa, a center of Puritan "heresies" such as Donatists and home of future Christian writers (Tertullian, Cyprian), in the 4th century c.e. was home of Aurelius Augustinus/*Augustine*, born in an African little town some 150 miles W of Carthage. Father, "pagan," mother, Christian, during his youth he inclined to Manichaeism,³⁶² later studied works of the Neo-Platonists (Plotinus). (*Manichaeism* = of dualistic elements drawn from an Iranian "gnostic" religion in Sassanid Persia, and appearing as far as S China as well as to the Roman Empire (where Diocletian had campaigned against it), most writings of a prophet Mani have survived only in translation—an elaborate cosmology of struggle between good/lightness and evil/darkness, spiritual vs. material, which peaked in Augustine's time).

³⁶³ In this timeframe, (Saint) Augustine became Bishop of Hippo (African province).

East/West hostilities, however, were to be distracted by the Visigoths, occupants of the province of Moesia.³⁶⁴ To some extent Romanized, they had been absorbing Roman religion, primarily via a Christian convert, one Wulfila/Ulfilas,³⁶⁵ who by now was dead. But the Christianity Ulfilas left behind was of the Arian school; and one leading Arian was King Alaric, who had been a loyal Theodosius general.

Ensuing events leading to ultimate collapse of a unified Roman Empire revolved around two primary causes: (1) East/West dispute over the territory of Illyria that lay west of the Empire's north/south line. Ambitions of the Constantinople court resulted in it being assumed by the East.³⁶⁶ (2) Growing competition between the Bishopric of Rome and the Patriarchate of Constantinople. **395-396**, Alaric, rebuffed in the selection of the young Emperors' protectors, marched in opposition to Constantinople. Stilicho, positioning to regain Illyria, could have stopped Alaric; but Constantinople drove him out.

Alaric, giving up on making his case at Constantinople, decided instead on helpless Greece, which for centuries now almost forgotten except for the pilfering of its arts. Alaric entered Eleusis; the temple of Ceres was destroyed; Thebes stayed safe behind its walls; Alaric spared Athens and passed on into the Peloponnesus, where he wintered, a hand never raised against him.

Stilicho (after having engineering assassination of Rufinus on his return to Italy) marched to the Peloponnesus. Reportedly he got Alaric cornered but Alaric managed to escape. Stilicho's hopes in by mastering Alaric he would gain superiority over the East backfired: Constantinople made Alaric governor of the disputed Illyria province.

398, John of Chrysostom was appointed Patriarch of Constantinople.³⁶⁷

Alexandria's Bishop Theophilus was particularly opposed to Chrysostom. Chrysostom also had as an enemy Arcadius' wife, Empress Eudoxia (daughter of a German chieftain), who favored Theophilus and whose life style Chrysostom roundly denounced. Moreover, Chrysostom insisted on strict celibacy of priests, and incurred jealousy and animosity by his outspokenness.

399, Anastasius I was West Patriarch.

401, Innocent I was West Patriarch.

[By end of 4th century Holy Land had become predominantly a Christian region with churches commemorating various events in life of Jesus erected at key sites, with Jerusalem one of Muslim's three most sacred sites.

[(By this time the Bishop of Rome was one of few senior ecclesiastical or imperial officials of Roman Empire actually to reside in Rome.)

400, Alaric struck westward into north Italy.

402-403, events on continent force Stilicho to recall one (the 6th Victrix) of the two British legions for defense against Alaric and his Visigoths. At Pollentia (northwest corner of Italy), Stilicho gained the advantage by attacking on Easter Sunday, achieved a narrow victory there but a deciding one farther east at Verona. Alaric retired to Illyria.

³⁶⁴ While some Goths had been integrated into Hunnic Empire, many leaned toward the Roman Empire and both west and east Goths had established substantial successor states of the Western Roman Empire.

³⁶⁵ Who translated much Scripture into a written Gothic language which he himself created, some extant fragments about all of the language that exists.

³⁶⁶ Up to 395 c.e., given the sometime vague definitions of 'legitimate' emperors versus usurpers, the rule of thumb in textually assigning the title is its use for persons at some point undisputedly ruling and/or accepted by the Senate (including usurpers), while also an individual nominated as heir or co-emperor by a legitimate emperor is considered legitimately bearing the title in his own right even if not confirmed. After the empire split (below), the rule of thumb continues as to 'legitimate' emperors with undisputed control in their respective halves.

³⁶⁷ From here, head occupants of the bishoprics of Rome and Constantinople will be included (as best they can be discerned). The term, "Patriarch," will be used for both until the 6th century, when "Pope" appears first employed in the west--"Patriarch of the West" being an earlier used title, dropped in modern day. In this earlier period, "Archbishop" can be found used in place of "Patriarch."

403, at a scheduled synod, Chrysostom prearrangedly was to be charged and found guilty of heresy. Chrysostom refused to appear. When he was removed from his patriarchate and sent into exile, popular protest resulted in his recall within two days.

403, Victricius, Bishop of Rouen, visited Britain to ameliorate dispute of island's clergy (possibly over "Pelagian heresy"³⁶⁸).

404, Patriarch of Constantinople, Arsacius of Tarsus.

404, the West government at Milan no longer feeling safe from Goths moved some 280 miles southeast to Ravenna on the Adriatic shore.

404, at Constantinople, another Theophilus synod was held to dispose of Chrysostom (augmented by a detachment of German mercenaries to control his supporters); Chrysostom again was exiled to some 400 miles away. From there, he continued to correspond empire-wide with followers, but especially with both Emperor Honorarius and Rome's Bishop. Empress Eudoxia was dead but the rest of the East court, seeing Chrysostom as recognizing West superiority of both rule and religion, proceeded to remove him further away, and enroute he died.

405-407. A confederation of tribes from east of the Rhine and north of the upper Danube (Alani,³⁶⁹ Vandals,³⁷⁰ Burgundians--the Schwaben/Swabian/*Suevi*), some pressed by Huns to the east, crossed the Alps to invade north Italy as soon as Alaric was driven out. Stilicho defeated them; but the West's occupation with Alaric had opened doors for other Germanic tribes. Previously, the spilling over of tribes always steadily was pressed back, but that never would be the same; western provinces would not be cleared altogether again. Early January 406, another combined barbarian force swept into central Gaul, severed contact between Rome and Britain, and crossed Gaul into Spain. In Britain, Picts were moving south from Scottish Highlands; Germanic raiders, west across the North Sea. Britain legions already were reduced drastically from draws, to fight elsewhere (also to be killed)--many (like those called to assist Stilicho) not returned to Britain. Remaining troops in Britain mutinied and proclaimed one Marcus emperor in Britain; he immediately was assassinated. By 407, the last Britain's Roman soldiers had left Britain; and at home General Stilicho's enemies were winning.

406, Patriarch of Constantinople, Atticus.

408, Unnamed parties convinced Honorius that Stilicho intended to raise his own son to the throne. Honorius ordered his execution and in August he was beheaded. Enraged, Goths in the army (also furious at anti-Arian policies of the new ministers) deserted to Alaric by the thousands.

Within a month of Stilicho's death Alaric entered Italy. With no army there to stop him, he marched virtually unopposed to the gates of Rome. But Alaric was after imperial capitulation and bestowal of a provincial rule and official military command; and at well-fortified Ravenna ministers prevailed on Honorius not to yield.

408, in the East, Arcadius died; his then-child son, Theodosius "the Younger"/Theodosius II succeeded him.

409, Priscus Attalus (an Asian Greek Senator) briefly usurped the West throne, proclaimed at Rome with Visigoth support (Honorius still housed in Ravenna). Alaric ended Priscus' 'reign' after a few months (reportedly in that it hampered Alaric's negotiations with Honorius).

³⁶⁸ *Pelagianism* = theological theory named after one Pelagius (c. 354-420/440 c.e.)—belief that humanity was not tainted by "original" sin, and that mortal will is capable of choosing good or evil without special Divine aid and therefore fully responsible (*i.e.* sinners by choice), and rather are criminals that need Jesus Christ for atonement and pardon (although, reportedly, Pelagius denied at some point in his life many doctrines associated with him).

³⁶⁹ *Alani/Alans* = nomadic pastoralists originally out of Sarmatia (c. W part of greater Scythia [S Russia/Ukraine/E Balkans).

³⁷⁰ *Vandals* = east Germanic people that overran Gaul, Spain, and northern Africa in 4th and would continue in 5th centuries c.e. and in 455 sack Rome; like Goths they were continuators rather than violators of Roman culture; Goth King Theodoric the Great of the Ostrogoths and the regent of Visigoths were allied by marriage with the Vandals as well as with Burgundians and Franks under Clovis.I.

To 410ff., Alaric besieged Rome; the imperial government continued to back away. A third siege of Rome he carried to the finish, however; Rome surrendered August 410 and was occupied and sacked. The damage was not great, but the death knell had sounded for the Roman name and its imperial prestige. Alaric held the city just six days, then marched south. Proceeding to cross the Mediterranean (it being thought he would invade Africa and secure territory of his own there), his ships were destroyed by a storm. Soon after Alaric died of fever in south Italy, and was succeeded by his brother-in-law, Ataulf/Atawulf.

Atawulf marched into south Gaul, acquired booty and charged a high price to allow peace. He also had aspiration for eminence in the Empire, but tactically differed from Alaric. Atawulf managed to marry Honorius' half-sister (Galla Placida), remaining in south Gaul under an umbrella of some legality.

Meanwhile, the Imperial Court had a new general, a Roman named Constantius whose strategy was to put tribes against each other. He persuaded Atawulf to lead his Visigoths against Spain's Germanic invaders.

In this timeframe, the British—having been advised by Honorius when they looked to him for aid to look to their own defenses--seriously turned to self-government along Imperial patterns.)

411, Constantine III was defeated by Constantius III. Usurper Constans II, who had been elevated in the West by father Constantine III, was killed in battle. Usurper Maximus, elevated in Spain, abdicated.

411/412, British, victorious over their opponents, became independent.

413, Pelagian heresy said to have begun by Prosper (Tiro) of Aquitaine's "Chronicle."

413, After Constantine III's death, usurpers Jovinus, elevated in West, and Sebastianus, appointed co-emperor by Jovinus, were executed by Honorius.

415, Atawulf was murdered, but his successor, Wallia, carried on the war in Spain. The Alans were mostly destroyed; the Suevi, contained in the northwest angle of Spain; and a remnant of Vandals driven against Spain's south shore.

416, Priscus Attalus (who had taken the Emperor title at Bordeaux in 414) made another try against Honorius but the Visigoths abandoned him. Captured by Honorius (and after humbled in the standard triumphal parade at Rome), he was exiled and finished his days in the "Lipari Islands."

417, Zosimus was West Patriarch.

418, Boniface I " " .

418-419, Wallia died; under successor Theoderic I, Visigoths emerged from Spain, returned to Gaul, settled in its southwest, and established the independent Kingdom of Toulouse (some 60 miles north of the Pyrenees). With Toulouse city its capital and seat of power, it was the first Germanic successor kingdom. It maintained friendly alliance with, but Rome was not its overlord, as Visigoths became landowners and would form an aristocracy that ruled peasant descendants of Romanized natives.

419-421, while Britain was being ruled by petty tyrants, the Pelagian philosophy enjoyed much support from a "pro-Celtic" faction.³⁷¹ Honorius outlawed the Pelagian "heresy," and forbid any adherents to come nearer to Rome than its one-hundredth marker.

In the West, for several months in 421 General Constantius "III" (by then married to Honorarius' half-sister, the widowed Galla Placida) was named co-Emperor in the West.

In the East, the preceding decades had witnessed relative stability. Theodosius II had come of age, was a strong leader and popular with the people. He strengthened an enlarged Constantinople, built new schools, summarized laws ("Theodosian Code"), and held off Persians in two fairly successful wars. Meanwhile the West of the Empire was crumbling.

422, the East "Roman" Empire and Persia agreed respectively to tolerate Christianity and Zoroastrianism.

422, Priscus/Celestine I was West Patriarch.

³⁷¹ *Celts* = diverse group of tribal societies in Iron Age and Roman-era Europe who spoke Celtic languages. Celtic tribes that roamed north Europe for centuries ultimately would be driven back to Ireland, Scotland, and Wales.

423-425: Honorarius died at Ravenna (423). Flavius Placidius Valentinianus *Valentinian III*, son of Galla Placidia by Constantius III and then only six years old, inherited the West's throne (having been appointed Caesar for the West by Theodosius II)--Placidia exercising prime influence. (In the initial process, a contender, Joannes, was defeated and executed.)

Two vying generals arose in the West. Bonifacius, of some success, was overshadowed completely by Flavius Aetius (who had spent some years as an Alaric hostage and some, with the Huns), who arrived in Italy 424 at head of an army of Huns and other barbarians) and established himself in power. Bonifacius was made governor of Africa, leaving Aetius with sole, full access to Placidia.

425, Vortigern/Vortiger/Vortigen ruled in Britain--a leading warlord ruler. It is said he invited the Saxons to settle in Kent as mercenaries to aid revolt of Scots and Picts (Britain's Late Iron Age people in what now is E and N Scotland) beyond Hadrian's wall, who supervened, killed his son and added Sussex and Essex to their own kingdom (leaving Vortigen to be considered the worst king England ever had).

426, Patriarch of Constantinople, Sisinnius I.

428, General Bonifacius, grown angry at his disadvantageous position in Africa, was moved to rebellion. The nearest potential mercenaries were the Vandals precariously occupying south Spain. They currently had a new, remarkable leader, Genseric/*Gaiseric*, who accepted a bid from and provided Bonifacius with 80,000 men to sail to Africa on Bonifacius' fleet.

428, Patriarch of Constantinople, Nestorius.

428, The West recruited Saxon mercenaries to garrison Britain defense against the "barbarians."

429, Patriarch Celestine I sent one Palladius as Bishop for Ireland (whose work subsequently would be continued by Patricius [Saint] *Patrick* [c. 432]). Celestine also dispatched other bishops: to Gaul, Germanus of Auxerre (later sainted by both Roman Catholic and Orthodox churches), and to Britain (to combat Pelagian heresy) Lupus of Troyes. (Germanus, a former military man, led Britains to the "Hallelujah" campaign victory in Wales against Irish, Picts and Saxons.)

By this timeframe had arisen Attila "the Hun," who with his brother, Bleda by 433 had succeeded to rule united Huns, enemies of West and East Roman Empires. The "Hunnic" Empire stretched from Germanic territories to the Ural River (which flows through Russia and Kazakhstan), and from the Danube River to the Baltic Sea.

Between 429-431, Gaiseric's true desires manifested, and he gained support from native African tribes (never happy with Roman rule in their coastal strip), Donatists, and other "heretics" being held in check only by Bishop Augustine's strong hand.³⁷² Gaiseric initially "swept up" the African province, leaving only Carthage, Hippo and Cirta (100 miles west of Hippo) in Roman control.

A siege of Hippo lasted two years; the East willingly supply supplied it by sea; Bonifacius (reconciled with the West's court) twice led in armies; but all was to no avail. In 431 Hippo was taken. (Augustine died before the surrender.) Bonifacius returned to Italy only to be battled by Aetius. Bonifacius won the battle but, wounded by Aetius, died soon after.

431, First Council (third Ecumenical) of Ephesus³⁷³ (Asia Minor) was called amid dispute over teachings of Constantinople's Patriarch Nestorius (who himself had called the council in hope of validating his teachings). The council repudiated Nestorianism,³⁷⁴ condemning its teachings as heresy (precipitating the "Nestorian Schism"),³⁷⁵ condemned Pelagianism also; proclaimed Jesus/ mother as *Theotokos* ("birth-giver to God;" "God-bearer;" "Mother of God").

431, Patriarch of Constantinople, Maximianus.

³⁷² Augustine was an ardent defender of Christianity and battler of various heresies; in the interim his letters, sermons and theological books had spread through the Empire.

³⁷³ This and others of subsequent councils were not accepted by the Assyrian Church of the East.

³⁷⁴ *Nestorianism* = doctrine advanced by Patriarch Nestorius of Constantinople c. 428-431; emphasizes disunion between Jesus' divine and human natures; included rejection of designation, "Mother of God," for Jesus' mother,

³⁷⁵ Some supporters of Nestorius relocated in Persia and affiliated with the Christian Church of the East, parent of later Assyrian Church of the East.'

Beginning with this Council, the title, *Patriarch* (equating with “Chief Priest”), began to be applied to Archbishops of both Western and Eastern branches (and would be ratified in 451 at the Fourth Ecumenical Council of Chalcedon, below). The four Patriarchates (geographical jurisdictions) of Alexandria, Rome, Antioch, and Constantinople originally were considered equals; but the Constantinople archbishop was gaining in pre-eminence.

431, Patriarch Cyril of Alexandria asked the church at Rome to use its influence against Juvenal of Jerusalem’s claim of patriarchal jurisdiction over Palestine. The task was assigned to one Leo, a Tuscan Italian aristocrat and Deacon.

432, Sixtus III was West Patriarch.

434, Patriarch of Constantinople, Proclus.

435, with Egypt in firm control of the East and Africa Rome’s chief granary, a treaty at the Ravenna court legalized Gaiseric and his Vandal kingdom in Africa. By the treaty Gaiseric allowed Carthage to remain Roman (it would be, however, only for the time being)

436, More groups of Burgundians, pushed by Huns, had crossed the Rhine, entered Gaul and now were settled in the southeast corner, temporarily contained by Aetius from further incursion. The Germanic Franks, also pushed into Gaul by Huns, occupied the northeast section, limited there by an Aetius defeat. In the first decades of this fifth century, still more Germanic tribes—Angles, Saxons, Jutes; from north and northeast of Franks on Denmark and west Germany coasts—were forced across the sea and raided Britain, which had fallen back into barbarism.

439, Gaiseric took Carthage, which became his capital and base of a new navy that would make him a terror on the Mediterranean for two decades.

441/442, Saxon mercenaries in Britain revolted.

440, Leo I was West Patriarch.

c.440-50 - Period of civil war and famine in Britain caused by ruling council's weakness and inability to deal with Pictish invasions, aggravated by tensions between Pelagian/Roman factions--vacated towns and cities in ruin; migration of pro-Roman citizens toward west; country beginning to be divided geographically along factional lines. (441 “Gallic Chronicle” records, somewhat prematurely, that “Britain, abandoned by the Romans, passed into the power of the Saxons.”)

440, during Deacon Leo’s absence on the Juvenal matter, Roman Patriarch Sixtus III (a “patron of Pelagius”) died. Deacon Leo was elected to succeed him. The era of the West’s Leo I; to become known as “Pope Leo the Great”) would witness dramatic centralization of Church spiritual and papal authority, whereas regional diocesan bishops in preceding years had known a great deal of authority independent of Rome.

445 June 6, the West’s Patriarch Leo obtained from Emperor Valentinian III a decree recognizing prelate primacy of the Bishop of Rome, whose rulings were to have the force of ecclesiastical law; that any opposition to his rulings would be considered treasonous, with provisions for forcible extradition by provincial governors of any person who refused to answer summons to Rome.

445, ff., Leo I disputed with Patriarch Discorus of Alexandria, that the Egyptian see should follow Rome’s (*i.e.* that the Alexandrian church should have not the tradition of Mark, its founder but that of prince apostle Peter), whereas Egyptian Christians (Copts³⁷⁶) saw the ancient patriarchates as equals.

c.445, Vortigern came to power in Britain.

446, Patriarch of Constantinople, Flavian.

446, Leo I enforced his stance that the seat of the “universal Church” should be “Peter’s” (*i.e.* Rome) in letter to Bishop Anastasius of Thessalonica.³⁷⁷ He sent epistles to Italy bishops requiring they observe

³⁷⁶ Just as the (many) other denominations of Christianity, there are sects of Copticism, the predominant one being Coptic Orthodox Christianity, with minorities such as Coptic Catholicism and various of Protestantism. Copticism’s native language is Egyptian and liturgical, Coptic. The word “Coptic” is an adaptation of the Greek word for “Egyptian,” which during Roman Egypt distinguished the native population and its language, the word itself dating back to Mycenaean Greek. By the 3rd century c.e., the majority of Egypt’s population was Christian, the Church of Alexandria being one of Christendom’s four Apostolic Sees, second only to the Church of Rome.

his precepts and those of predecessors, rebuked especially bishops of Sicily for non-conforming to Roman custom (*e.g.* as to time for baptism), and summoned delegates to Rome to learn proper practice.

A staunch foe of heresy, among other Leo acts would be: to rebuke the diocese of Aquileia for receiving Pelagians into communion without formal repudiation of their errors; hold public debates with, burn books of, and warn Roman Christians against Manichean refugees in Rome that had escaped Vandals; and call a general council in Spain to investigate adherents to "Priscillianism."

Attila's brother Bleda died. Attila now ruled an empire from the Caspian Sea to the Rhine River, crossing the north Roman Empire frontier from end to end. An invasion by Attila of the East branch of the Empire was bought off by an increase of a ton of gold for each year's tribute.

446 - Britons (probably the pro-Roman party) appeal to Consul Aetius, Roman governor of Gaul, for help against Picts and Irish (Scots), but Aetius had his hands full with Attila the Hun.

c.446 Vortigern authorized use of Saxon mercenaries known as *foederati* for defense of northern parts against barbarian attack.

447, Second visit to Britain of St. Germanus (this time accompanied by Severus, Bishop of Trier).

c.447, Britons, aroused to heroic effort, "inflicted a massacre" on their Pict and Irish enemies, and for brief time were left in peace (question if that effort was led by St. Germanus).

c.448, civil warrings and plague ravage Britain. (Death of St. Germanus in Ravenna.)

448, a synod was presided over by Flavian at Constantinople concerning an accusation of heresy by Antioch's Patriarch Domnus II and Bishop Eusebius against one Eutyches, presbyter and archimandrite (a form of superior abbot) at Constantinople. Eutyches vehemently opposed Nestorianism, but his concept of a 'fused' Jesus Christ of both human and divine natures bore implications apparently taken that Jesus' body essentially was different from other human bodies ("monophysitism"). That, reportedly, exceeded the Alexandrine school (specifically under Patriarch Cyril I) which, while espousing the pure union of natures in Jesus, opposed the suggested diminishment of his humanity. When Eutyches' explanations were deemed unsatisfactory, the Council deposed him from his priestly office and excommunicated him.

449, Patriarch of Constantinople, Anatolius (but found titled "Archbishop" before 451).

449, Second (Ecumenical) Council of Ephesus, convened by Dioscorus of Alexandria (subsequently not accepted as ecumenical due to controversy), had at issue whether Flavian at Constantinople in 448 had justly excommunicated the monk, Eutyches, together with his monastery. Record of the council questions pressures, fears, etc. sustained by various attendees, and the 'legality' of proceedings (which later would be reviewed at a 451 Council of Chalcedon, below). In any event, Eutyches was declared orthodox and reinstated; Flavian, Domnus, and Eusebius (who previously had published an appeal for a Roman synod) were deposed; and Flavian, exiled, very shortly died.³⁷⁸

Leo I's famous Latin tome statement of faith addressed to Patriarch Flavian was delivered but failed to be read or heeded.

449, Jutes had established permanent settlements in what now is Kent in the southeast corner of Britain.

In following centuries, the expansion of Anglo-Saxons (used here combinedly for the incurring tribes) would move west and north against fiercely battling Celtic Britons.³⁷⁹

450-451, Theodosius II died and was succeeded by his sister, Pulcheria. Pulcheria, in need of strong support, married Flavius Marcianus *Marcian*, a humbly birthed Thracian but able general. Marcian refused payment to Attila and declared readiness battle, which Attila didn't pursue. Attila, after twice invading the Balkans, marched with auxiliaries (notably conquered Ostrogoths) through Gaul to Orleans, large tracts of land having remained Roman due to Aetius' confinements of Germanic and Frank tribes. Aetius (often termed "the last of the Romans") succumbed to common cause with Visigoth Theoderic I

³⁷⁷ With regard to Greece, Illyria was subject ecclesiastically to Rome per the earlier division line between East and West. Leo's earlier predecessor (Patriarch Innocent I, 401 to 417) had established a vicarage of Thessalonica to oppose increasing influence in the region by Constantinople's patriarch.

³⁷⁸ The Second (Ecumenical) Council of Ephesus is not recognized by Eastern Orthodox, Protestant and Chalcedonian sects. ("Chalcedonian," see at 451 Council of Chalcedon).

³⁷⁹ Celtic defenses would give rise to the legend of King Arthur and his knights.

(son of Alaric) against Attila. Large number of Franks and Burgundians, equally threatened by Attila, also joined the Aetius/Theoderic union,

Anatolius, a new Patriarch of Constantinople after Theodosius II's death, had all Leo I's acceptance.

451, Council of Chalcedon (Bithynia, Asia Minor; convened at Leo I's urging): Patriarch Leo I's 449-delivered tome on the inseparable dual nature of Jesus was read aloud at this Council. Participating bishops claimed Saint Peter had spoken through Leo and recognized him as the head of the Church's body (Leo's tome subsequently was read and recognized everywhere). Monophysitism fully was repudiated and the "Chalcedonian Creed," embracing the *hypostatic* union of Jesus' two natures,³⁸⁰ was adopted.

Twenty-seven disciplinary canons were issued, governing church administration and authority. By a 28th canon, the council bishops sought to raise the statute of the Constantinople ("New Rome") See—that it embraced honor and authority equal to the See of Rome. Patriarch/Pope Leo I in 453 would confirm all the canons except the 28th.³⁸¹

Persons deposed in 449 were reinstated; Dioscorus of Alexandria was deposed; and the bishoprics of Constantinople and Jerusalem formally were established as Patriarchates.³⁸²

451, Attila's forces were defeated by the Aetius/Theoderic coalition near Aetius (often called the "last of the Romans") and Visigothic King Theoderic I (Battle of Chalons/Chalon/Catalaunian Plains/Fields"—in effect a battle of Goth against Goth), some 90 miles east of Paris. Theoderic I died in battle, but the Huns were on the verge of complete defeat.

Aetius, however--using a strategy explained as not wanting Visigoths left strengthened regionally by total victory--sent Theoderic's son, Torismund (who Aetius held as hostage to secure Theoderic's alliance) back to Toulouse with his army (ostensibly to ensure his succession). With retirement of the Visigoth contingents, Attila was able to escape. (According to that strategy, the Visigoths subsequently would become absorbed in civil war, which was the case.)

In this timeframe, as settlements increased in Britain, "three keels" of warriors led by one Hengest³⁸³ arrived at and were welcomed on Britain's shores by Vortigern (known in Latin as *adventus Saxonum*/coming of the Saxons.)

451, after the Chalcedon Council, the Church of Alexandria was divided into those who accepted the council terms, "Chalcedonians"/"Melkites," and those who did not, "non-Chalcedonians"/"Monophysites"/"Miaphysites," the majority belonging to the latter.

452, Hengest's son Octha, arrived with "16 keels" of warriors, who occupied northern lands to defend against Picts (who never were heard from again).

452, Attila regrouped and invaded Italy ("using as excuse" non-fulfillment of his demand for Honoria, Valentinian III's daughter, promised to him). In a three-month siege he took Aquileia (city at north tip of

³⁸⁰ The Creed describes Jesus' full humanity and full divinity as the second person of the Holy Trinity.

³⁸¹ The Council of Chalcedon is considered by Roman Catholics, Eastern Orthodox, Old Catholics, and some other western groups as the Fourth Ecumenical Council, recognized as by Roman Catholic and Eastern Orthodox churches (then one church) as infallible in its definitions; and most Protestants also consider the Trinity as defined to be orthodox doctrine. Those who refused acceptance of the Council, referred to as "Oriental" orthodoxy, describe themselves as "miaphysite" (as opposed to "monophysite.")

³⁸² Among ongoing effects of this Council: a) it has been considered by many Anglican and Protestant Christians as the last of *ecumenical* councils *per se*; b) a schism between Coptic Orthodox and Greek Melchite lineages began after this Council and would become a permanent division in 536, although in the interim both parties still would compete on Alexandria's See; c) after Eutyches' death his doctrines won support of Empress Aelia Eudocia and made considerable progress in Syria; d) in the 6th century, a monk named Jacob Baradaeus would unite various divisions of Eutychians/Monophysites into one church (Syriac Orthodox Church, still in existence).

³⁸³ Hengist/Hengest = legendary Germanic (who with brother, Horsa/Hors) led Angle, Saxon, and Jutish armies; Hengest through his son traditionally is listed as founder of the Kingdom of Kent.

Adriatic Sea). A subsequent advance to Rome went unopposed while Honorius remained holed up at Ravenna. Rome's only hope lay with the Roman Leo I.

The capital's shift to Ravenna had cut the prestige of Milan's bishop, and barbarian grips in Gaul, Spain, and Africa had lessened bishop prestige there. It would be under Leo I that a Roman Patriarch first would achieve reputation as the West's greatest churchman. It is in this era that *Pappas* came to be applied to bishops/patriarchs, especially more important ones; and, despite common listings of all bishops among popes, some consider Leo I (who acted as if he were the Church's premier bishop, such as severely repressing Manichaeism) as the "Papacy's" founder.

Romans, at a desperate pass, turned to Leo. He met the challenge, setting out to confront Attila. They met some 250 miles north of Rome at the Po River and parleyed, Leo urging Attila to forbear against the holy city of Rome. Per tradition, Attila was taken back by Leo's magnificent papal aura and firmness, and turned back (it also possible that Honoria and a generous dowry were involved).

Attila left Italy and that same year died in his tent under mysterious circumstances during the night. His empire was divided between numerous sons (he had a number of wives), and broke up almost immediately in a Germanic revolt that spread over his realm on news of his death.

c. 453, With increased Saxon unrest and more frequent raids on British towns and cities, some Britons would eventually flee to the northwest corner of Gaul (Brittany).

454, the Germanics defeated the last of the Huns, whose hordes faded away.

454, In the West empire branch, reportedly, Valentinian III resented his accomplished general Aetius, to whose son he had promised to give a daughter, and easily was convinced that Aetius was aiming for the throne. Valentinian III was at Rome when Aetius applied for final marriage arrangements. Valentinian suddenly drew his sword and stabbed at Aetius, signaling the court officials to surround the general and finish the job.

455, Valentinian's act against Aetius was despised throughout Italy. Six months after it, men from Aetius' personal guard stabbed him to death. In March, Flavius Anicius *Petronius Maximus* with army's support proclaimed himself Emperor in the West after Valentinian III's death.

Gaiseric had come to control substantial parts of the African mainland, Corsica, Sardinian, the Balearic Islands and the west tip of Sicily—a seeming rebirth of the Carthage empire. In June, he sailed with his fleet from Carthage and arrived at the Tiber River's mouth. Petronius tried to escape but was murdered by a panicked mob hoping to appease the invader. The Vandals entered Rome and sacked it, unopposed. Gaiseric caused no pointless destruction but seized all that was moveable of value (including Jerusalem's holy vessels Titus had conveyed some four centuries earlier).

In July 455, Eparchius *Avitus* (descendant of an old Gallic family) was proclaimed emperor by Visigoth Theoderic II, with whom Avitus had formed an alliance. Peace in Gaul allowed Theoderic II to concentrate on Spain, where by 456 he began to expand his holdings at Suevi expense. (Soon Visigoth rule would extend everywhere from Brittany to Gibraltar, excepting Spain's northern mountains where some Suevi and native Basques independently but precariously held on.

With Rome's imperial throne vacant after Geiseric's sack, Aetius got the East's Marcian to assent to Avitus as West emperor. He had, however, a formidable enemy: Rikimer/Ricimer (a Germanic Arian; son of a Suevian chieftain).

456-457, Ricimer and his fleet defeated Vandals in a fight near the island of Corsica, followed by a land defeat of Vandals near Agrigentum, Sicily. Following his successes, as commander (*magister militum*/"master of the troops") for the West (by then reduced to just Italy and a part of south Gaul), Ricimer gained Senate consent for an expedition against Avitus, who he defeated in October at Piacenza. Avitus, taken prisoner, forcibly was made to be Bishop at Piacenza but shortly after was sentenced to death. General Ricimer mastered politics as well. As the true ruler of Rome for some ensuing 16 years,

he would come to install, control and eliminate several “puppet” emperors/rulers³⁸⁴ in the power vacuum left with the deaths of Valentinian III and Aetius,

Ricimer raised a new army and navy of Germanic mercenaries; left *master militum* General Julius Valerius Majorianus *Majorian* in charge in the West with a fleet at Rome blockading the coast; and proceeded to drive out Vandals that were ravaging Italy’s coast southeast of Rome.

[Also in the mid-5th century, the Frankish Merovingian dynasty (“long-haired” kings as opposed to short-haired Romans and tonsured clergy) came to rule as kings of Franks in Francia, region correspondent to ancient Gaul .³⁸⁵]

Vortigern died; one Vitalinus (Guitolinus) became new leader of pro-Celtic Pelagian faction; battle of Aylesford (Kent) in which Ambrosius, with two Vortigern sons, defeated Hengest for the first time.

458, Constantinople Patriarch Gennadius (to 471).

c.458-60, Saxon uprising in full-swing, Hengest finally conquered Kent in SE Britain. Full-scale migration of British aristocrats and city-dwellers across English Channel to Brittany in NW Gaul (the “second migration”). Ambrosius Aurelianus (scion of the leading Romano-British family) took full control of pro-Roman British faction and led resistance effort, leading to years of back-and-forth fighting with Saxons.

The East’s Emperor Marcian died of natural causes without naming a successor, leaving both branches of the empire without an emperor. Power in the West was in the hands of Ricimer and Majorian; initially in the East, under *magister militum*, Flavius Ardabur *Aspar*. Aspar, a German (and an Arian), was ineligible to sit on the throne. He arranged ‘elevation’ of a lower-ranking, elderly general, Flavius Valerius *Leo*, a Thracian native of Dacia. In the West, Ricimer barred for the same reasons, saw that Majorian was ‘elevated.’

After the (military-influenced) Rome Senate had confirmed Leo as Emperor, Constantinople’s Patriarch also confirmed him as head of state. This first time of an emperor being crowned with the “purple diadem” by a head of the Church would remain unto perpetuity.

East Emperor Leo awarded Ricimer the title *Patricius* (Ricimer as a Germanic tribesman could not be titled *Augustus*). Ricimer’s power over Rome was influential with Germanic peoples of Gaul, Spain, and North Africa. Leo, however, was not one to be Aspar’s puppet. He exchanged the German imperial bodyguard for one of Isaurians (the “Excubitors,” of tribesmen from east Asia Minor) and gave Tarasicodissa, the Isaurian general, a daughter (Ariadne) in marriage. Whereas the West had lost resistance to its realm’s Germanization, in the East under Leo the Thracian it was resisted effectively, as recruits of Issaurians and other peoples of the realm formed a native army capable of keeping the Eastern Empire reasonably intact.

461, Hilarius/Hilary was West Patriarch.

460-461, Majorian, an independent reformer heroically aimed at restoring the West, engaged Theodoric II to ally for an invasion of Gaiseric’s Africa; and an imperial Roman-Goth fleet was assembled at Cartagena, Spain. A lightning strike by Gaiseric, however, wiped it out. Majorian was forced to make peace and returned ignominiously to Rome, where Ricimer forced his resignation. “Five days later” he was dead (circumstances unclear).

Ricimer arranged (over Emperor Leo’s objection) that Flavius Liberius *Serpentius/Severus* was placed on the West’s imperial throne.

461, “Pope” Leo I in the West died.

465, Severus was deposed (taken as assassinated by Ricimer). The West was without an emperor 18 months during which Ricimer was *de facto* ruler. In lengthy negotiations with the East’s Emperor Leo (whose growing strength led him to consider reuniting the empire), Ricimer and Geiseric (then working

³⁸⁴ A puppet ruler essentially is a figurehead that gives the appearance of full authority but is under the control of someone holding greater regional power, primarily military.

³⁸⁵ *Francia/Frankia*/Frankish Empire = territory inhabited and ruled by Franks 3rd to 10th centuries, with greatest expansion to occur in 9th under Charles Martel and Pepin and Charlemagne, Martel’s son and grandson.

together) failed to force acceptance of their candidate. Finally Leo's candidate (son-in-law of Marcian), Procopius *Anthemius* was selected as West emperor, with Ricimer marrying Anthemius' daughter (Alypia).

466-472, a while things were quiet. Anthemius (perhaps the West's last capable emperor) attempted solving primary military challenges--of resurgent Visigoths under King Euric (whose domains straddled the Pyrenees), and of Vandals in control of North Africa. Anthemius appealed for military aid from Britons against the Visigoths; and reliable accounts name one Riothamus³⁸⁶ as leader of a 12,000-man British force against Euric, the bulk of which was destroyed (survivors, including Riothamus, vanished from history)

As to the North Africa campaign, a fleet of 1100 ships and 100,000 men was assembled. Sardinia was taken from the Vandals; on reaching Africa, however, Gaiseric (then in his 70's) sent fire ships into the crowded imperial fleet, which quickly was reduced to shambles.

In **466**, Tarasicodissa, an Isaurian officer of the Excubitors, had brought forth evidence that Ardabur, a son of Aspar, was guilty of treason, causing a rift in Leo I/Aspar relations. East Emperor Leo (who reportedly blamed Aspar for the North African campaign fiasco) managed to have him executed, putting an end to German influence in the East Empire.

467, an alliance of Leo and Tarasicodissa was sealed by marriage of the latter to Ariadne; Tarasicodissa then changed his name to Zeno (as more acceptable to Roman hierarchy and the primarily Greek-speaking Constantinople population). Ariadne's and Zeno's only known son, Leo II, was born within the year.

468, Simplicius was West Patriarch.

c. 470, Ambrosius Aurelianus, Romano-British leader, defeated an opposing faction under Vitalinus (battle of Wallop, Hampshire); he is found referred to as "King" of Britain.

471, Constantinople Patriarch, Acacius (to 488).

472, Ricimer in the West fingered Anthemius and contested his power. At Milan and ready to make war on Anthemius, Ricimer accepted a truce facilitated by Milan's bishop, but before long he was back at Rome with an army of Germans. In July, after a three-month siege, Ricimer took Rome, Anthemius was killed, and Flavius Anicius *Olybrius* (Ricimer's and Geiseric's earlier-favored man) was 'elevated' in the West.

Less than two months later, Ricimer died (possibly of a malignant fever); and his *Patricius* title was assumed by his nephew, Gundobad. By November, Olybrius also had died, of natural causes.

By **473-474**, Saxons had defeated Britons (with great slaughter both sides; battle of "Wippedesfleot") Mutual "disgust and sorrow" resulted in a respite of warring "for a long time" (period of minimal Saxon activity; refortification of ancient hill forts; construction of "Wansdyke" possibly took place).

Men of Kent under Hengest moved westward and drove back Britons "as one flees fire."

473-474, Gundobad³⁸⁷ had left off after his uncle's death to become King of Burgundians. In March of 473 he had placed one Count Glycerius as the West's Emperor, but Glycerius was rejected by the East's Leo, who established one Julius *Nepos* (husband of Leo's niece). In effect, Leo (the Thracian) now was *de facto* ruler also of the West.

474, East Emperor Leo died of dysentery. He legally was succeeded by grandson Leo II, son of Leo's daughter, Ariadne (mother, Verina); Ariadne became Empress Mother. Shortly after, Leo II's mother and

³⁸⁶ Riothamus (title or name), leader of British contingent, is believed by some to be original figure behind the legends of King Arthur.

³⁸⁷ Over time, Gundobad combatted his three brothers for total control of Burgundy; 486 killed one; 493 killed a second, drowned his wife and exiled their two daughters; one, Clotilde, was found by men of Clovis I, King of the Franks, who sent word asking Gundobad to marry her; Gundobad was too afraid to decline; battle with third brother, with whom Clovis sided, raged long; at one point he yielded to Clovis, promising to pay tribute; later he regained power, finally cornered third brother in city of Vienne and murdered him in 501, along with the bishop, in an Arian church. Subsequently as sole king of Burgundy he made peace with Franks and converted to Catholicism.

grandmother prevailed to have Zeno made co-Emperor. Leo II reigned but a few months before he died; Zeno became Emperor. Isaurian General Illus was alienated from Zeno.

The Eastern empire's borders had remained no less intact than they essentially had been for some three centuries, while the West was decimated. King Euric (who in 466 had killed his brother, Theodoric II, and defeated several other Goth chiefs in civil wars) had unified a Visigothic nation in the major part of Gaul, dispossessing Roman land-owners and adapting Roman law to codified Gothic traditions. Southeast of Gaul was under firm control of Burgundians. All that remained in Gaul whose natives might be considered Roman was a small "kingdom" of Soissons in north Gaul, some 60 miles northeast of Paris; but it was independent of the imperial court. Anglo-Saxons had firm hold in southeast Britain,³⁸⁸ and Gaiseric still ruled in Africa. About all that was left to the West's court at Ravenna was Italy and Illyria.

475, a popular uprising against Zeno, supported by Vernia and her brother Flavius Basiliscus, had military support of Illus and Theodoric Strabo. Control of Constantinople was taken; Zeno fled to his native lands with some Isaurians and the imperial treasury. Basiliscus was acclaimed Emperor by the East's Senate and ministers. Constantinople's peoples avenged their loss by killing almost all the Isaurians left in the city.

475 January, Basiliscus executed one Patricius (*magister officiorum*; "a lover of Vernia") to ensure any aspirations she might have had for Patricius' elevation.

475-476, the next person to take control in the West was Orestes, a Roman politician and general who deposed Nepos in Italy. Orestes placed his son, Romulus (then only 14), on the throne in October 475. German mercenaries in Italy (in view of fellow Germans ruling in Gaul, Spain, and Africa) united under one Odoacer (of a less familiar Germanic tribe, the Herulians) and demanded cession of one-third of Italy's land, which Orestes (the power behind his son) denied.

Odoacer and his army forced retreat of Orestes, who was overtaken in north Italy (Ticinum) and executed.

476, Illus and one Amatus defected to Zeno; Theodoric "the Amal" (later known as Theodoric the Great) joined Zeno, who besieged Constantinople in August. Constantinople opened its gates and Zeno resumed the throne.³⁸⁹

476, September 4, Odoacer deposed and sent away Romulus (who subsequently disappeared from record³⁹⁰). That date of the fall of the West capital frequently is taken as the end of the "Roman Empire," which, however, still existed with one capital, at Constantinople, and Zeno as Emperor. True, some western provinces were occupied by Germans but, in theory, still part of the Empire, with German kings ruling as one or another Roman official.

NOTE: Roughly from this point is where historians apply "Byzantine Empire" to the East part of the Roman Empire, although that designation only was first used by historian Hieronymus Wolf (1557 in western Europe, "Byzantine" derived from Byzantium, Constantinople's original name), and did not come into common use in the western world until the 19th century. During most of its history the east empire preserved Romano-Hellenistic traditions, also being known to most of its own northern and western contemporaries as the "Empire of the Greeks" due to the predominance of the Greek element. For purpose of clarity, "Byzantine" will be applied to it herein (and occasionally, when clear, the "East;" and "Constantinople" will be applied to the position of its Patriarchs .

³⁸⁸ 475-515, Legendarily, "Arthur" continued British resistance against Saxon invaders until 515 Battle of Camlann (Crooked Vale); death of "Arthur" and "Medraut"/Mordred."

³⁸⁹ Details are omitted here as to ensuing events involving Ariadne's conflict with her husband (e.g. over the fate of Verina, who had attempted to assassinate Illus); Ariadne nonetheless stayed married to Zeno until his death (491).

³⁹⁰ Technically a usurper, Romulus is considered the last Roman emperor.

In the legal sense, the West Empire would continue to exist until Nepos' death (below, 480).³⁹¹ Zeno never had recognized Romulus, considering Nepos (in exile in Illyria) legally his colleague and Romulus a usurper. Odoacer sent the Imperial insignia to Constantinople, acknowledging Zeno's imperial authority. Through the Senate he requested and received from Zeno the rank of "Patrician." Odoacer ruled only as Zeno's deputy in Italy but as king of the German tribes, who began to take ownership of land.

477, Saxon chieftain Aelle landed on Sussex coast; Britons that engaged him on landing were driven into forest (Weald); coastal holdings by Saxons gradually expanded in Sussex over next nine years.³⁹²

480ff., Nepos was assassinated, upon which Odoacer made a purportedly avenging invasion of Illyria. He did dispose of the assassins but annexed Illyria to his own holdings. Zeno began to look for some way to neutralize Odoacer's ambition. Nepo's death ended any serious legal claim on a West empire independent of the Roman East until rise of the "Holy" Roman Empire (beginning with the Carolingian Dynasty—below, 9th century.)

Ostrogoths, after Attila's death and the Hunnish Empire collapse, had settled south of the Danube in Byzantine territory; now under rule of King Theodoric (to be known as "the Great"), the Ostrogoths were a nuisance to Zeno. Odoacer was a potential menace to the Ostrogoths as well as Zeno, and Zeno speculated that by allying with Theodoric to go after Odoacer, he might kill two birds with one stone, weakening both sides.

483, Felix III was West Patriarch.

486, Aelle/Ella (purported first king of South Saxons) and his sons overreached their usual territory and were engaged by Britons at battle of Mercredesburne--a bloody, indecisive fight that ended with both sides pledging friendship.

488, Constantinople Patriarch, Fravitas (to 489).

489, " " " , Euphemius (to 495).

488-489, Theodoric the Great and his Ostrogoths marched against Odoacer. After winning two battles in Italy, Theodoric put Ravenna under siege.

c.490, Hengest died and was succeeded by son, Aesc (for 34 years).

491, in the East, Zeno died. Widowed Empress Ariadne chose as his successor (and husband) a palace official, Anastasius, as the East's Emperor (to 518).

492, Gelasius I was West Patriarch.

493, Oadacer at Ravenna finally capitulated to Theodoric. They signed a treaty assuring co-rule over Italy; however, following a celebratory banquet, Theodoric killed Odoacer with his own hands. Theodoric the Great was recognized by the East's Anastasius and ruled from Ravenna as Italy's undisputed monarch, as well as over regions north and west of it and of Illyria. Theodoric proved a guard of Roman heritage and did not unduly oppress the Roman population, with minimal injustices to private landowners. Under Theodoric, Romans could reach high rank (just as Germans had, under the Romans). He formed an alliance with the Franks by marrying the sister of Clovis I, King of the Franks, and gave female relatives to princes or kings of the Visigoths, Vandals, and Burgundians.³⁹³

³⁹¹ In general, this marked the end of the Classical Antiquity Period, the time of the ancient Greek and Roman world and its cultures from roughly 500 b.c., and the ushering in of the Middle Ages. Although the transition allows for variances, it generally was the period of European history between roughly the fall of the West of the Roman Empire to supravention of the East. (Not until the 15th century would the term, "Byzantine," be applied to the latter). The Middle Ages also are found separated into "Early Middle Age" (5th-8th/9th centuries (frequently referred to as the "Dark Age" as a reflection of cultural and economic deterioration in Europe concomitant with the decline of the Rome), and the "High Middle Age" (10th to 15th centuries (identified with the institutional unification of the Roman Catholic Church). The term "Dark Age," however, has been found scholarly to be misleading, given actual accomplishments during the period, the term merely contrasting with the Renaissance.

³⁹² 485-96=period of Arthur's "twelve battles" during which he gained reputation for invincibility.

³⁹³ By the late 5th century, Franks had pushed Visigoths west of the Pyrenees.

c.495, Cerdic (probably [later], the first King of Anglo-Saxon Wessex; historically he is cited as founding the Kingdom of Wessex and ancestor of all its subsequent kings), with his son, landed somewhere on Britain's south coast.

495, Constantinople Patriarch, Macedonius (to 511).

496, Anastasius II was West Patriarch.

c.496 - Britons, under overall command of Ambrosius (and battlefield command of the "war leader, Arthur") defeated Saxons at Siege of Mount Badon. Saxon advance was halted, invaders returning to their own enclaves; a generation of peace ensued.

498, Symmachus was West Patriarch.

c.500-550, Franks conquered almost all of Gaul and established extensive empire. Celtic monasticism spread through Europe. Concomitantly over these 50 years, Britain was made ripe for final Saxon supremacy by Romano-British corrupt leadership, more civil turmoil, public forgetfulness and individual apathy. Partition of Britain between Brits and Saxons followed.

c.501, great British chieftain Geraint, King of Dumnonia, was killed at Battle of Llongborth (probably Portsmouth). ("Arthur" is mentioned in Welsh poem commemorating battle.)

507, Battle of Vouille fought in north marches of Visigothic territory near Poitiers (Gaul), between Franks under Clovis I (who won, allowing Franks to control SW part of France and capture Toulouse) and Visigoths of Alaric II, conqueror of Spain. Clovis' conversion to Christianity brought him Roman recognition and appointment as consul by Byzantine emperor Anastasius. Previously, however, Clovis had defeated the Soissons; there was no territory remaining that still was being ruled by native peoples in what had been the West Empire, no a ruler anywhere in the West truly directly descended from the Roman tradition.

Theodoric the Great became regent for the infant Visigoth king, Amalric, his grandson, after the Franks defeated of Alaric II, and managed to defeat Frank incursions.

508, Cerdic began to move inland and defeated British king Natanleod near present-day Southampton.

511, Constantinople Patriarch, Timothy I (to 518).

514, Hormisdas was West Patriarch.

c.515 - Death of Sussex King Aelle; Sussex passed to Cissa and descendents but over time diminished into insignificance.

518, Constantinople Patriarch, John II the Cappadocian (to 520).

518-527, Byzantine Emperor (Dynasty of Justinian) Justin.

519, Kingdom of West Saxons/Wessex founded, Cerdic its first ruler.

520, advent of philosopher Boethius (*magister officiorum*/head of Ostrogoth government and courts).³⁹⁴

520, Constantinople Patriarch, Epiphanius (to 535).

522, Catholic Burgundian King Sigismund killed his own son (Theodoric's grandson).

523, John I was West "Pope."³⁹⁵

³⁹⁴ A dedicated Hellenist and scientist, Boethius was dedicated to translating into Latin and harmonizing works of Aristotle and Plato.

³⁹⁵ The appellation, *Pappas* (English *papa*, from which *Pope* later derived), appearing in mid-5th century, did not denote higher hierarchical or ecclesiastical rank than "Patriarch." Greek "*pappas*," is defined as a "childish" form of the Greek word expressions, "to say; call father." Per extant record, the term was used in a letter of a Roman Bishop Dionysius, in which he forwarded a "rule and ordinance from our blessed *pappas*," Patriarch Heracleus of Alexandria (232-249 c.e.). It is uncertain which Rome bishop first carried the title, suggestions varying from Pope Marcellinus (who died 304 c.e.) to 6th century Pope John I. From the 6th century the imperial chancery at Constantinople did designate the term for the Bishop of Rome. In the 11th century Pope Gregory would declare it reserved for the Bishop of Rome. Formal references to a Patriarch would require that his title clearly be attributed to jurisdictional region, never to the apostolic founder of his particular throne—e.g. "Pope of Alexandria and Patriarch of all Africa" rather than the inappropriate title, "Pope of Alexandria and Patriarch of the See of Saint Mark." The title of a Patriarchate (in accordance with the Ecumenical Canon Laws of the Universal Church--Nicea, Constantinople and Chalcedon) reflects, for example, that, in the case of the Bishop of Alexandria he has under his

523, Theodoric retaliated on Sigismund, invading the Burgundian kingdom and annexing its south part, while Franks captured Sigismund. The rest of Burgundian territory was ruled by Godomar, Sigismund's brother, an Arian, under Goth protection against the Franks.

524-526, Theodoric (possibly suspecting Boethius a sympathizer of the East's Justin, ordered Boethius (whom he had imprisoned earlier) executed (525).

Catholic Vandal King Hilderic prevailed on Theodoric territory; before Theodoric could plan a recouping expedition he died at Ravenna. He was succeeded by grandson, Athalaric, first by his mother, Amalasuntha, Regent Queen (to 534). But the Ostrogoth Kingdom began to wane. At the end of the reign of Theodoric, the Arian, relations deteriorated with the East's Justin I, as quarrels over Arianism arose among his Roman subjects. Theodoric's ability had kept the Byzantines from waging war, but that would change after his death.

At this stage, the Byzantine Empire was still intact and would continue with great emperors;³⁹⁶ however, it would move apart from developments of new civilization in the West. Others would enter the stage--Lombards, Northmen, Arabians—but it would be the Franks who would become heirs to Rome; their culture, centered on Paris, would lead on into the High Middle Ages.

[Note: From this point forward the East is referred to as the "Byzantine" Empire.]

526, Felix IV was West Pope.

526 (to 532), the Byzantine Empire and Persia were at war; Persia emerged victorious.

527 (to 565), Byzantine Emperor, Justinian I.

Emperor Justinian I ordered codification of Roman law ("Corpus Juris"). In 529 he closed Athens schools(Neoplatonic Academy) that had flourished 1,000 years (taken as the end of the final phase of "Antiquity," and inauguration of the period of Christianity between the latter part of the fourth century to the sixth).

Justinian I's laws first tangibly expressed the concept of a "Pentarchy" (Greek *pente*, five; *arche*, rule)--universal rule of Christendom by leaders of five major patriarchates (sees) at Rome, Constantinople, Alexandria, Antioch, and Jerusalem (the latter receiving a ceremonial place due to its role in Christianity's earliest days and its ongoing importance in Holy Land pilgrimages.)³⁹⁷ The Constantinople Patriarchate gradually had emerged at the fore, following its establishment as the imperial residence in the fourth century, thereafter holding sway over other Eastern sees. Its consistent ranking just after Rome's prevented the "Pentarchy" from being fully administrative.

Byzantine General Belisarius took Naples.

530, Boniface II was West Pope.

c.530-40, mass migration of Celtic monks to Brittany (the "third migration").

531, King Chosroes I of Persia incorporated southern Arabia and western Turkestan into the Persian kingdom.

533, John II was West Pope.

534, death of Cerdic; son Cynric takes kingship.

535, Constantinople Patriarch, Anthimus (to 536).

535, Agapitus I was West Pope.

535, Byzantine General Belisarius invaded Italy mainland and began conquest in south Italy.

Rebellion broke out in the Ostrogoth kingdom.

536, Constantinople Patriarch, Menas (to 552).

dominion the Egyptian Provinces, Pentapolis, Libya and Nubia, (at that time the extent of the explored, civilized parts of the East African Continent). The title, "Pope," will be used hereafter.

Priscus appears originally to have been termed "Deacon." Zealous for orthodoxy, he sent delegates to the First Council of Ephesus, which condemned Nestorians. (Greek translations from lost Latin originals of some of his letters are extant, written to bishops of Africa, Illyria, Thessalonica, and elsewhere.)

³⁹⁶ The heart of the Byzantine Empire essentially comprised the Balkan peninsula and parts of Asia Minor.

³⁹⁷ See also at 692.

- 536**, Silverius was West Pope.
- 537**, Byzantine General Belisarius entered Rome.
- 537**, Vigilius was West Pope.
- 538**, Buddhism introduced in Japan.
- c.542**, Battle of Camlann.³⁹⁸
- 543**, Constantinople suffered a great plague.
- 549**, King Totila of the Ostrogoths captured Rome and Naples.
- 550**, Byzantine Empire at its greatest extent under Justinian I.
- 552**, Constantinople Patriarch, Eutychius (to 565).
- 553**, Justinian I conquered the Ostrogoths ("Battle of Mons Lactarius").
- 553**, a Second Council of Constantinople involved repudiation of purported Nestorian-based writings.
- 556**, Pelagius I was West Pope.
- 561**, John III was West Pope.
- 563**, Saint Columba, Irish monk, founded a monastery on island of Iona and began conversion of Picts to Christianity.
- 565**, Constantinople Patriarch, John III Scholasticus (to 577).
- 565-578**, Byzantine Emperor Justin II.
- 570**, Muhammad (Muhammad bin 'Abdullah bin 'Abdul-Muttalib, etc.) was born in Mecca.
- 572** (to 591), the Byzantine and Persian empires were at war.
- 575**, Lombards, dominant in north Italy, adopted Arianism.
- 575**, Benedict I was West Pope.
- 577**, Constantinople Patriarch, Eutychius, restored (to 582).
- 578-582**, Byzantine Emperor Tiberius II (I) Constantine.
- 579**, Pelagius II was West Pope.
- 582**, Constantinople Patriarch, John IV Nesteutes (to 595).
- 582-602**, Byzantine Emperor Maurice.
- 584**, Anglo-Saxon kingdom of Mercia founded in Britain.
- 585**, Visigoths conquered "Suevi kingdom"³⁹⁹--confederation of Germanic peoples including tribes Marcomanni, Quadi, Hermunduri, Semnones, Langobardes (Lombards), and Alemanni--term seemingly used casually to describe wide range of Germanic peoples.
- 589**, King Recarred of the Visigoths joined the Catholic Church at the Council of Toledo; Spain was brought to peace.
- 590**, King Chosroes II of Persia was successful in the warring against Constantinople and annexed Asia Minor and Egypt.
- 590**, Gregory I the Great was West Pope.⁴⁰⁰
- Plague raged in Rome.
- 596**, Constantinople Patriarch, Cyriacus (to 606).
- 597**, Roman brand of Christianity was brought to Britain for first time by St. Augustine, sent from Pope Gregory I to convert Saxons. Augustine founded a monastery and first church at Canterbury and became its first Archbishop.
- 602-610**, Byzantine Emperor Phocas.
- 604**, Sabinianus was West Pope.
- 607**, Constantinople Patriarch, Thomas I (to 610).

³⁹⁸ --per *Annales Cambriae* (Geoffrey of Monmouth), marks death or unspecified other demise of King Arthur.

³⁹⁹ *Suevi/Suebi* = group of Germanic peoples first mentioned by Julius Caesar in connection with a successful campaign c. 58 b.c. and had remained periodic threat on the Rhine. Elements of Suevi would be included with Alamanni when the latter brushed aside Roman defenses and occupied Alsace and from there Bavaria and Switzerland. Except for a pocket in Swabia and migrants to modern Galicia in Spain and Northern Portugal, no more was heard of the Suevi.

⁴⁰⁰ First pope to use titles, *Servus servorum Dei* and *Pontifex Maximus*.

- 607**, Boniface III was West Pope.
- 608**, Boniface IV was West Pope.
- 610**, Constantinople Patriarch, Sergius (to 638).
- 610**, the Arabian Muhammad began his Islamic sect teachings.⁴⁰¹
- 622-623**, Muhammad fled from Mecca to Medina; his followers raided Meccan caravans; his forces defeated the Meccans in the battle of Badr; Badr defeat was avenged by Meccans (battle of Uhud). Muhammad urged Byzantine empire leaders to adopt Islamism.
- 610-641**, Byzantine Emperor (Dynasty of Heraclius) Heraclius I; he restored law and order in the Empire.
- 615**, Deusdeit/Adeodatus I was West Pope.
- 619**, Boniface V was West Pope.
- 625**, Honorius I was West Pope.
- 627**, Byzantine Heraclius I defeated the Persians at Nineveh.
- 629**, Muhammad, who returned to Mecca, was undisputed master of Arabia.
- 632**, Muhammad died. He was succeeded by his son-in-law, Abu Bekr /Bakr as first post-Muhammad Caliph;⁴⁰² with General Khalid he waged several wars, defeating rebellions of several tribes, and unifiedly made stable the whole Arabian peninsula.
- 634**, Umar ibn al-Khattab/Omar (a “companion” of Muhammad) became second Caliph of the Islamic empire (to 644).
- 636**, an Arabian victory at Yarmuk opened Syria to Islamic conquest.
- 637**, Jerusalem surrendered to Omar.
- The Persian Sassanid Dynasty at Kadessia was defeated by Persian general Rustam.
- 638**, Constantinople Patriarch, Pyrrhus I (to 641).
- 640**, Severinus was West Pope.
- 640**, John IV was West Pope.
- 641**, Byzantine Emperor Heraclonas.
- 641**, Byzantine Emperor Constantine III.
- 641**, Constantinople Patriarch, Paul II (to 653).
- 641-668**, Byzantine Emperors Constans II; Gregory 646-647; Olympius 649-653.
- 642**, Theodor I was West Pope.
- 644**, Uthman ibn ‘Affan / Othman/ of the Meccan Umayyad clan/Quarish tribe (“companion” of Muhammad) was third to assume the Caliphate; under his rule the Arabian empire expanded into “Fars” (present-day Iran), began conquest of Armenia in the 640’s, and in 651 expanded into some areas of present-day Afghanistan.
- 641-646**, Muhammeden Arabians conquered the Byzantines in Alexandria, Egypt, there being practically no native resistance. (However, Egyptian resistance and rebellion, to heavy taxation and Christian persecutions under the Arabians (depending on the ruling Caliphate), soon would surface and continue to about the 9th century c.e.)
- 649**, Martin I was West Pope.
- 651**, Arabians conquered Persia.
- 654**, Constantinople Patriarch, Pyrrhus I, restored.
- 654**, Eugene I was West Pope.
- 654**, Constantinople Patriarch, Peter (to 666).

⁴⁰¹ Historical literature frequently employs the word, *Saracen*, an ancient Roman term used to refer to Arabians and expanded in the Middle Ages to include all who professed Islamism/Muslimism, including non-Arabians. By 1905 and the Crusades, “Saracen” and “Muslim” were synonymous in European chronicling, the term extended particularly to inhabitants of Sicily and south Italy.

⁴⁰² The *Rashidun Caliphate* (“Rightly Guided Caliphate”), founded after Muhammad’s death, embraced first four caliphs. At its height it would range from the Arabian Peninsula to the Levant, Caucasus, and North Africa in the west and Iranian highlands and Central Asia in the east--the largest historical empire to that time.

655, Byzantine Empire fleet was defeated by Arabians off Lycia.

656 (to 661), Ali ibn Abi Talib/Ali was the fourth Arabian Caliph after the murder of Uthman (the “First Fitna”).⁴⁰³

657, Vitalian was West Pope.

661 (/656?), Ali, the fourth Arabian Caliph, was murdered; Muawiya became Caliph.

667, Constantinople Patriarch, Thomas II (to 669).

668, Muawiya attacked Constantinople by sea; it would be besieged until 677.

669, Constantinople Patriarch, John V (to 675).

668-685, Byzantine Emperors Constantine IV; Mezezius 669.

672, Adeodatus II was West Pope.

676, Constantinople Patriarch, Constantine I (to 677).

676, Donus was West Pope.

677, Constantinople Patriarch, Theodor I (to 679).

678, Agatho was West Pope.

679, Constantinople Patriarch, George I (to 686).

680, Bulgarian Empire founded.

682, Leo II was West Pope.

680/681, Third Council of Constantinople ordained that *monoenergism/monothelitism*⁴⁰⁴ were heretical, extending Jesus’ description as being of two energies and two wills (divine and human). (This council is counted as the Sixth Ecumenical Council by Roman Catholic and Eastern Orthodox churches.)

684, Benedict II was West Pope.

685 (to 695), Byzantine Emperor Justinian II.

685, John V was West Pope.

686, Conon was West Pope.

687, Constantinople Patriarch, Paul III (to 693).

687, Sergius I was West Pope.

692, Quinisext (“Fifth-Sixth”) Council (/Council of Trullo; held at Constantinople), intending to complete the drawing of disciplinary canons, was attended exclusively by Eastern Roman Empire bishops (215 total; one Basil of Gortyna, Illyria of the Rome Patriarchate did attend, claiming himself a “papal legate”). Besides reiterating previously elected canons and regulations aimed at eliminating pagan practices, new rules introduced favored customs of the Constantinople Patriarchate, such as priest or deacon marriage. Pope Sergius I protested and refused to sign off on the canons, supported by the imperial army from Ravenna (mainly native Italians) who marched to Rome and neutralized a military delegation Justinian II had sent to induce Sergius’ signature; and western churches repudiated ecumenical status of the Quinisext Council. (Justinian and the Quinisext Council had recognized only “Chalcedonian” churches in the Empire, excluding churches outside the Empire from pentarchical eligibility (e.g. the then-flourishing Church of the East in Sassanid Persia, seen as heretical, and non-Chalcedonian claimants within pentarchical regions also were considered illegitimate.⁴⁰⁵)

⁴⁰³ A struggle had ensued as to who was legitimate successor of the caliphate, setting off the first major civil war within the Caliphate, initiating trends that resulted in Islamism’s division into Sunni and Shi’a sects. The division into Sunni and Shi’a Muslim sects (which share fundamental beliefs of faith but over time have come to embrace some differences of practice *vis-à-vis* the religion and its texts), initially arose from political differences as to leadership after Muhammad died. Reportedly, Sunnis agreed with (some writings of) Muhammad adherents, that a new leader should come from persons capable of the job (as was done with Abu Bakr). Contradictors believed that leadership belonged within the prophet’s family (if not someone appointed directly by him or by God). The latter believed that leadership immediately after Muhammad’s death belonged to his son-in-law (and cousin), Ali, who was married to Muhammad’s (they maintained, only surviving) daughter, Fatima.

⁴⁰⁴ *Monothelitism* held that Jesus had two natures but only one will (a tenet of the *monophysite* school).

⁴⁰⁵ Justinian’s land policies threatened the aristocracy and his taxations and resettlements were unpopular with the commonweal, as his agents extracted funds to gratify sumptuous imperial tastes, factors that combined with

687, Pepin of Heristal united all Franks under his rule.

693, Constantinople Patriarch, Callinicus I (to 705).

695 (to 698), Byzantine Emperor Leontius.

697/698, Arabians conquered and destroyed Carthage, renewed advance after a forced retreat from a 670 invasion yielding the conquest.)

698-705, Byzantine Emperor Tiberius III(II).

Seventh century Islamic conquests of Antioch, Jerusalem, and Alexandria left Constantinople virtual authority in the East (the concept of a "Pentarchy" losing all significance). The East-West schism, the culmination of tensions, was followed by rise of largely independent and powerful metropolitan sees and patriarchates outside the Byzantine Empire (e.g. in Bulgaria, Serbia and Russia), with the concomitant erosion of eminence of the old imperial sees.

701, John VI was West Pope.

705, Arabian Caliph al Walid I proceeded to carry his Empire's west boundary to the Pyrenees mountains.

705, Constantinople Patriarch, Cyrus (to 711).

705, John VII was West Pope.

705-711, Byzantine Emperor Justinian II (restored).

706, Arabic language in Egypt.

708, Sisinnius was West Pope (21 days).

708, Constantine was West Pope.

711, The Umayyid, Taric (Tariq ibn Ziyad/Zeyad-- initially a deputy in North Africa and General under Caliph al Walid I--launched from Morocco's north coast and conquered Spain and Portugal (the former "Visigothic Kingdom").

711, Moorish Islamic conquest began in Iberia, initiating *the Reconquista*, a 500-year period during which several Christian kingdoms of Iberian Peninsula fought to retake and repopulate the Iberian Peninsula.

711-713, Byzantine Emperor Bardanes.

712, Constantinople Patriarch, John VI (to 715).

713-716, Byzantine Emperor Anastasius II.

715, Constantinople Patriarch, Germanicus I (to 730).

715, Gregory II was West Pope.

715, Sulayman bin Abd al-Malik/aka "Suleiman," younger brother of Walid I, was Arabian Caliph (to 717).

716-717, Byzantine Emperor Theodosius III.

717-741, Byzantine Emperor (Isaurian Dynasty) Leo III.; with son Constantine V as co-Emperor after 720 (Artabasdos, son-in-law of Leo III, a rival 741-742).

717, Calliph Suleiman besieged but failed to take Constantinople.

720, Arabians crossed the Pyrenees into France.

718, Moorish Islamic rule at widest extent with conquest of almost all Iberian Peninsula, the Pyrenees, and into southern France; *Reconquista* began in far north (Battle of Covadonga).

730, Constantinople Patriarch, Anastasius (to 754).

731, Gregory III was West Pope.

732, Charles Martel (Charles "the Hammer"), Frank political and military leader, won a decisive defeat over Arabians at Poitiers. Islamists were prevented from progress into west Europe and any farther than Spain.

religious discontent eventually to drive subjects into rebellion. When in 695 the population rose under Leontios of Hellas and proclaimed him Emperor, Justinian was deposed, his nose cut off (to prevent any future qualification for the throne (unblemished appearance being a requirement of Imperial rule), and he was exiled.

740/741-775, Byzantine Emperors Constantine V Copronymus (son of Leo III); Artabasdos 742-743.

741, Zachary was West Pope.

Copronymus decidedly broke up Arabian power by defeating them at battle of Akroinon/Acroinon (Phrygia, on west bank of Anatolian plateau), the Byzantines led by Leo III and Constantine V, halting Arabian advance into Anatolia.

743, Walid II became Caliph.

749, Arabian Abbasid dynasty drove the Omayyads from full power; the Omayyads kept Spain.

751, Leo IV (the Khazar), Byzantine co-Emperor with father, Constantine V.

751/752, Pepin III (Pepin "the Short", son of Charles Martel, grandfather of Charles the Great/Charlemagne) was appointed by Pope Zachary as King of the Franks, deposing King Childeric III, the last of the Salian Merovingian dynasty (which for some decades had found itself shunted into simply a ceremonial role).

752, Stephen "II" was elected West Pope but died three days before consecration.

752, Stephen II [actually "III"] was West Pope.

Stephen II reconfirmed Pepin's appointment and crowned him King of the Franks, officially displacing Childeric III.

754, Constantinople Patriarch, Constantine II (to 766).

754, Stephen II reconfirmed Pepin III as King of the Franks.

757, Paul I was West Pope.

766, Constantinople Patriarch, Nicetas I (to 780).

768, Stephen III ["actually "IV"] was West Pope.

768, Pepin III died.

Carolingian Charles the Great/*Charlemagne* became King of the Franks (numbered Charles I in German and France regnal lists); he was joined in his rule by his brother, Carloman. (Charlemagne would proceed to expand Frankish kingdom into an enlarged empire that would incorporate much of western and central Europe, to include most of "France," "Germany," and Northern Italy.)

Charlemagne also continued his father's policy toward, and became protector of the papacy, forming connections with the Catholic Church and its highest lords.

772, Adrian I was West Pope.

772, commencement of the Saxon Wars under Charlemagne----campaigns to conquer Saxony (18 battles in all). Despite repeated setbacks, Saxons were steadfast under their leader, Widukind.

774, Charlemagne conquered the Italy region of Lombardy and ruled over northern Italy.

775, Byzantine Emperor Leo IV.

776, Constantine VI (son of Leo IV and Irene of Athens) co-Emperor with his father.

780-797, Byzantine Emperor Constantine VI (until 709 with mother as Regent).

780, Constantinople Patriarch, Paul IV (to 784).

778, Charlemagne suffered an unusual ly bad defeat at the hands of Basques (Battle of Roncevalles), retreating from a proposed response to combat Moorish incursions into Spain at the request of Barcelona's governor (having been promised several Iberian cities in return).

781, "Louis the Pious," son of Charlemagne, was King of Aquitaine. During his reign in Aquitaine, he was charged with defense of the Empire's southwest frontier.

782, Battle of Verden in lower Saxony was won by Charlemagne (reportedly 4500 Saxons and leaders were massacred). Widukund and some tribal supporters escaped to Denmark.

By 804 the last of Saxon resistance would be crushed. All Saxon tribal leadership was lost as the Saxons fell subject to Charlemagne rule. He forcibly converted them from Germanic "paganism" to

Germanic Christianity, as all of Saxony was absorbed into the Frank realm and governed by Charlemagne's Frankish counts (paving way for later Ottonian dynasty⁴⁰⁶).

784, Constantinople Patriarch, Tarasius (to 806).

785, Saxon Widukund returned, giving up his fight, and was baptized Christian.

789, Morocco became independent.

795, Leo III was West Pope.

c. 796/803, Krum was Khan of Bulgaria, under whom Bulgarian territory doubled, spreading from middle Danube to Snieper and from Odrin to Tatra Mountains.

797-802, Byzantine Empress Irene.

800, December 25, Pope Leo III (hostile toward Empress Irene⁴⁰⁷) crowned Charlemagne *Imperator Augustus* (to 814--making Charlemagne rival of Byzantine Emperor in Constantinople)--an uneasy alliance given continuous struggle twixt Church and kings for supreme temporal authority.⁴⁰⁸

Charlemagne was Emperor of the then "Carolingian" Empire (or "West Roman" Empire).

Although Charlemagne and his successors were emperors over the territories of the former West Roman Empire, they did not at first call themselves "Roman Emperors" *per se* (possibly so as to not provoke the East Roman Emperor at Constantinople). Ensuing Germanic dynastic inheritors would use the title, *Augustus*, however, in their estimation as direct successors of the West Roman Empire.

Franks reconquered all the Pyrenees (the Marca Hispanica), and the empire under Charlemagne reunited most of Western Europe. Charlemagne's rule, associated with a "Carolingian renaissance," also saw the revival of art, religion, and culture, through the medium of Catholic Church, and encouraged formation of a common European identity. It heralded the monarchy whose kings would become emperors of the nascent "Holy" Roman Empire."⁴⁰⁹

801, "Louis the Pious" of the Franks retook Barcelona from Moors.⁴¹⁰

802-811, Byzantine Emperor Nicephorus I (former finance minister).

806, Constantinople Patriarch, Nicephorus (to 815).

811, Byzantine Emperor Staurakios/Strauracius (son of Nicephorus I).

811-813, Byzantine Emperor Michael I (Rangabe; son-in-law of Nicephorus; brother-in-law of Sauracius).

813-820, Byzantine Emperor Leo V (the Armenian) and son Constantine (/Symbatios).

813-814, "Louis the Pious" as Louis I was Co-Emperor with father Charlemagne of the then 'Carolingian Empire.' Louis I reasserted Frankish authority over Pamplona and the Basques south of the Pyrenees.

Like Louis I, Charlemagne's direct successors legitimately would maintain the title of Roman Emperor with or without papal confirmation.

⁴⁰⁶ By end of 8th century Frankish state had hold over large W Europe parts, Carolingian Empire dominating most of Western Europe, which empire gradually would evolve into France and Holy Roman Empire. (It is unclear to what extent various W European groups described themselves as "Franks," ethnic definitions varying by period and point of view, with many in the East using "Franks" in reference to W Europeans and Roman Catholic Christians in general.)

⁴⁰⁷ Irene Sarantapechaina/Irene of Athens or Irene/the Athenian was Byzantine empress regnant 797-802, having previously been empress consort 775-780 and empress mother and regent 780-797; she called herself *basileus*/ 'emperor' rather than *basilissa*/ 'empress'.

⁴⁰⁸ Charlemagne's "crowning" precipitated the requirement of papal imprimatur for Holy Roman Emperor legitimacy and heralded the monarchy whose kings would become emperors of the later "Roman Empire of the German Nation."

⁴⁰⁹ Charlemagne's title was styled, "most serene Augustus, crowned by God, great and pacific emperor, governing the Roman Empire"--the prior standard designation having been "August Emperor of the Romans" (*Romanorum Imperator Augustus*).

⁴¹⁰ *Moors* = various populations of north African descent, who derived from religions other than but eventually embraced Islamism and had come to occupy territory they called Al Andalus, parts of Spain and Portugal (Iberian peninsula). Scholars have observed that "Moor" has no true ethnological value.

814, Charlemagne died and son Louis I became sole ruler of the Franks/"Francia," which position he would hold until death (save for a brief deposal 833–34). He included adult sons—Lothair, Pepin, and Louis—in the government and sought to establish suitable division of his realm among them.

814,, Louis I (son of Charlemagne) **was Emperor of the then Carolingian Empire.**

815, Constantinople Patriarch, Theodosius I Kassiteras (to 821).

816, Stephen IV [actually "V"] was West Pope.

817, Paschal I was West Pope.

820-829, Byzantine Emperor (Phrygian Dynasty) Michael II (the Stammerer/the Amorian); (also found, ? Thomas 821-823).

821, Constantinople Patriarch, Antony I (to 836).

824, Eugene II was West Pope.

827, Valentine was West Pope (briefly).

827, Gregory IV was West Pope.

829-842, Byzantine Emperor Theophilus (son of Michael II).

830's, the Frank Empire/Francia was torn by civil war between Louis I's sons while their father was still alive.

836, Constantinople Patriarch, John VII Grammaticus (to 843).

840, Louis I died. Order largely had been restored to the Frank Empire but his death was followed by three years of civil war. Ultimately all parts of the Carolingian Empire remained a separate entity under that dynasty's rule, but Louis I's son Lothair retained the Imperial title. Three "Francias" (which in reality lacked historical or ethnic identity binding their varied peoples) were established by the Treaty of Verdun (below, 843).

842-867, Byzantine Emperor Michael III (son of Theophilus; to 855 under regency of his mother , Theokistos.

843, Treaty of Verdun: The treaty ended a three-year Carolingian civil war between Louis I's three sons, yielding division of the Carolingian territories between Charlemagne's grandsons.

After Louis I's death, Lothair I (who had been named co-Emperor with his father some five years previous) had claimed lordship over his brothers and supported a claim by nephew Pepin to be king of the large province of Aquitaine in west France. Lothair's forces were had been defeated in 841 by brothers Louis "the German" and "Charles the Bald" ("Battle of Fontenay"), and Lothair I became willing to negotiate his brothers' alliance. By the terms:

Lothair I retained the Emperor title (which conferred nominal overlordship of his brothers' lands); and he received the Carolingian empire's central portion ("Middle Francia;" what later would be, from north to south, the Low Countries, Lorraine, Alsace, Burgundy, Provence; the Kingdom of Italy that occupied the north half of that peninsula; and the two 'imperial' cities of Aachen and Rome).

Louis the German received the eastern portion of Carolingian territories ("East Francia"/*Francia Orientalis/Kingdom of the East Franks*), with guarantee of kingship over those lands to the east of the Rhine and to the north and east of Italy (precursor to the later conglomeration of disparate states that would proceed through the [later] "Holy" Roman Empire to modern Germany).

Charles the Bald received the west part of the Carolingian territory ("West Francia"), all lands west of the Rhone (which later would become France.)

Lothair I was Emperor of the then Carolingian Empire.

843, Constantinople Patriarch, Methodius (to 847).

844, Sergius II was West Pope.

844, Lothair I ceded Italy to his eldest son Louis II.

847, Leo IV was West Pope.

847, Constantinople Patriarch, Ignatius I (to 858).

850, Lothair I made Louis II co-Emperor.

855, Lothair I died.

Lothair's territory was divided as follows: son Louis II retained the Kingdom of Italy; son Charles of Provence received the Kingdom of Burgundy and son Lothair II received his father's remaining territory (subsequently called "Lotharingia").

Louis II was Emperor of the then Roman [Carolingian] Empire.

855, Benedict III was West Pope.

858, Nicholas I " " .

858, Constantinople Patriarch, Photius I the Great (to 866).

858, Louis II, having received no additional territory, allied with uncle Louis the German against his brothers. Lothair II shortly reconciled with Louis, brother, and Louis, uncle shortly after; Charles of Provence retreated and was saved when Louis II was denied election as King of Germany. (860 Charles the Bald would invade Charles of Provence's Burgundy kingdom but be repulsed.)

c. 858 (/929), Asian Al-Battani/Albategnius/Albategni/Albatenius, Islamic astronomer and mathematician, introduced a number of trigonometric relations; his work frequently was to be quoted by many medieval astronomers, including Copernicus.

862, Lothair II ceded lands to Louis II "for support in a divorce from his wife."

863, Charles of Provence/Burgundy died and Louis II inherited that kingdom.

867-886, Byzantine Emperors (Macedonian Dynasty⁴¹¹) Basil I (of Armenian origin; also found, ?Constantine 869-879).

867, Constantinople Patriarch, Ignatius I, restored.

867, Commenced period of Macedonian Dynasty of Byzantine Empire (to 1056; label, "Macedonian Renaissance/renaissance/renascence"/Middle Byzantine Renaissance/First Byzantine Renaissance [the Palaeologan Renaissance from 13th century on being alternately used]⁴¹²).

867, Adrian II was West Pope.

869, Lothair II died and left no legitimate heir.

870, Treaty of Meerssen: Lothair II's kingdom was divided between uncles Charles the Bald and Louis the German (the latter involved in disputes with his own three sons)

871 (to 899), Alfred the Great was King of Wessex; noted for defense of Anglo-Saxon kingdoms of south England against Vikings;⁴¹³ first king of West Saxons styling himself "King of the Anglo-Saxons."

"Britain" by the ninth century was composed primarily of Angles, Saxons, Jutes, and Celts. (The south, settled by Anglo-Saxons, came to be called Angle Land ["England"]; the north part was named after the inhabiting Celtic tribe "Scotti.")

872, Norway was united.⁴¹⁴

⁴¹¹ After Islamic conquests of Byzantine territories, in the mid-7th century the Byzantine Empire was converted from the former provincial system to *themata* or themes, administrative divisions originating in areas of East Roman field army encampments, *themata* names correspondent to respective military units. Basil I came from the Macedonian theme. The Macedonian dynasty also is found as the "Armenian" dynasty. The theme system would be at its apogee in the 9th and 10th centuries, as territorial conquests resulted in new *themata*. Although the system would undergo significant changes in the next two centuries, the term still was employed in provincial and financial senses.

⁴¹² especially in 10th century, some scholars seeing as time of increased interest in classical scholarship and assimilation of classical motifs into Christian artwork, "Macedonian art" referring to the art of this period [Alcuin a scholar in this timeframe], and development of culture through medium of Catholic Church encouraging formation of a common European identity.

⁴¹³ Viking invasions contributed to economic and political disarray in France.

⁴¹⁴ Significant persons of 9th century a.d.: Al-Khwarizmi [Abū ʿAbdallāh Muḥammad ibn Mūsā al-Khwārizmī, Persian mathematician, astronomer, geographer, scholar c. 850 in House of Wisdom in Baghdad-- considered founder of algebra, revised Ptolemy's *Geography*; 12th century Latin translations of his work on Indian numerals introduced decimal positional number system to Western world. Charlemagne; Alfred the Great, (849 – 899); King of Wessex 871-899, noted defense of Anglo-Saxon kingdoms of S England against Vikings; first King of West Saxons styling himself "King of the Anglo-Saxons"]; Krum [Khan of Bulgaria after 796 but before 803, to 814 AD; during reign Bulgarian territory doubled, spreading from middle Danube to Dnieper and from Odrin to Tatra Mountains.

872, John VIII was West Pope.

875, Louis II died. He had named as heir Carloman, eldest son of Louis the German; but Charles the Bald, supported by the Pope, became King of Italy.

875, Charles II (son of Louis II) was Emperor of the then Carolingian Empire.

876, When Louis the German died, Charles II tried annexing his realm but was defeated. The east Kingdom of Franks was divided between Louis the German's sons, Charles the Fat, Carloman of Bavaria, and Louis "the Younger."

877, Constantinople Patriarch, Photius I, restored (to 886).

881, Carolingian Charles the Fat (who had been King of Alemannia [876] and King of Italy [879]) was crowned Emperor as Charles III, by Pope John VIII.

Charles III was Emperor of the then Carolingian Empire.

882, Marinus I was West Pope.

884, Charles III inherited all West Francia upon death of cousin Carloman II.

884, Adrian III was West Pope.

885, Stephen V [actually "VI"] was West Pope.

886, Byzantine Emperor Leo VI ("the Wise;" possibly son of Basil I or Michael III).

886, Constantinople Patriarch, Stephen I (to 893).

887/888 Charles III was deposed in East Francia and died a few weeks after his deposition in Italy, heralding the final break of a Carolingian Empire, as "kinglets" would come to be elected in its various parts.

Berengar I, Margrave⁴¹⁵ of Friuli, of Frankish birth, became King of Italy.

Following Charles III's death, emperors crowned by popes controlled territories only in Italy.

891, Formosus was West Pope.

893, First Bulgarian Empire ruled by Prince Simeon/Symeon I the Great (to 927--midway his term assuming title of Emperor/Tsar); campaigned successfully against Byzantines, Hungarians (aka "Magyars"), and Serbs, for greatest Bulgarian territorial expansion into a most powerful state in contemporary eastern Europe, spreading between Aegean, Adriatic and Black seas--its capital Preslav said to rival Constantinople. Bulgarian Orthodox Church became first new patriarchate.

893, Constantinople Patriarch, Antony II Kauleas (to 901).

894-891, Guy was Emperor of the then Carolingian Empire ("Guideschi" family; great-grandson of Charles I).

892-896, Lambert was Emperor of the then Carolingian Empire (son of Guy).

896, Boniface VI was West Pope (two weeks).

896, Stephen VI [actually "VII"] " " .

896, Hungarians invaded Thracian Carpathia.

896-899, Arnulph was Emperor of the then Carolingian Empire (nephew of Charles III; great-grandson of Louis I).

897, Romanus was West Pope (three months).

897, Theodore II " " (one month).

898, John IX " " .

900, Benedict IV " "

901, Constantinople Patriarch, Nicholas I Mystikos (to 907).

901-906, Louis III was Emperor of the then Carolingian Empire (Bosonid family; grandson of Louis II).

903, Leo V was West Pope.

904, Sergius III " " .

907, Constantinople Patriarch was Ethymius I Synkellos (to 912).

909, The Fatimid Caliphate began its established in Africa. It gradually would rule over varying areas of the Magreb, Sudan, Sicily, Malta, the Levant, and the Hijaz, with the Tunisian city of Mahdia its capital.

⁴¹⁵ Hereditary title for certain princes in the Holy Roman Empire.

(The ruling elite were of the “Ismaili” branch of Shi’ism and the rulers, Shia Ismaili Imams, recognized as part of the official Islamic Muslim Caliph chainholders, as descendants of Ali—see footnote at year 656.)

911, Anastasius III was West Pope.

911, reign of Charlemagne successors ended in Germany⁴¹⁶ in consequence of divisive internal weakening of his empire. The dukes of Alemannia, Bavaria, Franconia (one of four stem duchies of East Francia) and Saxony⁴¹⁷ (Carolingian duchy stem) elected non-Carolingian Conrad I of Franks as king of the east Frankish kingdom (he would be the only king of the Conradine/Franconian dynasty).

912-913, Byzantine Emperor Alexander (son of Basil I).

912, Constantinople Patriarch, Nicholas I Mystikos, restored (to 924).

913, Landus was West Pope.

913-959, Byzantine Emperors/co-Emperors, Constantine VII Porphyrogenitus/Porphyrogennetos (under regents or co-emperors until 945); Romanos I Lekapenos (admiral and father-in-law of Constantine VII, Senior Emperor 920 to 944 abdication). Also found ?Christopher 921-931 and ?Stephen 924-945.

914, John X was West Pope.

914, Moors in the northwest corner of Iberia were conquered by Christian kingdoms (the “Reconquista”)--Barcelona was retaken by Moors but held only briefly.

915, King of Italy Berengar I was crowned Emperor of the Carolingian Empire (grandson of Louis I).

Western Europe raids by Magyars plagued his reign.

919, Duke of Saxony Henry/Heinrich I “the Fowler” was elected to succeed Conrad I--commencement of Ottonian dynasty of Germanic Kings (known also as “Saxon dynasty” after family origins and sometimes, as the Liudolfings from earliest known member).

Subsequent to 919 the duchies of Lorraine, Saxony, Franconia, Swabia, Thuringia, and Bavaria were consolidated and part of the “west” Empire.

921, Henry I achieved acceptance by still-Carolingian-ruled West Franks of a separate Eastern realm, and called himself King of East Franks.

924, Holy Roman Emperor Berengar I was assassinated

A “Roman Empire” imperial title would lay vacant until 962.

[Ottonian/Saxon Kings, 919-962: Henry I and Otto I.⁴¹⁸]

925, Constantinople Patriarch, Stephen II of Amasea (to 928).

928, Leo VI was West Pope.

928 (as of December), Stephen VII [actually “VIII”] was West Pope.

928, Constantinople Patriarch was Tryphon/Tryphonius (to 931).

931, John XI was West Pope.

933, Constantinople Patriarch, Theophylactus (to 956).

⁴¹⁶ The term “Germany” commonly becomes used from this point. (The ultimate central Europe country of the Federal Republic of Germany is bordered N by North Sea, Denmark and Baltic Sea, E by Poland and Czech Republic, S by Austria and Switzerland, W by France, Luxembourg, Belgium, and Netherlands. The “Germania” region was documented before and by 100 a.d., when Germanic tribes had settled along Rhine and Danube, most of modern Germany’s area. As a modern nation-state it would first be unified amid Franco-Prussian War in 1871; after World War II in 1949 divided into states of East Germany and West Germany along lines of Allied occupation; and reunified in 1990. In Middle Ages, King did not assume title “Emperor” until crowned by Pope, before proceeding to Rome first bestowed with the “Iron Crown of Lombardy” and title King of Italy.

⁴¹⁷ “Old” Saxony = Germanic region corresponding approximately to the modern German states of Lower Saxony, Saxony-Anhalt, and North Rhine-Westphalia. Historically it spanned a medieval duchy, electorate of the Holy Roman Empire, and a kingdom. (“Modern” Saxony = SE region of present-day Germany.)

⁴¹⁸ Kings of Germany in the Holy Roman Empire 962-1806: Otto I, Otto II, Otto III, Henry II, Conrad II, Henry III, Henry IV, Henry V, Lothair III, Conrad III, Frederick I, Henry VI, Philip, Otto IV, Frederick II, Conrad IV, Rudolf I, Adolf, Albert I, Henry VII, Louis IV, Charles IV, Wenceslaus, Rupert, Sigismund, Albert II, Frederick III, Maximilian I, Charles V, Ferdinand I, Maximilian II, Rudolph II, Matthias, Ferdinand II, Ferdinand III, Leopold I, Joseph I, Charles VI, Charles VII, Francis I, Joseph II, Leopold II, Francis II; Napoleon I.

936, Leo VII “ ” .

936, Otto (I), Henry I’s son-designee, was elected his father’s successor-King. A marriage alliance with widowed queen of Italy gave Otto control over Italy as well.

939, Stephen VIII [actually “IX”] was West Pope.

942, Marinus II was West Pope.

946, Agapitus II “ ” .

950 to c. 1003, was the lifetime of the founder of Greenland’s first settlement: Erik Thorvaldsson/Erik the Red, father of Leif Ericson.

955, John XII was West Pope.

956, Constantinople Patriarch, Polyeuctus (to 970).

958, Denmark united.

959-963, Byzantine Emperor Romanos II Porphyrogenetos (son of Constantine VII).

961, Otto II (at first co-reigning with father Otto I) was chosen German King at Worms.

962, February 2, German King Otto I (“the Great;” formerly Duke of Saxony, King of Germanica, King of Italy) was crowned Emperor of the Romans (the “West”) as reward “for rescuing Pope John XII.”⁴¹⁹ Pope John XII (accused of moral corruption in Rome, subject of general disgrace, and losing battles and papal lands), to protect against intrigues in Rome and the power of Berengar II of Italy (950–963), had made a deal with Otto I, who promised to recognize only John as Pope in exchange for being made Emperor.

Otto I was Emperor of the then Ottonian [/"Roman"] Empire (“perhaps great-great-great-grandson of Louis I). While Otto I is considered first emperor of the *Holy* Roman Empire, the term *sacrum*/"holy" would not appear until appointment of Barbarossa (*see at year 1157*) and not officially assumed until 1512.⁴²⁰

While the Eastern Frankish realm had the Pope’s blessing, the remainder Frankish-west did not. Otto’s coronation, however, underscored commencement of that medieval state of central Europe and Italy under rule of Germanic kings, Rome not included in its borders, and which for most of its history would be populated by Germanic peoples.⁴²¹

⁴¹⁹ Ten days later, the pope and emperor ratified the *Diploma Ottonianum*, under which the emperor became the guarantor of the independence of the papal states, first effective guarantee of such protection since Carolingian Empire.

⁴²⁰ To recap: Charlemagne was first Germanic monarch to receive the title “Emperor” from a Pope. Otto I is considered the first King of “Germany to be “Holy” Roman Emperor, under who and his successors as elected King ruled much of the territory of the nascent Holy Roman Empire. Following Charlemagne, the relationship between references to the rulers of the region today called “Germany,” as “Kings’ or “Emperors” (presuming eventual crowning by a pope), historically can be confusing. However, the “Holy” Roman Empire as *later* titled in effect is taken as beginning with Charlemagne’s papal crowning in 800.

The Kings of the entity that began as the east section of the Frank kingdom were elected by leading nobility, heredity playing its part. (The Golden Bull of 1356 [below] would formally define electors and election proceedings.) Reference to a “German” nation would not emerge until the 11th century, when the papacy referred to Henry IV as *rex teutonicorum*/King of the Teutons, as to brand him foreign. The Germanic kings, however, would continue to use the title *rex Romanorum*/King of the Romans, emphasizing even before being crowned as emperor (not all being so). After 982, once crowned King of Italy, the ruler ostensibly would be crowned by the pope as *imperator Augustus Romanorum*/Venerable Emperor of the Romans.

⁴²¹ Divided into “Age of Emperors” 962-1250, strong emperors of the Saxons, most time spent controlling Italy with power dependent on German resources; “Age of Princes” 1250-1438, emperors much weaker with only minimal authority in Italy; “Early Hapsburg Period” 1485-1555, strivings to create feudal system (where king owned and ruled over all land, giving ‘fiefs’/inheritable portions to vassals in exchange for loyalty and some military service; at base were serfs, owing most produce to lords and changing masters when land ownership changed); “Final Phase,” imperial power gradually weakening and in last centuries close to a union of territories of princes lasting until 1806 Napoleon I’s final destruction.

963-969, Byzantine Emperor Nicephorus/Nikephorus II Phocas (married Theophano, Romanos II's widow).

963, Otto I, after defeating and imprisoning Berengar II, discovered that John XII in his fear of Otto's power had tried to form a league against him with Hungarians and the Byzantine Empire. Otto I summoned a council which deposed John XII and elected Pope Leo VIII (to 965).⁴²²

963, Leo VIII was West Pope. (964-966, people of Rome elected Benedict V in opposition to Leo VIII.)

965, John XIII was West Pope.

967, Otto II was crowned at Rome by Pope John XIII, as co-Emperor of the (Ottonian) Empire.

969, Fatimids conquered Cairo, which thereafter became their capital. (The Fatimid caliphate reputedly exercised a degree of religious tolerance toward non-Isma'ili sects of Islamism as well as toward Jews, Maltese Christians and Coptic Christians.)

969-976, Byzantine Emperor John I Tzimiskes (brother-in-law of Romanos II).

970, Constantinople Patriarch, Basil I Scamandrenus (to 974).

973ff., Otto I died.

Otto II became sole Emperor of the (Ottonian) Empire (son of Otto I).

Otto II continued Otto I's strengthening of German imperial rule and extended it deeper into Italy.

973, Benedict VI was West Pope. (Deposed and murdered.)

974, Benedict VII " " .

974, Constantinople Patriarch, Antony III the Studite (to 980).

976-1025, Byzantine Emperor Basil II ("the Bulgar slayer;" son of Romanos II.)

983, Otto II died.

Otto III (fourth ruler of Saxon/Ottonian descendancy) was elected King of "Germany."

Prior to Otto III, territorial dualism had begun between Frank kings and old tribes rooted in Frankish lands, but leaders stayed close to home; not Otto III, who used bishoprics over the Empire as temporary seats of government.

983, John XIV was West Emperor.

984, Constantinople Patriarch, Nicholas II Chrysoberges (to 976).

985, John XV " " .

985/6, Norwegian explorer Bjarni Herjolfsson had first European's sight of America mainland.

987, Charlemagne's successors in France ended.⁴²³

996,⁴²⁴ **Otto III became Emperor of the Ottonian ('west Roman') Empire** (son of Otto II).

⁴²² Details of the politics revolving around papal depositions (besides those of premature deaths, and [such as in Benedict VI's case, murders], rarely included herein, would be elucidating in following interregional circumstances.

⁴²³ Significant persons of 10th century a.d.: Al-Battani/Asia [Abū 'Abd Allāh Muḥammad ibn Jābir ibn Sinān ar-Raqqī al-ḥarrānī aḥ-ḥābi' al-Battānī/Latinized, Albategnius, Albategni, Albatenus]; c. 858- 929; Islamic astronomer, astrologer, mathematician/introduced a number of trigonometric relations, his work frequently quoted by many medieval astronomers including Copernicus]. Simeon/Symeon I the Great ruled Bulgaria 893-927 during First Bulgarian Empire; successful campaigns against Byzantines, Magyars and Serbs led Bulgaria to greatest territorial expansion making it most powerful state in contemporary Eastern Europe, spreading between Aegean, Adriatic and Black Sea, its new capital Preslav said to rival Constantinople; Bulgarian Orthodox Church became first new patriarchate and translations of Christian texts spread over all Slavic world of the time; assumed title Emperor (Tsar) midway his term (previously styled "Prince"). Otto the Great, 912-973; son of Henry I the Fowler and Matilda of Ringelheim; Duke of Saxony, King of Germany, King of Italy, and "first of the Germans to be called the Emperor of Italy" per some sources; while Charlemagne crowned emperor 800, his empire had been divided amongst his grandsons and after assassination of Berengar of Friuli 924, imperial title had lain vacant for nearly 40 years. 962, Otto crowned Emperor of what would later be Holy Roman Empire. Bjarni Herjolfsson, Norwegian explorer; first known European discoverer of the mainland of Americas, which he sighted 985 or 986. Erik the Red (probably due to hair color)/ Erik Thorvaldsson, 950– c. 1003; remembered in medieval Icelandic saga sources as founding first Nordic settlement in Greenland; father of Leif Ericson, famous Icelandic explorer.

996, Gregory V was West Pope. (First German pope.)

996, Constantinople Patriarch, Sissinius II (to 998).

999, Sylvester II “ ” . (First French pope.)

SECOND MILLENNIUM (a.d.) c.e.

1002, Otto III died (cause uncertain; possibly malaria).

1002, Henry IV (“the Quarrelsome;” successor son of Duke of Bavaria) was elected King of “Germany.” (He was second cousin of Otto III and great-great-grandson of Louis I).

1003, John XVII was West Pope (six months).

1003, John XVIII “ ” .

1004, Henry IV was crowned King of Italy.

1009, Sergius IV was West Pope.

1009, Fatimid⁴²⁵ Caliph al-Hakim bi-Amr Allah ordered destruction of Jerusalem’s Church of the Holy Sepulchre. Although Byzantine Empire had risen during Macedonian dynasty to again become pre-eminent power in Eastern Mediterranean by late prior century and rivaling the Fatimid Caliphate, within some 60 years Asia Minor--much its heartland--would be lost to SeljukTurks.⁴²⁶

[Holy] Roman Empire absorbed northern Italy and Burgundy during reign of Salian dynasty, although the emperors (and kings) would lose power through the *circa* 1071 “Investiture Controversy.” The early 11th century Kingdom of East Franks was not German *per se* but a confederation of old Germanic tribes of Bavarians, Alemanns, Franks and Saxons, politically unified primarily because of the strong personal influence that had emanated from the Ottonians.

1010-1020, Patriarch of Eastern Orthodox Church, Theophilus.

1012, Benedict VIII was West Pope.

1014, coronation of Henry IV as [Ottonian] Emperor Henry II.

1021-1051, Patriarch of Eastern Orthodox Church, George II.

1024, Henry II died, fifth and last of the Ottonian dynasty (and the only Germanic king later to be canonized). Priorily, Germanic kings--although ostensibly formally elected by leaders, in fact could designate successors; but Henry II died childless. After some debate, (via marriage) Conrad II of the Salian dynasty was made King of Franks.

1024, John XIX was West Pope.

1025-1028, Byzantine Emperor Constantine VIII (/IX; son of Romanos II).

1026, Henry III (“The Black”/“The Pious”) was made Duke/Henry IV of Bavaria Henry IV by father Conrad II.

Henry II previously had succeeded, and Conrad II and Henry III continued appointments of territorial dukes--a time of first occurrences of term, *regum Teutonicum* (German Kingdom).

1027, Conrad II was crowned Emperor of the “West” (great-great-grandson of Otto I).

1028-1034, Byzantine Empress Zoe (daughter of Constantine VIII), co-ruler with Romanos III Argyrus, husband #1.

1028, Henry III (son of Conrad II) was elected King of “Germany.”

1032, Benedict IX was West Pope.

⁴²⁴ It will be noted that at times some years pass between expiration of one emperor and crowning of his successor; during the interim the person bears the title, “Emperor-Elect.”

⁴²⁵ Shi’a Muslim caliphate first centered in Tunisia, later Egypt (after 969 conquest of Cairo), ruled over varying areas of Maghreb, Sudan, Sicily, Malta, Levant and Hijaz 909-1171.

⁴²⁶ The Turkic-speaking nomadic peoples of central Asia produced the Seljuk dynasty and later, the Ottoman. The Seldjuks/Seldjuqs/Seljuq “Turks” were a Turco-Persian (reportedly, ‘Sunni’) branch that would rule parts of Central Asia, into Anatolia and the Middle East, from the 11th to 14th centuries, setting up the “Great Seljuq Empire: which at height stretched from Anatolia through Persia, Turkic power in the Mid-East originating with Turcoman tribal confederations.

1034-1041, Byzantine Empress was Zoe with co-Emperor Michael IV, the Paphlagonian, husband #2.

1038, Conrad II gave Henry III Duchies of Swabia and Burgundy.

1039, Conrad II died; Henry III became sole ruler of "Germany" and was "Emperor-Elect."

c. 1039, Fatimid successor allowed Byzantine Empire to rebuild Church of Holy Sepulchre; pilgrimages to Jerusalem already in progress increased, with Islamic persecutions eventually stopping in light of wealth influx from pilgrimages; but violence of Seljuk Turks fueled support for Crusades.

c. 1023, Knights Hospitaller: This order ("Sovereign Order of St. John of Jerusalem of Rhodes and of Malta," known also by various other names), which had arisen, provided care for poor, sick, or injured pilgrims at Amalfitan Hospital in Jerusalem.

1041-1042, Byzantine Emperor Michael V Calaphates ("the Caulker;" Michael IV's nephew; "Empress Zoe's adopted son").

1042, Byzantine co-Empresses, Zoe and daughter Theodora (daughter of Constantine VIII).

1042-1055, Byzantine Emperor Constantine IX Monomachos (Zoe's husband #3).

1043-1059, Patriarch of Eastern Orthodox Church, (Michael Keroularios) Michael I.

1045, Both Sylvester III and Benedict IX (again) briefly were West Popes; validity questioned; both deposed.)

Note: From this point "West Pope" will be replaced with "Roman Catholic Church" (see at 1054).

1045-1046, Pope of Roman Catholic Church, Gregory VI. (Deposed.)

1046-1047, Pope of Roman Catholic Church, Clement II.

1046, Henry III of Germany was crowned Emperor by Pope Clement II.

1047-1048, Pope of Roman Catholic Church, Benedict IX (again deposed; excommunicated).

1048, Pope of Roman Catholic Church, Damasus II (23 days).

1049-1054, Pope of Roman Catholic Church, Leo IX.

1052-1059, Patriarch of Eastern Orthodox Church, Leontius.

1053, Henry IV was elected King of "Germany."

1054, The East–West/Great Schism formally divided medieval Christianity into Eastern (Greek) and Western (Latin) branches, later known respectively as Eastern Orthodox Church and Roman Catholic Church, following long-embittered political and ecclesiastical differences and disputes, prominent being issues of "filioque" (whether leavened or unleavened bread should be used in the eucharist), Papal claim to universal jurisdiction, and the place of Constantinople in relation to the Pentarchy.⁴²⁷

Pope Leo and Patriarch Michael I heightened conflict, suppressing Greek and Latin in their respective domains.

1054, Pope Leo IX died.

1054, Roman legates traveled to and denied Michael I the title of Ecumenical Patriarch and insisted he recognize the Church of Rome as head and mother of the churches; Michael I refused. Cardinal Humbert, leading the Latin contingent, "excommunicated" Michael I while Michael I in return "excommunicated" Humbert and accompanying legatees—both acts doubtfully valid due to Leo IX's recent death voided the West mandate, and Michael I's act was applied personally only to the legates. But the fundamental breach was sealed along doctrinal, theological, linguistic, political, and geographical lines, each side accusing the other of heretically initiating the division.

1055-1057, Pope of Roman Catholic Church, Victor II.

⁴²⁷ *Pentarchy* = from Greek *pente*, five, and *arche*, rule; term for idea of universal rule over all Christendom by heads of five major episcopal sees/patriarchates of Roman Empire--Rome, Constantinople, Alexandria, Antioch, and Jerusalem—which idea came about due to the political and ecclesiastical prominence of these five sees but concept of their universal and exclusive authority tied firmly tied to administrative structure of Roman Empire and first tangibly expressed in laws of Emperor Justinian I (527-565), particularly in *Novella* 131. 692 Quinisext Council gave it formal recognition, ranked the sees in order of preeminence and following Quinisext the pentarchy especially was at least philosophically accepted in Eastern Christianity but not generally in West, which rejected the Council and never recognized preeminence of all four other sees.

1055-1056, Byzantine Empress Theodora (daughter of Constantine VIII).

1056-1057, Byzantine Emperor Michael VI Stratiotikos (military bureaucrat) with Theodora but deposed.

1056, Henry IV (third of the Salian dynasty) was made King of Germany.

1057, Norman adventurer Robert Guiscard conquered Calabria and was holding what traditionally had been Byzantine territory against Moors of Sicily. Maritime states of Pisa, Genoa, and Catalonia were actively fighting Moorish strongholds in Majorca to free coasts of Italy and Catalonia from Moor raids.

1057-1058, Pope of Roman Catholic Church Stephen IX[/X].

1057, 3 months, Byzantine rival Emperor, Isaac I Komnenos (a general).

1057, Aug., Byzantine Emperor Isaac I Komnenos/Comnenos (would abdicate in 1059).

1059-1061, Pope of Roman Catholic Church, Nicholas II (opposed by antipope⁴²⁸ "Benedict X" in 1058).

1059-1067, Byzantine Emperor Constantine X (/IX) Doukas/Ducas; nominated by Komnenos.

1059-1062, Patriarch of Eastern Orthodox Church, Alexander II.

1061-1073, Pope of Roman Catholic Church, Alexander II (opposed by antipope "Honorius II" 1061-1072).

1062-1100, Patriarch of Eastern Orthodox Church, John VI.

1063, Pope Alexander II gave his blessing to Iberian Christians to war against Moors, granting both a papal standard (the *vexillum sancti Petri*) and an indulgence to those who were killed in battle.

1067/1068-1071, Byzantine co-Emperors Michael VII Doukas/Ducas (son of Constantine X[IX] and Romanos IV Diogenes (married widow of Constantine X[/IX])—Michael VII under regency until 1071.)

1071-1078, Byzantine Emperor Michael VII Doukas/Ducas.

1071, Byzantine Empire lost the Battle of Manzikert, leading to loss of all Asia Minor (modern Turkey), save coastlands.

1073-1085, Pope of Roman Catholic Church, Gregory VII (opposed by antipope "Guibert").

A sure sign of Byzantine desperation was an appeal of Alexios/Alexius I (despite failure after East-West Schism of attempts at reconciliation of Western Europe Catholic Church and Eastern Orthodox Church) to his 'enemy,' Pope Gregory VII for aid. But Gregory VII was occupied with the "Investiture Controversy"⁴²⁹ and could not call on the German emperor; so a crusade did not then take shape.

Pope Gregory persuaded bishops under his control to excommunicate Henry IV, and announced that oaths of loyalty made to Henry by his vassals were no longer binding since he'd been excommunicated.

1074, Byzantine Emperor Michael VII sent plea to Pope Gregory VII for aid against Seljuks.⁴³⁰

1077, caught by the investiture controversy, King Henry IV of Germany--having lost almost all political support--was forced to make his famous January "Walk to Canossa," meet with Pope Gregory VII, and beg forgiveness.⁴³¹

⁴²⁸ *Antipope* = person claiming to be or elected pope in opposition to the one chosen by church law, as during a schism.

⁴²⁹ Glory of the Holy Roman Empire almost collapsed in the "Investiture Controversy"--Pope Gregory VII declaring ban on practice of secular leaders appointing Catholic clergy and investing them with symbols of bishopric, which allowed secular rulers measure of control over Church in a given area (and therefore, over the minds of a king's subjects). King Henry IV of Germany from 1056 (of Salian dynasty; would be Holy Roman Emperor 1084 to forced abdication 1105) saw investiture action as form of interference with his authority (labeling Pope as "Hildebrand...not Pope but false monk!").

⁴³⁰ Some sources identify Chinese records of Byzantine envoys to China in 1081 and 1091 with pleas for aid in fight against Turks.

⁴³¹ A story of interesting detail, the result was Henry IV's humiliation, kneeling and asking Pope's absolution, which was granted.

In March, small powerful Saxon and south German territorial magnates (including archbishops of Salzburg, Mainz, Magdeburg) with several bishops (assuming Henry IV's loss with Pope Gregory), repudiated Henry's dynasty's royal claim and hereditary passing of his crown, pitting Henry in a three-year civil war with Duke Rudolph of Swabia, whom they appointed king.⁴³²

1078-1081, Byzantine Emperors Nicephorus III Botaneiates (? Bryennius/Basilacius/Melissenus 1080-1081?)

1080, Henry IV defeated Swabia's Rudolf. Pope Gregory levied a second excommunication against him. Henry invaded Rome, forced Gregory to retreat, and named Clement III Pope. (Rooting of the "Roman" empire then was permanently damaged. The Church became an independent player in a political system not subject to imperial authority, and for some following years the Papacy would be in opposition of "anti-popes.")

1081-1118, Byzantine Emperor Alexios/Alexius I *Komnenos/Comnenos* (nephew of Isaac I).

1081 (to 1118), accession and tenure of Emperor Alexius I halted decline of Byzantine Empire, with recoveries in military, finances, and territory ("Komnenian Resoration").

1084, Pope of Roman Catholic Church, Henry VI.

1084, Henry IV of Germany was crowned Emperor.

1085, Fall of Moorish Toledo to the Kingdom of Leon was a major victory in increasing successes of Christian princes, during 100 years of fighting out of mountains of Galicia and Asturias, the Basque Country, and Navarre. Disunity of Islamic emirs was an essential factor.

1086-87, Pope of Roman Catholic Church, Victor III (Dafer); successor of Pope Gregory VII (opposed by antipope "Guibert").

1088-1099, Pope of Roman Catholic Church, Urban II (opposed by antipope, "Guibert").

1095, Appeal by Emperor Alexius I of the Christian Byzantine Empire to Urban II (Pope 1088-1099), for aid against expansion of Seljuk Turks into Anatolia, fell on ready ears. Urban II, Gregory VII's more moderate successor, saw a crusade as a way to reunite Christendom, bolster the Papacy, and perhaps bring the East under his control. Disaffected Germans and Normans were not to be counted on, but heart and backbone of a crusade could be found among the northern French in his own homeland.

Crusades: Along with the deteriorating Byzantine Empire, the origins of the Crusades lay in combined elements: breakdown of Carolingian Empire in the late 9th century; Christianization of Vikings, Slavs and Magyars/Hungarians; and the relative stabilization of local European borders, accompanied by decreased interest of nobility in territorial expansions—all of which yielded a large class of armed warriors whose skills and energies went to fighting one another and/or terrorizing local populaces. Attempts by the Church to stem the violence with "Peace and Truce of God" movements was but marginally successful, while Crusades partially also were an outlet for intense religious piety that arose in the lay public in late 11th century. Crusaders took vows and for their service were granted penances/indulgences for past sins.

Following the East-West schism, Church sanctioned military campaigns (1095-1291) in Spain and eastern Europe into 1500's) were fought primarily by Roman Catholic forces and Franks, determined to restore their control of the Holy Land and recapture Jerusalem. The campaigns were mainly against Islamists occupying the Near East since the Rashidun Caliphate, with campaigns also waged against pagan Slavs and Balts, Hebrew, Russian, and Greek Orthodox Christians, Mongols,⁴³³ Cathars, Hussites, Waldensians, Old Prussians, and political enemies of various popes. Orthodox Christians also took part

⁴³² *Swabia* = area covering lands associated with Alamannia including Baden, Vorarlberg, modern principality of Liechtenstein, modern Germanic-speaking Switzerland, and Alsace. Hunnic invasions forced Suevi to move from German homelands to found a "barbarian" kingdom in hostile mountains of Galicia in extreme NW corner of Iberia.

⁴³³ "*Mongol*," which appeared as a tribe name, first in 8th century records of the Chinese Ming dynasty, resurfaced during rule of one Khitan in 12th century; after the fall of the "Liao" dynasty (1125) "Mongols" were powerful in north China and became a leading tribe on the steppe. The word grew into an umbrella term for a large group of Mongolic-language and semi-Turkic tribes united under Genghis Khan.

in some crusades. Rivalries within both European and Arabian powers led also to alliances between religious factions against mutual opponents, such as the alliance with the Sultanate of Rum during Fifth Crusade.

(Note: The traditional arbitrary numbering scheme of crusades excludes some otherwise important expeditions.)

1095, First Crusade: In March, ambassadors of Byzantine Emperor Alexius I to a Council of Piacenza called for help resisting advances by Seljuk Turks into his empire. Urban II at Council of Clermont later same year called all Christians to join in war against Turks, promising 'indulgences.'

A long period of Christian homelands of Syria, Lebanon, Palestine, Egypt, etc. being conquered by Islamic armies was a powerful motive for Pope Urban II's favorable response to Byzantine Emperor Alexius I's call for a "holy" war, to defend Christendom, resist Islamic advances into Byzantine Empire territory, and recapture lost lands, starting with Jerusalem—the immediate cause of First Crusade being emperor Alexios I's appeal to Urban for mercenaries.

A Latin hegemony in Levant would provide leverage in Papacy claims of supremacy over Patriarchy of Constantinople (result of Great Schism 1054)—a rift possibly resolvable through force of Frankish arms. On the popular level, the first crusades unleashed a wave of impassioned personal pious Christian fury, expressed in massacres of Jews accompanying movement of Crusader mobs through Europe, as well as violent treatment of "schismatic" Orthodox Christians of the east; but during many attacks on Jews local Bishops and Christians attempted to protect them from mobs passing through.

1096, following abortive popular crusades early this year, official crusader armies set off from France and Italy on a Papally-ordained crusade, August 15 by land to Constantinople. It received wary welcome from the Byzantine Emperor but, pledging to restore lost territories to his empire, the crusaders were supplied and transported to Anatolia.

1097, June 19, Seljuk-occupied Nicaea fell to crusader siege, and crusader armies fought further battles against Turks as they crossed Anatolia. Tancred⁴³⁴ participated at Nicaea; per secret negotiations between Alexius I and the Seljuks he temporarily was taken by Alexius' army. Later the same year he captured Tarsus and other cities in Cilicia and assisted next year at Antioch.

1097, October -1098, June: Siege and fall of Antioch to Crusaders. Given entry to city by an Armenian dissident, once inside (and as standard military practice at time) Crusaders massacred Islamic inhabitants and pillaged and destroyed mosques. Local Christians assassinated city ruler Yaghisiyan.

June 28, the Crusaders overcame a large Islamic relief army, but then, starving, their army marched south town-to-town along coast.

1099-1118, Pope of Roman Catholic Church, Paschal II (opposed by Theoderic [1100], Aleric, [Meginulf] "Sylvester IV" [1105-1111]).

1099 (to 1125) Henry V was elected King of Germany.

1099, June 7, the Crusader army finally reached Jerusalem's walls with only a fraction of their original numbers.

Siege of Jerusalem : Hebrews and Islamists fought together but unsuccessfully to defend Jerusalem against invading Frank crusaders.

July 15, crusaders entered the city, proceeding to massacre remaining Hebrew and Islamic civilians alike, pillaged and destroyed mosques and the city itself. (One historian wrote that the "isolation, alienation, and fear" felt by the Franks so far from home helped to explain their atrocities, including cannibalism recorded after the earlier siege of Maarat, 1098.)

⁴³⁴Tancred joined his maternal uncle Bohemund as a Norman leader in this First Crusade. The two made way to Constantinople, where Byzantine Emperor Alexius I Comnenus pressured Crusade leaders to swear to return any conquered Byzantine lands to its Empire; other leaders so swore without intending to honor oath, while Tancred refused altogether so to swear.

Tancred, on the other hand, on entry to Jerusalem gave his banner to a group of citizens that fled to the roof of Solomon temple, which should have assured their safety; but they nonetheless also were massacred.

The Crusaders also tried to gain control of the city of Tyre but were defeated. Tyre's people asked Zahir al-Din Atabek, leader of Damascus, for help to defend the city from Franks, promising then to surrender it to him (but did not, when the Franks were defeated).

Creation of Crusader States: As a result of First Crusade, four small 'Crusader states' were created—County of Edessa, Principality of Antioch, County of Tripoli and, notably, Kingdom of Jerusalem, where at most 120,000 Franks (predominantly French-speaking, Western Christians) ruled over 350,000 Islamists, Hebrews, and native eastern Christians who had remained since the Islamic occupation began in 638.

Emergence of Knights Templar ("poor fellow-soldiers of Christ and of Temple of Solomon").

After Frank capture of Jerusalem many Christian pilgrims traveled to holy places. While the city, itself, was relatively secure, bandits abounded in the "Outremer,"⁴³⁵ routinely slaughtering journeymen from coast arrivals at Jaffa. Two First Crusade French knights proposed creation of a monastic order at Jerusalem to protect pilgrims; and King Baldwin II of the Kingdom of Jerusalem gave them headquarter space in the captured Al Aqsa Mosque on Temple Mount. The Knights Templar, to be active until *circa* 1314, relied on donations to survive, and they would become a favored charity of Christendom--growing rapidly in membership and power; be among the most skilled fighting Crusader units, and have a large economic infrastructure throughout Christendom, with innovated financing techniques/early form of banking (*e.g.* generating letters of credit for pilgrims in 1150)—in effect the first multinational corporation, and in the process acquiring large tracts of land in both Mid-East and Europe, while constructing many fortifications across Europe and the Holy Land.

Also 1099, Knights Hospitaller⁴³⁶ became a religious and military order under its own charter, charged with care and defense of Holy Land.

1100-1116, Eastern Orthodox Patriarchs were Eulogius, Sabbas, Cyril II, and Theodosius II.

1100, Tancred became Regent of Principality of Antioch and Prince of Galilee. He expanded territory with captures of Byzantine land; and, despite Emperor Alexius' attempts to rein him, in 1104 Tancred took control also of the County of Edessa during Baldwin II's captivity (at Battle of Harran).

1101 saw a second, less successful wave of crusaders that may be considered an adjunct o the First Crusade: Turks in a well-managed response led by Kilij Arslan defeated this wave in three separate battles.

1105, Pope of Roman Catholic Church Henry IV was forced to abdicate.

1105, Tancred was victorious over Radwan of Aleppo at Battle of Artah, by which Antioch principality recovered some of its territories east of the Orontes River.

1107, on Baldwin II's release he fought Tancred to regain his county, and eventually defeated Tancred who retired to Antioch.

1107-1110, Norwegian Crusade: Sigurd I of Norway was first European king who went on a crusade--his crusader armies defeating Moors in Spain, the Balears, and in Palestine, where they joined the king of Jerusalem in the Siege of Sidon.

1108, Tancred refused to honor treaty wherein Bohemund earlier had oathed fealty to Alexius I.

⁴³⁵ *Outremer*, French *outré-mer* for "overseas" = general name given to Crusader states established after First Crusade: County of Edessa, Principality of Antioch, County of Tripoli and especially Kingdom of Jerusalem; name often used as equivalent to Levant, Syria or Palestine (and incorporated areas today large parts of Israel), Palestinian territories, Jordan, Syria, Lebanon and a small part of Turkey. The term could more in general be used for any other land "overseas"--Louis IV of France was called "Louis d'Outremer" as he was raised in England.

⁴³⁶ *Knights Hospitaller* grew from a Jerusalem hospital commissioned 600 by Pope Gregory I; enlarged 800 with a library by Charlemagne; destroyed 1005 by Caliph Al Hakim; rebuilt 1023 with permission of Egypt's Caliph Ali az-Zahir and served by Benedictine monks who took in Christian pilgrims.

1110, Tancred gained control of castle Krak des Chevaliers in County of Tripoli, where he remained as a regent of Bohemund II in Antioch until he died in 1112.

1111 (to 1125), Henry V of Germany was crowned Emperor. Last of Salian dynasty, his reign would coincide with final phase of the great Investiture Controversy that pit pope against emperor and kings.

1113, papal bull of Pope Paschal II confirmed Order of Knights Hospitaller.

1116-1171, Patriarch of Eastern Orthodox Church, Sophronius III.

1118-1119, Pope of Roman Catholic Church, Gelasius II (opposed by antipope [Burden] “Gregory VIII” [1118]).

1118-1143, Byzantine Emperor John II (son of Alexios I).

1119-1124, Pope of Roman Catholic Church, Callistus/Calixtus II.

1124-1130, Pope of Roman Catholic Church, Honorius II (opposed by antipope “Celestine II” [1124]).

1122, Concordat of Worms⁴³⁷ (conclusion of “Investiture Controversy” which began under Pope Gregory)—concordat between Pope Callistus II and Emperor Henry V, resulting from European sovereigns’ strategic attempts to singly control their respective domains. Henry V yielded to demands of a second wave of “Gregorian reformers,” which ended the first phase of power struggles between the Papacy and Emperors (which carried the germ of nation-based sovereignty, later to be confirmed in the 1648 Peace of Westphalia).

By the Concordat, a king received the right to invest bishops with secular authority in his own territory (“by the lance”), but not with sacred authority (“by ring and staff”), but bishops owed allegiance to both king and pope, while popes—above and out of direct control of the Emperor—ended the concept of divine right of kings.

1129, Order of Knights Templar was officially endorsed by Roman Catholic Church.

1130-1143, Pope of Roman Catholic Church, Innocent II (opposed by antipopes “Anacletus II” [1130-1138] and [Gregory Conti] “Victor IV” [1138]).

1130, half of Iberia had been reconquered.

1138 (to 1254), Conrad III (first of Hohenstaufen Dynasty) was made Holy Roman Emperor, which dynasty would see German princes increase influence further south and east into territories inhabited by Slavs and preceding German settlement in those areas and further east, while north German towns grew prosperous as members of the Hanseatic League.⁴³⁸

1139, Pope Innocent II’s papal bull *Omne Datum* exempted Knights Templar from obedience to local laws to allow them to pass all borders freely, be free from taxation, and answerable only to papal authority.

1143-1144, Pope of Roman Catholic Church, Celestine II.

1143-1180, Byzantine Emperor Manuel I (son of John II).

1144, Arabians (who initially did very little about Crusader states due to internal conflicts, and after a period of relative peace in which Europeans and Arabians co-existed in Holy Land) eventually began to reunite under Imad al-Din Zangi and retook Edessa, which led Pope Celestine II to call for a second Crusade.

1144-1145, Pope of Roman Catholic Church, Lucius II.

By mid 1100’s, Knights Hospitaller clearly were divided into military brothers separate from those who worked with sick.

1145-1153, Pope of Roman Catholic Church, Eugene III.

⁴³⁷ The Concordat of Worms followed efforts of later Pope Honorarius II and the 1121 Diet of Wurzburg.

⁴³⁸ /the Hanse or Hansa = an economic alliance of trading cities and guilds dominating trade along N Europe coast in later Middle Ages, stretching from Baltic to North Seas and inland (up to 17th century), cities with a sort of political autonomy; their own legal system, protection and mutual aid—in some cases fully political entities of their own.

1147-1149, The Second Crusade was called by various preachers, most notably Bernard of Clairvaux (who later expressed dismay over amount of misdirected violence and slaughter of Rhineland's Jewish population).

1147, French and south German armies under Kings Louis VII and Conrad III marched to Jerusalem but failed to win any major victories. They then launched a failed pre-emptive siege of Damascus (which independent city soon would fall into hands of Nur ad-Din Zangi, main enemy of the Crusaders).

"Wendish" crusade by North Germans and Danes against Polavian Slavs also was unsuccessful. Second Crusade met with great success, however, on other side of Mediterranean, as also in 1147 a force of northern European Crusaders stopped in Portugal, allied with its king Afonso I, and retook Lisbon from the Moors, a detachment helping Count Raymond Berenguer IV of Barcelona; in 1148 they conquered the city of Tortosa.

1150, as to the Holy Land, however, the French and German kings had returned to their countries without any result.

1152, Frederick I Barbarossa was elected King of Germany.

1153-1154, Pope of Roman Catholic Church, Anastasius IV.

1154-1159, Pope of Roman Catholic Church, Adrian IV.⁴³⁹

1155, Barbarossa was crowned King of Italy in March.

1155 June, Barbarossa was crowned Roman Emperor by Adrian IV.

1157, the term *sacrum*/Holy first officially appeared in a document connected with Barbarossa's imperial rule.

Barbarossa forces in a series of raids forced submission of Milan, the leading city of the Lombard League of 14 cities, as he sought to establish himself as feudal sovereign against growingly independent trading cities that had won charters of municipal privileges during preceding Papal/Empire strife.

1158, Diet of Roncaglia, Italy; a general assembly was held of nobles and ecclesiasts of the Holy Roman Empire and representatives of the Lombard League, at which the determination of respective rights was left to four jurists of the 1088-founded Law School of the University of Bologna. Their decision, which favored Barbarossa, was the first enumeration of imperial rights (referred to as *regalia*, since end of the Investiture Controversy): that imperial rule was by *divine* right. The ruling defined taxes, tolls, and trade exactions, and also allowed Barbarossa to bind more closely the Empire's Germanic dukes.

An early form of constitutional administration, the Roncaglia ruling attempted a new peace for all the Empire, by abolishing private feuds on the one hand and tying imperial subordinates to legal jurisdiction and public criminal prosecutions.

In that, after the Investiture Controversy, an emperor no longer could use the Church to maintain power, land increasingly was lent to *miniseralia*—formerly non-free service men; a new class initially used mainly militarily.

1159-1181, Pope of Roman Catholic Church, Alexander III (opposed by antipopes during reign by Octavius/"Victor IV" [1159-1164], "Pascal III" [1165-1168], "Callistus III," "Innocent III" [1178-1180]).

1162, Barbarossa warred against the Lombard League, which refused to accept the Roncaglia verdict; Milan was razed to the ground, after which the League alliance intensified.

1171-1175, Patriarch of Eastern Orthodox Church, Elias II.

1175-1180, Patriarch of Eastern Orthodox Church, Eleutherius.

1176, Emperor Barbarossa was defeated (Battle of Legnano).

1177, 500 Knights Templar famously aided in the defeat of 26,000+ Saladin army (Battle of Montgisard); but by this time the Islamic world was more united under effective leaders, while Christian factions

⁴³⁹ Adrian IV is found referred to as the first and only English pope, who granted Ireland to Henry II, King of England.

suffered dissensions--Knights Templar at odds with two other Christian military orders, Knights Hospitaller and Teutonic Knights.⁴⁴⁰

1180-1183, Byzantine Emperor Alexios II (son of Manuel I).

1180-1209, Patriarch of Eastern Orthodox Church, Mark III.

1181-1185, Pope of Roman Catholic Church, Lucius III.

1183-1185, Byzantine Emperor Andronikos I (son of John II).

1183-1191, Emperor of Cyprus, Isaac.

1185-1195, Byzantine Emperor Isaac II Angelos (great-grandson of Alexios I).

1185, Holy Roman Emperor Frederick Barbarossa pledged protection to Knights Hospitaller.

1185-1187, Pope of Roman Catholic Church, Urban III (one year).

1187, Jerusalem for almost a century now had been under Christian rule.

1187, Pope of Roman Catholic Church, Gregory VIII (57 days).

1187-1191, Pope, Clement III.

Third Crusade 1187–1192 (sometimes referred to as “King’s Crusade”).

1187, having suffered several unsuccessful campaigns, there occurred the pivotal Battle of Hattin, by which crusaders surrendered, and Saladin, Sultan of Egypt, captured Jerusalem. Saladin spared civilians and for the most part left churches and shrines untouched, so as to collect ransom money from the Franks. Several thousand persons, apparently not redeemed, probably were sold into slavery.

Reports of Saladin's victories shocked Europe. (Anti-) Pope Gregory VIII⁴⁴¹ called for a crusade, which was led by several of Europe's most important leaders: Philip II of France, King Richard I of England/ Richard the Lionheart, and Frederick I, Holy Roman Emperor. Frederick’s drowning in Cilicia in 1190 left an unstable English-French alliance.

After fall of Jerusalem Knights Hospitaller were confined to County of Tripoli.

1191-1198, Pope of Roman Catholic Church, Celestine III.

1191, Richard I captured Cyprus from Byzantines (Cyprus would remain a Crusader base for centuries to come and remain in western European hands until Ottoman Empire conquest); Richard I captured Acre after long siege, taking entire Islamic garrison soldiers in captivity after a series of failed negotiations. Philip left after capture of Acre. Knights Hospitaller sought refuge in Kingdom of Cyprus.

Richard’s Crusader army headed south along the Mediterranean coast, defeated Islamists near Arsuf, and recaptured port city of Jaffa. In sight of Jerusalem, the crusade ended without taking Jaffa, in that Richard did not believe he could hold it once captured because the majority of army would then return to Europe. Richard negotiated a treaty with Saladin, which allowed unarmed Christians to make pilgrimages to the Jerusalem and parts of Holy Land remaining under Islamic control.

(Richard's ship home was wrecked; he ended up in Austria; was captured by his enemy, Duke Leopold; Leopold delivered Richard to Holy Roman Emperor Henry VI, former King of Germany and King of Sicily, who held him for ransom.)

By 1197, Henry VI felt ready for a crusade but died the same year of malaria; Richard I never returned to Holy Land and died during later fighting in Europe.

1195-1203, Byzantine Emperor Alexios III Angelos (brother of Isaac II).

1198-1216, Pope of Roman Catholic Church, Innocent III. (Initiator of the Inquisition in Spain and Portugal.)

⁴⁴⁰ *Teutonic Knights* = “Order of Brothers of the German House Saint Mary in Jerusalem”--small German Catholic religious order originally formed to aid Christian pilgrims to Holy Land, establish hospitals, etc. but serving also as a crusading military order during Middle Ages. (“Teutons” = of ancient Germanic or Celtic origin .) Neither the monastic order nor is later German successor states of Prussia ever formally belonged to the Holy Roman Empire.)

⁴⁴¹ Latin: *antipapa*= person opposing/making significant competing claim against legitimately elected or sitting pope as Bishop of Rome and leader of the Roman Catholic Church. At times between 3rd and mid-15th centuries, antipopes typically were supported by fairly significant faction of religious cardinals and secular kings and kingdoms. (Not all “anti-popes” are enumerated herein.)

1198, Cilicia Armenia (region in present south Turkey) became a kingdom with the crowning of Leon the Magnificent of Rubenid Dynasty. (It previously had been formed by refugees of Seljuk invasion of Armenia.) The kingdom was a strong ally of European crusaders, considering itself a bastion of Christendom in the east.

One element of the preceding century had been systematic foundation of new cities to both serve new population but also to concentrate economic power at strategic locations (new cities included Freiburg and Munich).

1202-1204, Fourth Crusade was initiated by Pope Innocent III, with intention of invading the Holy Land through Egypt. Because Crusaders lacked funds, their fleet and provisions were contracted from Venetians--*Doge* Enrico Dandolo first enlisting them to restore Christian obedience of the city of Zara/Zadar. Then, short on supplies and vessel lease time, the Crusaders decided to go to Constantinople.

1204-1261, Lascarid Dynasty in Nicaea: Theodore I Lascaris 1204-1222; John III Ducas Vatatzes 1222-1254; Theodore II Lascaris 1254-1258; John IV Lascaris 1258-1261.

1203-1204, Byzantine Emperors Isaac II Angelos (restored) with Alexios IV (son of Isaac II).

1204 Feb.-April, Byzantine Emperor Alexios V Doukas.

1204-1205, Byzantine Claimant-Emperor, Constantine Laskaris (defender of Constantinople).

1205, Byzantine Emperor Theodore I Laskaris; crowned in 1208 (brother-in-law of Constantine Laskaris and son-in-law of Alexios III).

1204, Crusaders sacked Constantinople--often seen as the final breaking point of the "Great Schism" between Eastern Orthodox and Western Roman Catholic churches, dividing into a competing Byzantine Greek Empire state of Nicaea (present-day Iznik, Turkey) and into Latin realms of a number of Crusader states created throughout Byzantine territories (the sack of Constantinople resulting in a partition in the Byzantine Empire between Venice and the Crusaders). The Empire of Nicaea was largest of three Byzantine Greek successor states, founded by Byzantine aristocracy that fled after Constantinople was occupied by Western European and Venetian forces during the Fourth Crusade; it lasted to 1261, when the Nicaean recovery of Constantinople would re-establish the Byzantine Empire.

1204, Genghis Khan/"Temujin" ("Great Khan") united the Mongols of the region bordered north by Russia and south, east and west by China--all of Central Asia and beyond, from China to India to Russia and Hungary.⁴⁴²

1209, the Albigensian Crusade was to eliminate the heretical Cathars of Occitania (the south of modern-day France)--a decade-long struggle that had as much to do with northern France wanting to extend control southwards as it did with heresy. At end, Occitan Cathars and independence of southern France both were exterminated.

"Children's Crusade" = a series of possibly fictitious/misinterpreted events yielded by the outburst of old popular enthusiasm: it led to a gathering of children in France and Germany which Pope Innocent III interpreted as reproof from heaven to their unworthy elders. One Stephen, head of the French army, led 30,000 children; one Nicholas, head of the German army, led 7,000, none of the children actually reaching Holy Land. Those who didn't return home or settle along the route to Jerusalem either died from shipwreck or hunger, or were sold into slavery in Egypt or North Africa.

1210-1243, Patriarch of Eastern Orthodox Church, Nicholas I.

1215, Preaching and processions prompted Fourth Council of the Lateran to formulate new plans for recovery of Holy Land.

1215, Genghis Khan sacked Beijing, China.

1216-1227, Pope of Roman Catholic Church, Honorius III.

⁴⁴² In the 13th century Mongols (continuing under Kublai Khan) would proceed to annex China to their empire; but in the next century, Chinese rebels would overthrow the Mongol rule and China's Ming Dynasty would be established.

1217-1221, Fifth Crusade, first phase: crusading force from Austria and Hungary joined forces of King of Jerusalem and Prince of Antioch. Second phase, forces achieved remarkable feat in capture of Damietta in Egypt 1219.⁴⁴³ (Rivalries of factions in both Christian and Islamic powers affected former alliances, such as Christian one with Sultanate of Rum during this crusade.)

1220, King of Germany Frederick II was crowned Emperor and claimed power over Rome. On one hand he innovatively would cause significant reforms in a state of Sicily; on the other, at a 1220 confederation assembly he issued a number of financial and fortification *regalia* to bishops, and would grant major privileges to German dukes that never would be reclaimed by the central power.

1221, Byzantine Emperor John III Doukas Vatatzes (son-in-law of Theodore I).

1221, July, under urgent insistence of papal legate Pelagius, crusaders launched a foolhardy attack on Cairo; dwindling supplies forced retreat, while a night-time attack by Egypt's powerful ruler Ayubid Sultan Al-Kamil resulted in great crusader losses and eventually its army surrender. Al-Kamil (who put a one Byzantine gold piece bounty for every Christian head brought to him during the war) agreed to an eight-year peace agreement with Europe.

1222, a "Golden Bull"/edict issued by Hungary's King Andrew, to resolve issues between a budding middle-class nobility and hereditary nobles, established rights of Hungary noblemen. Included were: the right to disobey the King if he acted contrary to law; freeing of nobles and church from all taxes and from war or obligation to finance such outside Hungary; and creation of copies for each the Pope, Knights Templar, Knights Hospitaller, archbishops of Hungary cities Esztergom (also the capital) and Kalocsa, and for the imperial court. (The charter represented the first constitutional document of Hungary, possibly influenced by England's Magna Carta, given meetings in Hungary with exiled Magna Carta leaders during 5th Crusade.)⁴⁴⁴

1224, The successor (through marriage) to Kingdom of Armenia/Cilicia, with Mongols advancing in Central Asia and Mid-East, sought to create an Armeno-Mongol alliance against common foes, notably Mamluks.⁴⁴⁵ Disintegration of Crusader States and Islamization of Mongols increasingly were leaving the kingdom devoid of regional allies.

1226, Prussian Duke Konrad invited Teutonic Knights to Christianize Prussians.

1227, Pope of Roman Catholic Church, Gregory IX. (Initiator of the Inquisition in France, 1235).

1227, Genghis Khan died; his son, Ogedai continued his father's quests, completing conquest of north China, sack of Kiev, Russia in 1240, and an invasion of Hungary.

1228, Sixth Crusade: Frederick II repeatedly had vowed a crusade but failed to live up to his word (which was to result in his excommunication by Pope Gregory IX). Without Pope's blessing he nonetheless set sail from Brindisi, landed in Saint-Jean d'Acre, and through diplomacy achieved unexpected success by claiming Jerusalem.

1229, Frederick II attempted but failed to conquer Egypt, and made peace treaty with Al-Kamil. The treaty allowed Crusaders to rule over most of Jerusalem while islamists were given control of the Dome of the Rock and the Al-Aksa mosque. The peace brought about by this treaty lasted about a decade.

1232, as a result of a rebellion by Emperor Frederick II's son, Henry, Frederick extended earlier-granted privileges globally to other non-clerical territories, enabling German dukes to secure order north of the

⁴⁴³ 1219, St. Francis of Assisi had crossed the battle lines at Damietta to speak with Al-Kamil. He and his companion Illuminatus were captured, beaten and brought before the Sultan. St. Bonaventure, in his Major Life of St. Francis, says the Sultan was impressed by Francis and spent some time with him. Francis was given safe passage, offered many gifts but all he accepted was a horn for calling the faithful to prayer. His act eventually led to the establishment of the Franciscan Custody of the Holy Land.

⁴⁴⁴ Gradually, the election of German kings by leading nobility (per the Frankish tradition) had become the privilege of a group of princes called Electors; the 1356 Golden Bull would define election proceedings.

⁴⁴⁵ *Mameluke/Mamluk* = a military caste (soldiers of slave origins) in various Islamic societies (particularly Egypt, but also in the Levant, Mesopotamia and India, in some cases attaining higher ranks and seizing sultanates. The Mamluk Sultanate (1250-1517) fought Mongols and Crusaders. Mamluks were of varied ancestries depending on the region and period.

Alps (they for the first time called *domini terrae*, owners of their own lands). Meanwhile Frederick II concentrated on his homelands in Italy.

1241, Pope of Roman Catholic Church, Celestine IV (17 days; died before coronation).

1241, Mongol Ogedai died on a campaign. His successor, Hulagu, turned concentration on Asia Minor and Mid-East, leaving Europe temporarily alone.

1242, Saintonge War: a feudal dynastic war between forces of King Louis IX of France and King Henry III of England in center-west France, originating from displeasure of Louis vassals with accession of his brother Alphonse as Count of Poitou. The French dealt the English a decisive blow at Battle of Taillebourg and concluded matters at the Siege of Saintes. (However, due to dynastic sensibilities and a desire to go on a crusade, Louis IX did not annex Guyenne.)

1242, Battle of Ice was a major blow to the idea of conquering Orthodox Russia, Pope Gregory IX having endorsed a Teutonic Knights' attempt, particularly on Republics of Pskov and Novgorod (this being considered part of the "Northern Crusades"). Sweden also undertook several crusades against Novgorod.

1243-1254, Pope of Roman Catholic Church, Innocent IV.

1243-1263, Patriarch of Eastern Orthodox Church, Gregory I.

1243, Papal interests represented by Knights Templars brought on conflict with Egypt.

1244, Many Islamists had been unhappy with Al-Kamil's yield of control of Jerusalem. Khwarezmian ⁴⁴⁶ force summoned by Egypt stormed Jerusalem. The crusaders were drawn into battle at La Forbie in Gaza. Crusader army and its Bedouin mercenaries were completely defeated w/in 48 hours by Baibars⁴⁴⁷ force of Khwarezmian tribesmen, a battle considered the death knell to "kingdoms" of Outremer, although this event caused no wide outrage in Europe as had 1187 fall). Templars, forced to relocate, moved headquarters to other cities such as seaport of Acre in north.

1243, Rum Sultanate succumbed to advancing Mongols, its power disintegrating until Seljuqs became Mongol vassals (and would disappear completely by first decade of 14th century). Weakening of Rum Sultanate did no good, however, for remainder of Byzantine Empire. Turkish "beys"⁴⁴⁸ (whose warriors had participated in conquests of both Byzantine and Seljuq territories) began setting up fiefdoms or semi-independent states. (Following the Byzantine-Seljuk Wars, the various Turks that had settled in Asia Minor had begun to carve out several beyliks, or semi-independent states, for themselves, following the collapse of the Sultanate of Rum late in this century.)

1244, Jerusalem fell to the Mamluks. France's King Louis IX proceeded to organize a crusade against Egypt.

1246, Thessalonica and Macedonia were seized by Nicaeans (*see* 1261).

1248-1254, Seventh Crusade: Leaving from newly constructed port of Aigues-Mortes in south France, this crusade was a failure (Louis spending much of it living at court of Acre Crusader Kingdom). After its defeat, he was captured near Damietta, Egypt. (In the midst of this crusade was the "first Shepherds' Crusade" in 1251.⁴⁴⁹)

⁴⁴⁶ *Khwarezm* = large oasis region on Amu Darya river delta in W Central Asia, today partly in Uzbekistan, partly Turkmenistan.

⁴⁴⁷ *Baibars*/Baybars/nicknamed Abul-Futuh = Mamluk Sultan of Egypt, whose reign marked start of an age of Mamluk dominance in E Mediterranean, managing to pave the way for the end of Crusader presence in Syria and unite Egypt and Syria into one powerful state able to fend off threats from both Crusaders and Mongols. He was one of commanders of forces that inflicted devastating defeat on 7th Crusade and led vanguard of Egyptian army first substantive defeat of Mongol army (Battle of Ain Jalut, 1260), considered a turning point in history.

⁴⁴⁸ *Bey* = title of Turkish rulers.

⁴⁴⁹ A peasant movement that arose in N France led reportedly by a very hold Hungarian monk/"the Master of Hungary," claiming on instruction of Virgin Mary to the shepherds of France to the Holy Land to rescue Louis. He led some 60,000 mostly young peasants to Paris, where he met with Louis IX's mother, acting regent. The group split up after leaving, created disturbances in several French cities and also began to attack Jews. Authorities

1249, King Alfonso III of Portugal took Faro in the Algarve, removing last Moors state from Portuguese soil (the Portuguese “Reconquista” would become final the following year). Now, some 500 years from the beginning of the Reconquista, the sole remaining rulers were the Nasrid Dynasty in the Kingdom of Granada.

1250, Frederick II died, followed by a two-decade “interregnum” of competing German dynasties and failure to establish an authorized leader.

1250 (to 1517), Period known as “Mamluk Sultanate”—seizure by Mamluk factions of Egyptian and Syrian Sultanates.

Crusaders, facing advances of Egyptian Mamluks, pursued a Franco-Mongol alliance, in that Ilkhanate⁴⁵⁰ Mongols were believed sympathetic to Christianity and when Mongol forces came in from the east in mid-13th century they were seen as potential allies. Frankish princes engineered Mid-East invasions by Mongols several times, while also trying to maintain cautious neutrality with Egyptian Mamluks.

1254-1261, Pope of Roman Catholic Church, Alexander IV.

1254-1258, Byzantine Emperor Theodore II Laskaris; crowned 1255 (son of John III; grandson of Theodore I).

1257, German selection of a new King ultimately resulted in a “double election” with two kings over the realm, reflecting political split between “Guelph” and “Ghibelline” persuasions. The former chose Richard of Cornwall and the latter, Alfonso X of Castile. The Guelph faction supported the Pope and Holy Roman Emperor in central and northern Italy; the Ghibellines, largely Italian aristocrats, supported German emperors.

1258-1261, Byzantine Emperor John IV Laskaris (son of Theodore II).

1258, Hulagu and his Mongols took Baghdad.

1259, following the Fourth Crusade, Palaiologan dynasty members had fled Constantinople to Nicaea.

1259-1261, Byzantine co-Emperor was Michael VIII Palaiologos (great-grandson of Alexios III; grand nephew by marriage of John III).

1260, although Mongols attacked as far south as Damascus, they lost to Mamluks in Palestine’s Jezreel Valley (September 3 Battle of Ain Jalut), their first decisive defeat and a demonstration of impossibilities of strategical manipulation by the “West” (--barons of Acre actually had allowed Mamluks to pass through their territory before Battle of Ain Jalut). After Ain Jalut the Mongols were unable to resurge as previously they always had, while Mamluks under Baibars were on their way to complete their pledge to rid the mid-East of Franks. Christians in conquered cities who were unable to leave were massacred or enslaved.

1261-1264, Pope of Roman Catholic Church, Urban IV.

1261, Palaiologan Michael VIII became senior Byzantine Emperor **at Nicaea**. His son Andronikos II Palaiologos was co-emperor in September.

1261, Michael VIII Palaiologos recaptured Constantinople from Latin/Crusader states and re-established the Byzantine Empire.

1263-1276, Patriarch of Eastern Orthodox Church, Nicholas II.

1265-1268, Pope of Roman Catholic Church, Clement IV.

A near three-year deadlock of cardinals left the Roman Catholic Church without a Pope.

1265, Caesarea, Haifa and Arsuf all fell to Sultan Baibars.

rounded up and excommunicated the crusaders, but a group led by the “Master” resisted outside Bourges and he was killed in the ensuing skirmish.

⁴⁵⁰ *Ilkhanate/Il-khanate* = a Mongol khanate (realm of a kahn) established in Persia in 13th century and considered part of the Mongol Empire; based originally on Genghis Khan's campaigns 1219-1224 in Khwarezm Empire and founded by Genghis's grandson, Hulagu, in territories today comprising most of Iran, Iraq, Afghanistan, Turkmenistan, Armenia, Azerbaijan, Georgia, Turkey, and W Pakistan; Ilkhanate initially embraced many religions but was particularly sympathetic to Buddhism and Christianity and sought Franco-Mongol alliance with Crusaders in order to conquer Palestine. Rulers subsequent to 1295 embraced Islam.

1266, Mamluks took all Latin holdings in Galilee.

1268, Mamluks under Baibars finally succeeded in capturing Crusader Principality/City of Antioch.

1269, Mamluks took Tripoli.

1270, Mamluks destroyed Ascalon

1270, Eighth Crusade: Organized by France's Louis IX. Again sailing from Aigues-Mortes (initially to come to aid of remnants of crusader states in Syria), this crusade was diverted to Tunis, where Louis IX spent only two months before dying (later canonized for his efforts).⁴⁵¹

1271-1276, Pope of Roman Catholic Church, Gregory X.

1271-1272, Ninth Crusade: Future king Edward I of England (who accompanied Louis IX on Eighth Crusade) undertook expedition against Baibars, a crusade deemed a failure.⁴⁵²

1273, Rudolf I of Habsburg was elected German king, it being seen as the effective end of the German monarchical "interregnum." In the interim, imperial authority had been lost, and princes who had consolidated their holdings had become even more independent. Rudolf I, King of the Romans to his 1291 death, would play a vital role raising the Habsburg dynasty to lead position among Imperial feudal dynasties.⁴⁵³

1274, Roman Catholic and Eastern Orthodox churches briefly were united by the Second Council of Lyon, but it later was repudiated by the Orthodox as never effecting reconciliation.

1276, Popes of Roman Catholic Church, Innocent V and Adrian V (January-August).

1276-1277, Pope " " John XXI. (There is no John XX of record.)

1276-1316, Patriarch of Eastern Orthodox Church, Athanasius III.

1277-1280, Pope of Roman Catholic Church, Nicholas III.

1279, Kublai Khan (Genghis Khan's grandson⁴⁵⁴) conquered China completely and established the Yuan dynasty.

1281-1285, Pope of Roman Catholic Church, Martin IV.

1281, Michael IX Palaiologos (son of Andronikos II) was made Byzantine co-Emperor.

1282-1328, Andronikos II Palaiologos, now senior Byzantine Emperor, was crowned in December.

1285-1287, Pope of Roman Catholic Church, Honorius IV.

1288-1292, Pope " " Nicholas IV.

Another interregnum due to cardinal deadlock left Roman Catholic Church without a Pope for two years.

1291, Acre fell for last time; the last traces of Christian rule disappeared from the Levant.

Knights Templar, the last crusading order of knights to hold regional territory, took control of the island of Rhodes. The crusading ideal became devalued by Papal justifications of political and territorial aggressions within Catholic Europe.

1294, Pope of Roman Catholic Church, Celestine V.

1294/1295 Michael IX Palaiologos was crowned Byzantine emperor.

1294-1303, Pope " " Boniface VIII.

⁴⁵¹ 8th Crusade sometimes counted as 7th if 5th and 6th counted as one; 9th also sometimes counted as part of 8th. A number of tangential crusade missions are not detailed herein, *e.g.* Northern Crusades of Teutonic Order (Baltic Sea region—mostly German Christians seeking establishing conversions); Swedish Crusades (Finland; traditionally described as three crusades, 1155, 1249, 1293, the third against Novgorod; although dubbing as "crusades" appears to be historical national romanticism and that the events were ordinary conquest expeditions, in that archaeological findings show Finland as already largely Christian); Crusade of Aragon; Alexandrian Crusade; Mahdian Crusade (N. Africa).

⁴⁵² The term "Crusade" continued to be used to describe contemporaneous and subsequent campaigns conducted through to 16th century in territories outside Levant—usually against pagans, heretics, and peoples under the ban of excommunication for a mixture of religious, economic, and political reasons.

⁴⁵³ Originally a Swabian count, he was first Habsburg to acquire the duchies of Austria and Styria-- territories that would remain under Habsburg rule for more than 600 years and form the core of present-day Austria.

⁴⁵⁴ And host to Marco Polo.

Ottoman⁴⁵⁵-Byzantine Wars: Series of decisive conflicts between Turkish Ottomans and leading to final destruction of the predominantly Greek-speaking Byzantine Empire as it struggling against civil wars in the rise of the Ottoman Empire. The Byzantine Nicaea contingent had been repulsing Seljuq Turks in remaining Greek-ruled land, but the Sultanate of Rum (Byzantium's chief rival in Asia, a continuation of the Great Seljuq Empire in Anatolia) took advantage over the last of a chaotically-divided Byzantine Empire, seizing west Asia Minor territory. The Byzantine position also was compromised in the European continent by rival despot-ruled Epirus, a second Bulgarian Empire that caused troop removals from Asia Minor to maintain Byzantium's grip on Thrace.

1299, Osman I/El-Gazi/Gazi Khan/"Kara" had gained sufficient position to declare himself Sultan, and his territories became known as the Ottoman Empire.

The 13th century's developments preceded creation of modern states, a process varying by lands, most advanced in territories the matched those of old Germanic tribes (such as Bavaria).

1300, After the Battle of Ain Jalut, the Mongol Khanate established by Hulagu Khan in Persia defeated Mamluks one time only, briefly reoccupying Syria and parts of Palestine a few months. Hulagu Khan, however, was unable to advance into Egypt.

Early in the 1300's plague caused the fall of the Mongol empire founded by Genghis Khan. Central Asia collapsed into a number of small kingdoms.

1302/1303, Knights Templar lost Rhodes to Egyptian Mamluks (Siege of Arwad), and lost their last foothold in region of Holy Land. Although organization began to dwindle, they still managed many businesses and remained free of local governance (everywhere, "a state within a state"); and, despite the Templar's standing army being without an actual mission, it still was able freely to pass all borders, altogether heightening tensions with some European nobility.

1303-1304, Pope of Roman Catholic Church, Benedict XI.

1305-1314, Pope " " Clement V.

Another interregnum due to cardinal deadlock left Roman Catholic Church without a Pope for two years.

1305, new Pope Clement V, based at Avignon, France, proposed merging the Knights Templar with the Knights Hospitaller.

1307, increasing distrust of Knights Templar (and their 'secret' ceremonies) was taken advantage of by King Philip IV of France, who coincidentally was deeply in debt to them. Many of the Order were arrested, tortured into false confessions, and burned at the stake.⁴⁵⁶

After bullying by Philip IV of France, Pope Clement V issued a papal bull that called for arrest of Templars and seizure of their assets by all European monarchs. (The Pope's attempt at papal hearings as to their guilt or innocence, however, was blocked by Philip IV in 1310.)

1309, Pope Clement V confirmed election of Henry VII as German king. Clement initially agreed to crown Henry VII as Emperor in 1312 (the title having been vacant since Frederick II's death), in exchange

⁴⁵⁵ The scant reliable data about the (*Osmanh*) Ottomans suggests that the khan/leader of a central Asian, Turkic-speaking tribe escaped from Mongols in Persian territory, served the Sultanate of Rum, invaded and conquered Bithynian land adjacent to Byzantine territories of Nicomedia, Nicaea and Bursa, and founded a strongly military emirate. His son, Osman I founded the "Osmanli" dynasty--the term changed by Europeanally to *Ottoman*), which ruled the ensuing Ottoman Empire (roughly lasting 1299-1923), with Constantinople/Istanbul becoming its capital city and "Turk" becoming a synonym for "Ottoman." (The empire has been known variously in English as the Osmanic Empire, Osmanian Empire. and Ottoman State, colloquially referred to as the Turkish Empire or simply Turkey.)

⁴⁵⁶ Templars were accused of idolatry. A parchment in *Archives Nationales* in Paris of interrogations mentions a monochromatic image of a man on linen or cotton that qualified as an idol to interrogators, which suggests presence of Shroud of Turin. The purported Shroud was displayed first by family of grandson of Geoffrey deCharney. The Shroud of Turin's origins still are matter of controversy despite a 1988 carbon dating analysis concluding it was made between 1260 and 1390, that dating still subject of debate.

for which Henry VII swore to protect the Pope, defend rights of and not attack privileges of papal states, and undertake a crusade once crowned.

1309, Rhodes surrendered to Knights Hospitaller after two years of their campaigning against it (their Grand Master having initiated the plan for Rhodes to be their own domain).

1312, Threatened with military action by Philip IV, Pope Clement finally agreed to disband the Order of Knights Templar. It was dissolved, much of its property being given to Knights Hospitallers.⁴⁵⁷ Hospitallers on Rhodes/"Knights of Rhodes" were forced to become more militarized.

1314, Elderly Knights' Grand Master Jacques deMolay and his associate, Preceptor of Normandy Geoffrey deCharney, were burned at the stake March 18. With the Templars' last leaders gone, remaining members around Europe either were arrested and tried under papal order (virtually none were convicted⁴⁵⁸); absorbed into other orders such as Hospitallers; or pensioned. Some fled to territories like excommunicated Scotland, or to Switzerland; Templar organizations in Portugal simply changed their name to "Knights of Christ."

1315, start of Great Famine, which began a decrease in Germany population.

1316-1334, Pope of Roman Catholic Church, John XXII, at Avignon (opposed by antipope "Nicholas V," 1328-1330).

1316-1354, Patriarch of Eastern Orthodox Church, Gregory II.

1320, "Second" Shepherds' Crusade was a separate movement in Normandy, purportedly prompted when a teenaged shepherd claimed to have been visited and given instructions by the "Holy Spirit" to fight Moors in Spain.⁴⁵⁹

1328-1341, Andronikos III Palaiologos (son of Michael IX) became sole Byzantine Emperor. (He had been co-emperor in 1316 and rival emperor from 1321).

1334-1342, Pope of Roman Catholic Church, Benedict XII at Avignon.

1337 (to 1453), commencement of the "100 Years War" between Britain and France.

1341-1347, Byzantine Emperor was John V. Palaiologos (son of Andronikos III); John VI Kantakouzenos (a maternal relative of the Palaiologoi) was rival emperor in October 1341).

1342-1352, Pope of Roman Catholic Church, Clement VI at Avignon.

1347-1354, John VI became senior Byzantine Emperor.

1347, John V Palaiologos (son of Andronikos III) was Byzantine co-Emperor; in 1352 became rival Emperor.

1348-1350, Black Death plummeted Germany's population.

1352-1362, Pope " " Innocent VI at Avignon.

1352, Andronikos IV Palaiologos (son of John V) was co-Byzantine Emperor.

1353, Matthew Kantakouzenos (son of John VI) became co-Byzantine Emperor.

1354-1376, John V Palaiologos was senior Byzantine Emperor.

1354 (to 1357), Matthew Kantakouzenos was rival Byzantine sole Emperor.

1354-1366, Patriarch of Eastern Orthodox Church, Gregory III.

1356, another Golden Bull edict established a fixed college of German electors, symbolizing that *Kaiser/emperor* and *Reich/realm* no longer could be considered identical. As relevance faded as to imperial strength and financing, previously manifested in Empire lands by respective kings, direct

⁴⁵⁷ Those holdings organized in eight *tongues* administered by priors—one each in Crown of Aragon, Auvergne, Castile, England, France, Provence, Germany, Italy).

⁴⁵⁸ A document record of Templar trials discovered in Vatican secret archives 2001/"Chinon Parchment" shows that Pope Clement absolved Templars of all heresies in 1308, before Order's disbandment.

⁴⁵⁹ The Second Shepherds' Crusade first marched to Paris where Philip V refused them; then south attacking castles, royal officials, priests, lepers but most of all Jews; John XXII In Avignon gave orders to stop them; when they entered Aragon in Spain James II warned his nobles to keep Jews safe; when at fortress of Montclús over 300 Jews were killed, James's son Alfonso was sent to bring them under control; those responsible for the massacre were executed, after which this 'crusade' dispersed. King Philip in 1321 fined those communities in which Jews had been killed, which led to a second revolt, this time among the urban population.

governance of the realm no longer corresponded to individual ambitions. (Codifying princely independence of imperial jurisdiction, this Golden Bull set the constitutional form of the Holy Roman Empire that, with but a few modifications, survived until dissolution of the Holy Roman Empire of the German Nation in 1806.)

1362-1370, Pope of Roman Catholic Church, Urban V at Avignon.

1366-1385, Patriarch of Eastern Orthodox Church, Niphon.

1368, by this time, the new Chinese Ming Dynasty had driven Mongols out of China. The first Ming Emperor Hongwu, and his successor Yongle demanded and received homage from many Central Asian states, paid to China as political heirs to the former House of Kublai.

1370-1378, Pope of Roman Catholic Church, Gregory XI at Avignon.

1373, Manuel II Palaiologos (son of John V) was co-Byzantine Emperor.

1375, Cilicia (Kingdom of) Armenia (ruled for its last 34 years by Latin Christian Lusignan dynasty) finally fell after relentless Egyptian Mamluk attacks and concomitant internal religious conflict.

1376, Andronikos IV was senior Byzantine Emperor.

1376-1379, John VII Palaiologos was co-Byzantine Emperor.

1378-1389, Pope of Roman Catholic Church, Urban VI (opposed during reign by [Robert of Geneva] "Clement VII" [1378-1394]).

1379-1390, John V Palaiologos was senior Byzantine Emperor.

1379-1390, John VII Palaiologos was senior Byzantine Emperor.

1380, Byzantine Thrace was lost to Ottomans, the once mighty Byzantine Empire having been reduced to a mere collection of despot-ruled areas, a few Aegean islands, and a strip of Thrace land.

The late 1300's saw the rise of Mongol Timur/Tamerlane (from what now is Uzbekistan), whose family lived by Turkish culture. Khan Tokhtamysh meanwhile had formed the "Golden Horde" (combining "Blue" and "White" hordes)--a rising threat of power; but he would make the mistake of waging war against Tamerlane, his former master.

1385-1389, Patriarch of Eastern Orthodox Church, Mark IV.

1389, Tamerlane forces, ravaging through south Russia, wiped out the Golden Horde's defenses and economy in the territory.

1389-1404, Pope of Roman Catholic Church, Boniface IX (opposed by antipopes "Clement VII" [1378-1394]; [Pedro de Luna] "Benedict XIII" [1394-1417]; [Baldassare Cossa] "John XXIII" [1404-1415]).

1390, Philadelphia (Turkey), the last independent Greek settlement in west Asia Minor, fell to the Ottomans.

1389-1398, Patriarch of Eastern Orthodox Church, Nicholas III.

1391-1425, Manuel II Palaiologos was senior Byzantine Emperor.

1394, the Ming emperor's attempts to treat Tamerlane as a vassal did not fare well. When Hongwu's ambassadors presented Timur with a letter so addressing him, he had the ambassadors detained and the 1500 soldiers of their guard executed.

1396, Crusade/Battle (Siege) of Nicopolis, Bulgaria (key stronghold of lower Danube, with a Turkish governor) was the last large-scale Middle Ages crusade. It faced Ottoman Empire forces versus an allied force of the kingdoms of Hungary and France, Knights Hospitaller, and Republic of Venice, along with smaller contingents from Europe. Reports maintain negligence and disorganization of, and dissension within the alliance. Horrendous executions of great numbers followed an Ottoman victory.

1398-1412, Patriarch of Eastern Orthodox Church, Gregory IV.

1398-1412, Patriarch of Eastern Orthodox Church, Gregory IV.

Some procedures and institutions had been fixed (*e.g.* 1356 Golden Bull); but subsequent emperors would neglect core lands, accompanied by deterioration of the assembly of realm leaders, with the Church simultaneously in a state of crisis over conflicting papal claimants.

1398, An army of Vytautas, ruler of the Grand Duchy of Lithuania, setting out from Moldavia, conquered the southern steppe all the way to Dnieper River and northern Crimea. Vytautas declared a 'crusade' against Tatars⁴⁶⁰ which received papal backing.

1398-1412, Patriarch of Eastern Orthodox Church, Gregory IV.

1399, Vytautas' army met and was defeated by the Tamerlane's "horde" (led by Tamerlane chiefs Temur Kutlugh and Emir Edigu) at the Vorskla River; victorious Tatars besieged Kiev.

[Note: In this time frame is found origination in Italy of the Renaissance period, 14th to 16th centuries--revival of classical art, architecture, literature and learning eventually to spread throughout Europe and mark transition from medieval to modern times.]

1400, Tamerlane invaded Christian Armenia and Georgia; more than 60,000 of surviving local populations were captured as slaves, many districts fully depopulated.

1401, Tamerlane invaded Baghdad, where 20,000 citizens including Islamists were massacred. (He ordered every soldier return with at least two severed human heads, the warriors reportedly so scared they killed earlier-captured prisoners to meet the demand. Tamerlane invaded Syria, sacked Aleppo, and defeated the Mamluk army to capture Damascus. The massacre of Damascus inhabitants (excepting artisans who were deported to Smarkand) caused Tamerlane to be declared a public enemy of Islam.

1402, Commencement of a 12-year "Ottoman Interregnum." Tamerlane had invaded Anatolia and at Ankara defeated and captured Sultan Bayezid of the Ottoman Empire (Bayezid would die in captivity). Tamerlane justified his attack as restoring rightful rule of Anatolia by Seljuq authority granted by Mongol conquerors. (Among cities taken and ravaged was Smyrna, a stronghold of the Christian Knights Hospitallers.) Anatolian Turkmen and Islamic rulers took refuge behind Tamerlane, as he annexed their lands. From his Samarkand capital Tamerlane came to control Turkey, Russia, and into India.⁴⁶¹ But Tamerlane's brothers had refused to recognize him and confirmed a Sultan Mehmed Celebi, civil strife yielding the interregnum period.

1403-1407, Andronikos V Palaiologos (son of John VII) was Byzantine co-emperor.

1404 December, Tamerlane began military campaigns against the Ming Dynasty. However, while encamped on the farther side of the Sihon (Syr-Daria), he was attacked by fever and plague. He died February 17, 1405, never reaching the Chinese border.⁴⁶²

In this interim, Khan Tokhtamysh, asked and received support from Vytautas the Great of Lithuania to take and reunify White and Blue subdivisions of the Golden Horde. Vytautas assembled a huge army that included Lithuanians, Russians, Mongols, Moldavians, Poles, Romanians and Teutonic Knights.

1404-1406, Pope of Roman Catholic Church, Innocent VII (opposed during reign by antipopes "Benedict XIII" [1394-1417] and "John XXIII" [1400-1415]).

1406-1415, Pope of Roman Catholic Church, Gregory XII (opposed during reign by antipopes "Benedict XIII," "John XXIII," and [Pietro Philarghi] "Alexander V" [1409-1410]).

⁴⁶⁰ *Tatars* = a term used historically to refer to an ethno-Mongolian group which may have had some Turkic composition.

⁴⁶¹ Tamerlane referred to himself as *ghazi*/"Warrior of Islam." Islamic writers after the Ankara victory complained that the Tamerlane army's ravage of Western Anatolia acted more like a horde of savages than civilized conquerors.

⁴⁶² Records indicate Tamerlane for part of his life surreptitiously had been a Ming vassal. His own empire ultimately extended (per modern geography) from SE Turkey, Syria, Iraq, Kuwait and Iran through Central Asia encompassing part of Kazakhstan, Afghanistan, Armenia, Azerbaijan, Georgia, Turkmenistan, Uzbekistan, Kyrgyzstan, Pakistan, North-Western India, and even approaches Kashgar in China. His conquests are claimed to have caused deaths of up to 17 million people; and his campaigns caused some large permanent demographic changes--N Iraq remained predominantly Assyrian Christian until attacked, looted, plundered and destroyed, its population decimated by systematic mass slaughter, all churches destroyed and any survivors forcefully converted to Islam by the sword.

1412-1417, Patriarch of Eastern Orthodox Church, Nicholas IV.

1413, Ottoman interregnum ended; Mehmed Çelebi emerged as victor, crowned himself Sultan Mehmed I.

1414 (to 1418), Council of Constance resolved some papal contentions; but the medieval idea to unify all Christendom into one political entity, with Church and Empire leading institutions, was in serious decline.

1415, another two-year interregnum in the Roman Catholic Church.

1416, John III Palaiologos (son of John VII) was Byzantine co-Emperor.

1417-1425, Patriarch of Eastern Orthodox Church, Athanasius IV.

1417-1431, Pope of Roman Catholic Church, Martin V.

After 1419, much Roman Catholic Church energy was diverted to fighting Hussite heresy; and 1410 to 1434 saw the Hussite/"Bohemian" wars.⁴⁶³

1425-1435, Patriarch of Eastern Orthodox Church, Mark V.

1425-1448, John VIII (son of Manuel II) was sole Byzantine Emperor.

1431-1447, Pope of Roman Catholic Church, Eugene IV (opposed by antipope [Amadeus of Savoy] "Felix V" [1439 to 1449]).

1433, at Rome, Eugene IV crowned Sigismund Emperor.

1435-1459, Patriarch of Eastern Orthodox Church, Philotheus.

1439, Holy Roman and Eastern Orthodox churches ostensibly were briefly reunited (Council of Florence), but Orthodox Church later repudiated the Council as never effecting reconciliation.⁴⁶⁴

1444, Hospitallers (at Smyrna?) withstood invasion by Egyptian Sultan.

1444, Battle of Varna: Ottomans (under Sultan Murad II) defeated Polish and Hungarian armies--the final battle of the "Crusade of Varna"

1447-1455, Pope of Roman Catholic Church, Nicholas V.

1449-1453, Constantine XI Palaiologos (son of Manuel II) was Byzantine Emperor.

1452, at Rome, Nicholas V crowned Frederick III Emperor.

1453, the Ottoman-Byzantine wars concluded with the fall of Constantinople to Sultan Mehmed II, who defeated the Byzantine forces led by Constantine XII.⁴⁶⁵ The Fall of Constantinople marked the end of the more than 1100-year Byzantine Empire, and loss of its remaining territories ceded to the Ottoman Empire.⁴⁶⁶

Some scholars mark the fall of Byzantium and Constantinople as the end of the Middle Ages. (Many Greek and non-Greek intellectuals fled the city before and after the siege, migrating particularly to Italy; and it is argued that they helped fuel the Renaissance.)

1455-1458, Pope of Roman Catholic Church, Callistus/Callixtus III. (First Spanish pope.)

1458-1464, Pope " " " Pius II.

⁴⁶³ *Hussite* = Christian movement based on teachings of Czech reformer Jan Hus, a forerunner of Protestant Reformation. Lured to Council of Constance by a letter of (purported) indemnity he was put to death 1415, after which Hussites came the series of wars. (Present-day Hussite traditions are represented in Moravian, Unity of the Brethren, and re-founded Czechoslovak Hussite churches.)

⁴⁶⁴ A Synod of Constantinople 1484 (31 years after Fall of Constantinople to Ottoman Turks) would repudiate Union of Florence and make official the position already taken by Orthodox in general. In 1965, the Pope and Ecumenical Patriarch of Constantinople would nullify the anathemas of 1054, essentially a goodwill gesture, not constituting real reunion between churches; contacts between them continue (a delegation from each joining every year to celebrate their respective patronal feasts [Rome, Saints Peter and Paul, June 29; Constantinople, Saint Andrew, November 30], including other visits.) In that the Eastern Orthodox Church is organized into self-governing branches, its Patriarch would not have authority to unite entire church with Rome even if his desire.)

⁴⁶⁵ Palaiologan Dynasty imperial throne claimants in exile: Demetrios Palaiologos (son of Manuel II), 1453-1460; Thomas Palaiologos (son of Manuel II), 1453-1465; Andreas Palaiologos (son of Thomas) 1465-1502.

⁴⁶⁶ Today part of Albania, Algeria, Armenia, Bosnia and Herzegovina, Bulgaria, Croatia, Cyprus, Egypt, France, George, Greece, Gibraltar, Israel, Italy, Jordan, Kosovo, Lebanon, Libya, Macedonia, Malta, Montenegro, Morocco, Romania, San Marino, Serbia, Slovenia, Spain, Syria, Tunisia, Turkey, Ukraine, Vatican City.

1459-1484, Patriarch of Eastern Orthodox Church, Mark VI.

1464-1471, Pope of Roman Catholic Church, Paul II.

1471-1484, Pope “ “ “ Sixtus IV. On request from Queen Isabella and King Ferdinand, Sixtus authorized an Inquisition targeted at converted (Hebrew) Christians in Spain.

1484-1486, Patriarch of Eastern Orthodox Church, Gregory V.

1480, Hospitallers withstood invasion Mehmed II, who had targeted them after capturing Constantinople.

1484-1492, Pope of Roman Catholic Church, Innocent VIII. (Appointed Tomas de Torquemada.)

1486, German King Frederick III refused united dukes’ demand to participate in an “Imperial Court.”

1486-1567, Patriarch of Eastern Orthodox Church, Joachim.

1492-1503, Pope of Roman Catholic Church, Alexander VI. (Father of Cesare and Lucrezia Borgia,)

1492, Hebrews expelled from Spain.

1492, Treaty of Granada finalized Spanish Reconquista.

1493, German King Frederick III died.

1493, “Bull *Inter caetera*.” Alexander VI divided the extra-European world between Spain and Portugal.

1494, Knights of Rhodes established a stronghold on peninsula of Halicarnassus.

1495, Frederick III’s successor son, German King Maximilian I convened the earlier requested “Imperial Court”/*Reichstag* (at Worms), where he and dukes agreed to four bills (*Reichsreform*/Imperial Reform) proposed to restructure the disintegrating empire, including “Imperial Circle Estates” and an Imperial Chamber Court (*Reichskammergericht*). Some decades would elapse before the new regulations were accepted universally and for the new court to function, with the “Imperial Circles” not finalized until 1512.

16th century would see north Germania become center of Protestant Reformation.

1503, Pope of Roman Catholic Church, Pius III (26 days).

1503-1513, Pope “ “ Julius II. He took effective control of all Papal States.

1508, German King Maximilian I failed in an attempted march to Rome to be crowned Emperor, and he proclaimed himself *Emperor-Elect* of the Holy Roman Empire with papal consent.

1512, following the Diet of Cologne, the (Germanic) Holy Roman Empire officially was renamed *Sacrum Romanum Imperium Nationis Germanicae*--Holy Roman Empire of the German Nation, an adjustment of title to its then reduced territory.⁴⁶⁷ (Some show this year as early as 1448).

1513-1521, Pope of Roman Catholic Church, Leo X. He extended the Spanish Inquisition in Portugal.

1515 (to 1523), Netherlands Habsburg government contended with Frisian peasants rebellion. Although the initially successful rebels ultimately were defeated, many major cities were sacked and as many as 132 ships sunk—altogether a blow for the Holy Roman Empire of the German Nation.

1517, Monk Martin Luther publicized his 95 Theses that challenged practices of the Roman Catholic Church and initiated the Protestant Reformation.

Pope Leo X excommunicated Martin Luther.

Charles V, who was to be Maximilian I’s successor, was Duke of Burgundy, King of the “Spanish Empire,” and Habsburg territories that included Austria and Hungary.

1519, Cairo fell to the Ottoman Turks.

1520, Charles V, Maximilian I’s successor, also assumed the *Emperor-Elect* title (but he would be crowned, in 1530 [below]).⁴⁶⁸

⁴⁶⁷ “Holy Roman Emperor” (or German *Römisch-Deutscher Kaiser*/“Roman-German Kaiser”) is used by historians to denote medieval German kings who also received the title of “Emperor of the Romans” from the Pope. After the 16th century, such elected monarch governed the Holy Roman Empire/*Holy Roman Empire of the German nation*, a Central European union of territories of the Medieval and Early Modern period.

Although the Iberian Peninsula realms (save Portugal) were united under one monarch under a nascent Spanish crown, separate inheritances dictated that the preceding personal union between German and Spanish crowns would not last. The former led to a junior Habsburg branch (Charles' brother Ferdinand), the senior branch continuing to rule Spain via Charles' son Philip's Burgundian inheritance. Meanwhile, many dukes saw Luther's acts as a chance to oppose Emperor Charles V's hegemony, dividing his empire along religious lines—north, east, and many major cities (Strasbourg, Frankfurt, Nuremberg) becoming Protestant, while south and western regions remained largely Catholic. **1522**, Sultan Suleimann the Magnificent besieged and drove out remaining Knights of Rhodes; survivors were allowed to withdraw to Sicily.

1522-1523, Pope “ “ “ Adrian VI. (Only Dutch pope.)

1523-1534, Pope of Roman Catholic Church, Clement VII. He forbade England's Henry VIII's divorce.

1526, beginning of rise in South Asia of Islamic Mughal/Mogul Empire (founded by Babur, descendant of Tamerlane).⁴⁶⁹

1527, “Sacco di Roma:” Imperial troops sacked Rome.

1530, Emperor-Elect Charles V was crowned Emperor of the Holy Roman Empire by Pope Clement VII.

1530, a separate Lutheran church became official religion in many German states.

1530, after moving place-to-place in Europe, the Knights were re-established when Charles V of Spain as King of Sicily gave them Malta, Gozo (small island of Malta archipelago) and North African port of Tripoli in perpetual fiefdom.

1534-1549, Pope of Roman Catholic Church, Paul III.

1540, With the rising of Protestantism and French Egalitarianism, the Order of Knights began to lose European holdings; property of the English branch was confiscated this year.

1550-1555, Pope of Roman Catholic Church, Julius III.

1555, Pope “ “ “ “ Marcellus II (21/22 days).

1555-1559, Pope “ “ “ Paul IV.

1548, a ruling by Emperor Charles V on the “religious question” offered a temporary ruling (“Augsburg interim”) on the legitimacy of two religious creeds in the empire working out differences under a general council of the Roman Catholic Church. Its 26 articles allowed for clergy marriages and bread *and* wine for the laity, but largely reflected standard Catholic principles of religious behavior.

1549, Protestant territories resisted the Augsburg Interim and at Leipzig proclaimed their own at Leipzig; Augsburg's overthrow was marked by a revolt of Protestant elector Maurice of Saxony and his allies. At negotiations the preceding summer even the Catholic princes had called for a lasting peace, but the Emperor was unwilling to recognize permanent religious division in western Christendom.

1552, “Peace of Passau:” After victory by Protestant armies, the Emperor granted Lutherans religious freedom until the next imperial Diet, called for early 1555.

1555, Peace of Augsburg (present day Bavaria, Germany)--a treaty between Emperor Charles V and the forces of an alliance of Lutheran princes--officially ended religious struggle, with permanent division of Christendom within the “Holy Roman Empire,” which latter (although nominally would to exist until *circa* 1806) effectively ceased to have any meaning. Lutheranism had achieved official status within its domains. Under the policy (“whose realm, his religion”; “in the Prince's land, the Prince's religion”),

⁴⁶⁸ Thenceforth all Emperors were merely *Emperors-Elect* although normally referred to as *Emperors*; at the same time, their chosen successors were called *King of the Romans* if elected by the college of Electors during the predecessor's lifetime.

⁴⁶⁹ Would rule most of Asian subcontinent (Pakistan, parts of Afghanistan and North India (classic period beginning in 1556 under “Akbar the Great”); would rule most of India by late 17th century; would decline against rising Hindu Maratha Empire.

German princes were free to select either Lutheranism or Catholicism, while subjects who did not wish to conform to the choice had a grace period to migrate to a personally acceptable region.⁴⁷⁰

During the next six decades Germany relatively would know peace, but Ottomans loomed a large threat and the Rhineland and west knew increasing French influence, while Emperors attempted to remain neutral to religious reformation and counter-reformation civil wars (e.g. the Cologne War).

1559-1565, Pope of the Roman Catholic Church, Pius IV.

1562, Naples experienced a brief Turkish invasion.

1565, summer or fall, Suleimann fiercely attempted to expel Knights from Malta; but despite great odds the Knights managed to hold on through two major assaults. Ultimately the Ottoman forces, deteriorated by illness and short supplies, and learning that Sicilian reinforcements were enroute, broke siege and left. (This was the last action in which Knights won a decisive victory.)

1566-1572, Pope of Roman Catholic Church, Pius V.

1567-1569, Vacancy in office of Patriarch of Eastern Orthodox Church.

1569-1590, Patriarch of Eastern Orthodox Church, Silvester.

1568 (to 1648), Commencement of Eighty Years War between Spain and Dutch Republic.

1570, Pope Pius V was excommunicated by Queen Elizabeth I of England.

1571, Ottoman Empire took Cyprus from Venice.

1571, at Battle of Lepanto a coalition Holy League fleet of Spain (including its territories of Naples, Sicily and Sardinia), Republic of Venice, Papacy, Republic of Genoa, Duchy of Savoy, Knights Hospitaller, and others decisively defeated the main fleet of the Ottoman Empire.

The Knights had become re-established on Malta; but with dwindling revenues they turned to policing the Mediterranean against piracy (notably Ottoman-endorsed "Barbary Corsairs," operating from the North African coastline), protecting Christian merchant shipping to and from Levant, and freeing captured Christian slaves that formed bases for piratical trading and navies. This became known as "the Corso." It augmented the traditional Mediterranean protection by naval city states of Venice, Genoa, and Pisa; but Knights' financial woes were compounded by a gradual outdateding of exchange rate of local currencies against the "scudo." Economically hindered, many of them exceeded duty—raiding and plundering Islamic ships, taking local women as wives, and serving in navies of France and Spain for adventure and more money. Their changing attitudes were coupled with concomitant effects of Reformation and Counter-Reformation, and lack of stability of the Roman Catholic Church.

1572, a visible supernovae is taken as a new "star."

1572-1585, Pope of Roman Catholic Church, Gregory XIII.

1577, German Bailiwick of Brandenburg became Lutheran but temporarily continued financial contribution to Order of Knights.⁴⁷¹

1580, December, Henri III of France signed a two-year Catholic/Huguenot truce; and by concessions to the Huguenots and powerful Catholic dynasties of deGuise and Lorraine, it managed to keep things calm temporarily.

1583, matters in France began to fall apart, while Henri III more aggressively asserted his own Catholicism. English diplomats advised Queen Elizabeth I of the increasing tolerance of Catholicism in France.

1585-1590, Pope of Roman Catholic Church, Sixtus V.

1589, the Dominican Friar, philosopher, and mathematician (Felippo) Giordano Bruno (then teaching at the local university at the Lutheran city of Helmsteadt in Saxony, where the duchy had been supportive of him) was publically speaking obliquely against the papacy.

⁴⁷⁰ Charles V, who had battled both French and German princes for much of his tenure, gave up; Pope Paul IV upon his election took the side of France. Charles V abdicated and divided his territories between son Philip and Ferdinand of Austria.

⁴⁷¹ Ensuing Knight events included their presence in Caribbean; French governor De Poincy of St. Kitts Island adopting Order emblems; DePoincy's 1660 deeding Knights island of S. Croix, added to island they previously had bought, all Caribbean possessions he Knights sold 1665 to West India Company.

1590, Pope “ “ “ “ Urban VII (12 days).
1590-1601, Patriarch of Eastern Orthodox Church, Meletius I.
1590-1591, Pope of Roman Catholic Church, Gregory XIV.
1591, Pope “ “ “ “ Innocent IX (62 days).
1600, February 1, in the Campo de' Fiori, Rome, Giordano Bruno was burned at the stake as a heretic.⁴⁷²
1601-1620, Patriarch of Eastern Orthodox Church, Cyril III.
1592-1605, Pope of Roman Catholic Church, Clement VIII.
1605, Pope “ “ “ “ Leo XI (26 days).
1605-1621, Pope “ “ “ “ Paul V.
1607, the Grand Master of Hospitallers/Knights was granted status of *Reichsfurst*/Prince of the Holy Roman Empire of the German Nation (despite Order's territory always south of that empire).
1612, Rudolf II died. His inaction, when the Catholic Church was reasserting itself forcefully in Austria and Hungary, had angered Protestant princes; and imperial power had sharply deteriorated by the time he died.
1618 (to 1648): Religious conflict led to the “Thirty Years' War,” fought primarily in Germany with devastation of its lands (its population reduced by some 30%), but involving most European countries, naval warfare, and shaping future colonial formations. Although fought apparently as a religious conflict between Protestants and Catholics, internal political disputes and power balances were significant. It generally became more a continuation of Bourbon–Habsburg rivalry for European political pre-eminence that led to warfare between France and Habsburg powers. Major elements, besides extensive destruction/denuding by foraging armies, were episodes of famine and disease (also significantly decreasing populace of Bohemia, Low Countries, and Italy), and bankrupting most of the combatants. Problems of discipline in combinations of army regiments with individual mercenaries (the latter capable of changing sides, battle to battle) were compounded by the *ad hoc* nature of military financing (armies were expected to be largely self-funding from spoil and, if lawless, extorted tributes where they operated).
1620-1636, Patriarch of Eastern Orthodox Church, Gerasimus I.
1621-1623, Pope of Roman Catholic Church, Gregory XV.
1623-1644, Pope “ “ “ “ Urban VIII. (The trial of Galileo Galilei occurred during Urban VIII's tenure.)
1630, Grand Master of Hospitallers/Knights was awarded ecclesiastic equality with cardinals as a “Prince of the Church.”
1636-1639, Patriarch of Eastern Orthodox Church, Metrophanes.
1639-1645, “ “ “ “ , Nicephorus.
1644-1655, Pope of Roman Catholic Church, Innocent X.
1645-1657, Patriarch of Eastern Orthodox Church, Joannicius.
1648, Peace of Westphalia : A series of treaties that ended the Thirty Years War in Holy Roman Empire and ended the Eighty Years War between Spain and Dutch Republic. Treaties involved Holy Roman Emperor Ferdinand II (of House of Habsburg), Kingdoms of Spain, France, Sweden and Dutch Republic, Princes of the Holy Roman Empire, and sovereigns of the “Free Imperial Cities.”⁴⁷³

⁴⁷²Very briefly, the peripathetic Giordano Bruno, who continued writing and publishing, subsequently had been expelled through a power struggle between Duke Heinrich Julius and Helmstedt's Lutheran pastor (Gilbert Voet). Spring, 1589, had gone to Frankfurt; c. 1590, to Switzerland to teach for five months; then, 1591, unexpectedly returned to Italy. In effect he had been a fugitive from the Inquisition for at least a decade. Eventually he was tried before the Venetian Inquisition, transferred as a prisoner (despite a ‘confession’) to the Rome. For the intricate details of his views on religion, further trials, etc. see Rowland, Ingrid D., *Giordano Bruno*, Chicago & London: University of Chicago Press, 2008.

⁴⁷³ *Free Imperial Cities* = cities formally ruled by emperor only as opposed to majority of Empire's cities, governed by one of many princes/dukes or prince-bishops; “Free” cities also had independent representation in the

A first “modern” diplomatic congress, Westphalia initiated a new political order in central Europe based on concept of sovereign-governed sovereign states, while regulation became integral to constitutional law of the Holy Roman Empire. (Included were Treaty of Osnabruck [concerning Holy Roman Emperor/Empire and Sweden and respective allies]; Treaty of Munster (concerning Holy Roman Emperor/Empire and France and respective allies]; Peace of Munster [concerning Dutch Republic and Kingdom of Spain]). The Swiss and Northern Netherlands left the empire; Habsburg emperors focused on consolidation of their estates in Austria and Holland. (Peace was not restored completely through Europe, however, in that France and Spain remained at war the next 11 years.)⁴⁷⁴

The Holy Roman Empire from this point was a fully powerless entity existing only in name.

1655-1667, Pope of Roman Catholic Church, Alexander VII.

1659, Treaty of Pyrenees made peace between France and Spain.

1657-1678, Patriarch of Eastern Orthodox Church, Paisius.

1667-1669, Pope of Roman Catholic Church, Clement IX.

1670-1676, Pope “ “ “ Clement X.

1676-1689, Pope “ “ “ Innocent XI.

1678-1688, Patriarch of Eastern Orthodox Church, Parthenius I.

1683, Battle of Vienna: the Ottoman western colonial advance decisively was ended by a Holy Roman Empire army’s defeat (under Polish King John III Sobieski) of a large Turkish army, heralding dismemberment of European Ottoman Empire.

1688-1710, Patriarch of Eastern Orthodox Church, Gerasimus II.

1689-1691, Pope of Roman Catholic Church, Alexander VIII.

1691-1700, Pope “ “ “ Innocent XII.

The 1600’s had seen, and 1700’s would see decline in European Christian attitudes toward the Knights’ demoralization as they showed growing lack of allegiance, both to their Order and Catholicism. By the 1700’s, corsairing by Malta’s Knights had grown rampant, encouraged by also-profiting local authorities. Europeans saw the Knights as a commercially-oriented state, no longer a military outpost of a united Christendom. During their stay Malta flourished with mighty defenses, hospitals, a library, a university, and mathematical and nautical sciences schools. Despite developments, however, some Maltese including nobility (not admitted to the Order) grew resentful, viewing Knights as a privileged class. Nonetheless, the Knights of Malta would not be unseated until by Napoleon Bonaparte, 1798.

By the time of the rise of Louis XIV, the Hapsburgs as Archdukes of Austria would be embroiled in various European conflicts (War of Spanish Succession; War of Polish Succession; War of Austrian Succession; and countering the rise of Prussia).

1700-1721, Pope of Roman Catholic Church, Clement XI.

1710-1712, Patriarch of Eastern Orthodox Church, Samuel.

1712-1714, “ “ “ “ , Cosmas II.

1714-1723, “ “ “ “ , Samuel restored.

1721-1724, Pope of Roman Catholic Church, Innocent XIII.

1723-1736, Patriarch of Eastern Orthodox Church, Cosmas II restored.

1724-1730, Pope of Roman Catholic Church, Benedict XIII.

1730-1740, Pope “ “ “ Clement XII.

1737-1746, Patriarch Eastern Orthodox Church, Cosmas III.

1740-1758, Pope of Roman Catholic Church, Benedict XIV.

Reichstag of the Holy Roman Empire. (*Reichstag*, German for "National Diet" or "Imperial Diet" = general assembly of the Imperial Estates of the Holy Roman Empire.)

⁴⁷⁴ Settlement of the Thirty Years’ War included addition of a new elector to the electoral council (of seven princes, three archbishops and four secular princes, under the 1356 Golden Bull), to maintain the precarious balance between Protestant and Catholic factions in the Empire. Yet another elector would be added in 1690, and the whole college reshuffled in 1803, just three years before dissolution of the Empire.

1740, from this point onwards, dualism between the Austrian Habsburg Monarchy and Kingdom of Prussia would dominate German history.

1746-1766, Patriarch Eastern Orthodox Church, Matthew.

1758-1769, Pope of Roman Catholic Church, Clement XIII.

1759, birth year of Corsican-born Napoleon I Bonaparte, of parents of minor noble Italian ancestry. He would become military and political leader of France and Emperor of the French, and his actions would shape European politics in early 1800's with his rise to prominence under the French First Republic.

1766-1783, Patriarch Eastern Orthodox Church, Cyprian.

1769-1774, Pope of Roman Catholic Church, Clement XIV. (Suppressed the Jesuit Order.)

1775-1799, Pope " " " Pius VI. (Condemned the French Revolution and was expelled by French troops from Papal States until his death.

1783-1788, Patriarch Eastern Orthodox Church, Gerasimus III.

1788-1805, " " " " Parthenius II.

1789, French National Assembly simultaneously abolished the Feudal System and the Knight Order in France.

1789, Commencement of the French Revolution.

From 1792 onwards, revolutionary France cyclically warred with various parts of the Holy Roman Empire of the German Nation.

1792, French Revolutionary Government seized the Order of Knights assets and properties in France.

1795 (to 1814--latter part of French Revolution and into Napoleonic era) saw annexation of lands of one sovereign monarchy to another (*mediatisation*), with *secularization* (redistribution to secular states of secular lands held by ecclesiastical rulers, *e.g.* bishops or abbots).

1798, Napoleon on an expedition to Egypt captured Malta. The Knight's Grand Master Ferdinand von Hompesch zu Bolheim, unprepared, readily capitulated.⁴⁷⁵

1799, Napoleon after a *coup d'état* installed himself as First Consul of France.

1800, Pope of Roman Catholic Church, Pius VII.

1803/4, Napoleon crowned himself and was proclaimed Emperor of the French. In response, Emperor Francis II of the Holy Roman Empire of the German Nation took the title Emperor of Austria. (Pope Pius VII was present at Napoleon's coronation.)

Napoleonic Wars of the French Empire: (a continuation of wars sparked by French Revolution, it saw application of modern mass conscription⁴⁷⁶).

The Napoleonic series of wars in 9th century's first decade involved every major European power in varying sets of allied coalitions. After a streak of victories France would secure dominance of continental Europe, as Napoleon maintained France's sphere of influence by extensive alliances, and friends and family ruling other European countries as French client states.

1805, Patriarch of Eastern Orthodox Church, Theophilus III (to 1825).

1805, Battle of Austerlitz/aka Battle of the Three Emperors--Napoleon's greatest victory, in which the French Empire effectively supraned, by its Third Coalition, as follows: December 2, French army decisively defeated Russo (Alexander I)-Austrian (Francis II) forces near Austerlitz (about 6 miles SE of Brno in present-day Czech Republic; often regarded a tactical masterpiece); December 26, Austria and

⁴⁷⁵ Knights continued to exist but in diminished form, negotiating with various governments. Russian Emperor Paul I gave the largest number shelter in St. Petersburg (they elected Tsar Paul as Grand Master, who remained *de facto* not being ratified under Roman Catholic canon law. Ninety percent of Order's income was generated by the Russian priory until 1810. That century Pope Leo XIII restored a Grand Master as Order was renewed as a humanitarian, religious organization with new headquarters in Rome (Sovereign Military Order of St. John, etc.) with hospital work again its main concern. Its welfare activities were considerable during World War II; it maintains diplomatic relations with 104 countries, permanent presence in 120 countries, has numerous welfare institutions, members and volunteers, and sovereign status still recognized by numerous international bodies and observer status a UN, although its status is disputed by some scholars.

⁴⁷⁶ No consensus exists as to when the French Revolutionary Wars ended and the Napoleonic Wars began.

France signing of Treaty of Pressburg (which in effect led to creation of Confederation of the Rhine), took Austria out of the war, ceding its land to Napoleon's German allies, and including a 40 million francs indemnity on defeated Habsburgs. (Russian troops were allowed home.)

1806 (to 1812), Russia was waging war against the Ottoman Empire.

1806, Naples fell to Napoleonic forces and became a French client state, with Napoleon's brother, Joseph Bonaparte, as King (splitting off Sicily, which was protected by the British).

1806, the "Holy Roman Empire of the German Nation" formally was dissolved when its last Emperor Francis II abdicated following defeat by Napoleon (Francis was left as King Francis I of Austria).⁴⁷⁷

Confederation of the Rhine (to 1813), confederated client states of the First French Empire, was formed initially from 16 German states, allies of France--members were German princes from (defunct) Holy Roman Empire of the German Nation.

October (after "Battle of Jena-Auerstedt"), 19 other anti-French allied German states, including Saxony and Westphalia, joined the Confederation. Altogether they ruled over 15 million subjects, and provided significant strategic advantages to the French Empire on its eastern front.

(Lasting peace on the continent was not achieved, however--Prussian worries about growing French influence in Central Europe sparked a War of the Fourth Coalition in 1806.)

1807, Treaty of Tilsit was effected, by which Russia (briefly) allied with France.

Napoleon established Duchy of Warsaw under rule of Kingdom of Saxony (Polish legions already had been serving in French armies.)

French Empire annexed Kingdom of Etruria.

1807 (to 1812) Russia waged war against Britain.

Denmark-Norway remained neutral until the Battle of Copenhagen (1807). Denmark was compelled to cede Norway to Sweden by the Treaty of Kiel in 1814. Following a brief Swedish campaign against Norway, Norway entered a personal union with Sweden.

1807-1808, French armies crossed Spain to invaded Portugal then turned on Spain. France and Spain alliance ended.

1808, commencement of Peninsular War, France against allied Spain, United Kingdom, and Portugal for control of Iberian Peninsula (which would last until 1814's Sixth Coalition defeat by Napoleon).

1808-1809, Finnish War between Sweden and Russia resulted in east third of Sweden established as autonomous Grand Duchy of Finland within the Russian Empire. (After Sweden's defeat it nominally declared war against United Kingdom.)

During the French Revolutionary Wars, the Ottoman Empire fought against Napoleon in Syria and Africa, and in the Napoleonic era of 1803 to 1815 it participated in a war against Britain (the Anglo-Turkish War, 1807–1809) and against Russia (the Russo-Turkish War, 1806–1812).

Joseph Bonaparte ruled as Joseph I of Naples and Sicily from March 1806 to June 1808, and of Spain from June 1808 to December 1813. He also served as a French commander before and after these two reigns.

1809 to 1814, the French temporarily expelled Pope Pius VII from Papal States.

1810, French Empire annexed Kingdom of Holland. Treaty of Tilsit broke down between Russia and France.

1812, France invaded Russia, a turning point in Napoleon's fortunes, in that his *Grande Armée* was badly damaged in the campaign and never fully recovered. (Both Austria and Prussia, briefly allies of France, contributed forces to the French invasion.)

⁴⁷⁷ At its peak the Holy Roman Empire had encompassed Kingdoms of Germany, Italy and Burgundy, much of the time hundreds of smaller sub-units, principalities, duchies, counties and free imperial cities. In present-day terms, states comprised Germany except Southern Schleswig, Austria except Burgenland, Czech Republic, Switzerland and Liechtenstein, Netherlands, Belgium, Luxembourg and Slovenia except Prekmurje, significant parts of eastern France (mainly Artois, Alsace, Franche-Comte, Savoy and Lorraine), northern Italy (mainly Lombardy, Piedmont, Emilia-Romagna, Tuscany and South Tyrol), and western Poland (mainly Silesia, Pomerania and Neumark).

1813, Battle of Leipzig: Saxony changed sides, causing other member-states to quickly follow suit and declare war on France. At Leipzig, the Sixth Coalition defeated Napoleon's forces and invaded France the following year, forced Napoleon to abdicate, and exiled him to the island of Elba.

Less than a year later, Napoleon escaped Elba and returned to power.

1815, Dutch/Holland troops fought Napoleon during the "Hundred Days."

1814, Austria and Kingdom of Naples briefly allied.

Kingdom of Naples allied with France again and fought against Austria.

Napoleon was defeated at the Battle of Waterloo in June. He spent his last six years of life confined by the British on the Island of Saint Helena.⁴⁷⁸ (Napoleon, his campaigns studied at military academies, while considered a tyrant by his opponents, is remembered for establishment of the Napoleonic code, which laid administrative and judicial foundations for much of Western Europe.

1814 (to 1871), commencement of restoration and revolution:

Following the fall of Napoleon Bonaparte, the Congress of Vienna convened in 1814 and founded the German Confederation (Deutscher Bund), a loose league of 39 sovereign states. Disagreement with restoration politics partly led to the rise of liberal movements demanding unity and freedom. These, however, were followed by new measures of repression by the Austrian statesman Metternich. During the within era many Germans had been stirred by the ideals of the French Revolution, and nationalism became a more significant force, especially among young intellectuals.

1823-1829, Pope of the Roman Catholic Church, Leo XII.

1825-1845, Patriarch of Eastern Orthodox Church, Hierotheus I.

1829-1830, Pope of the Roman Catholic Church, Pius VIII.

1831-1846, " " " " " , Gregory XVI.

1845-1847, Patriarch of Eastern Orthodox Church, Artemius (to 1847).

1846-1878, Pope of the Roman Catholic Church, Pius IX.

1847-1858, Patriarch of Eastern Orthodox Church, Hierotheus II.

During Pius IX's tenure, external Papal states were lost to Italy.

1848, In the light of the series of revolutionary movements in Europe that successfully established a republic in France, revolutions began among intellectuals and commoners in the German states. Monarchs initially yielded to the revolutionaries' liberal demands.

King Frederick William IV of Prussia was offered the title of Emperor, but with a loss of power; he rejected the crown and the proposed constitution, leading to a temporary setback for the movement. Conflict between the Prussian king and an increasingly liberal parliament erupted over military reforms.

1858-1861, Patriarch of Eastern Orthodox Church, Callinicus.

1861-1865, Patriarch of Eastern Orthodox Church, Jacob.

1862, Prussia's king appointed Otto von Bismarck the new Prime Minister of Prussia.

1864-1866, Bismarck successfully waged war on Denmark. Prussian victory in the Austro-Prussian War enabled him to create the North German Federation (Norddeutscher Bund) and to exclude Austria, formerly the leading German state, from the affairs of the remaining German states.

1866-1869, Patriarch of Eastern Orthodox Church, Nicanor.

1870-1899, " " " " " , Sophronius IV.

1878-1903, Pope of the Roman Catholic Church, Leo XIII.

⁴⁷⁸ An autopsy concluded he died of stomach cancer, though some scientists conjecture he was poisoned with arsenic.